

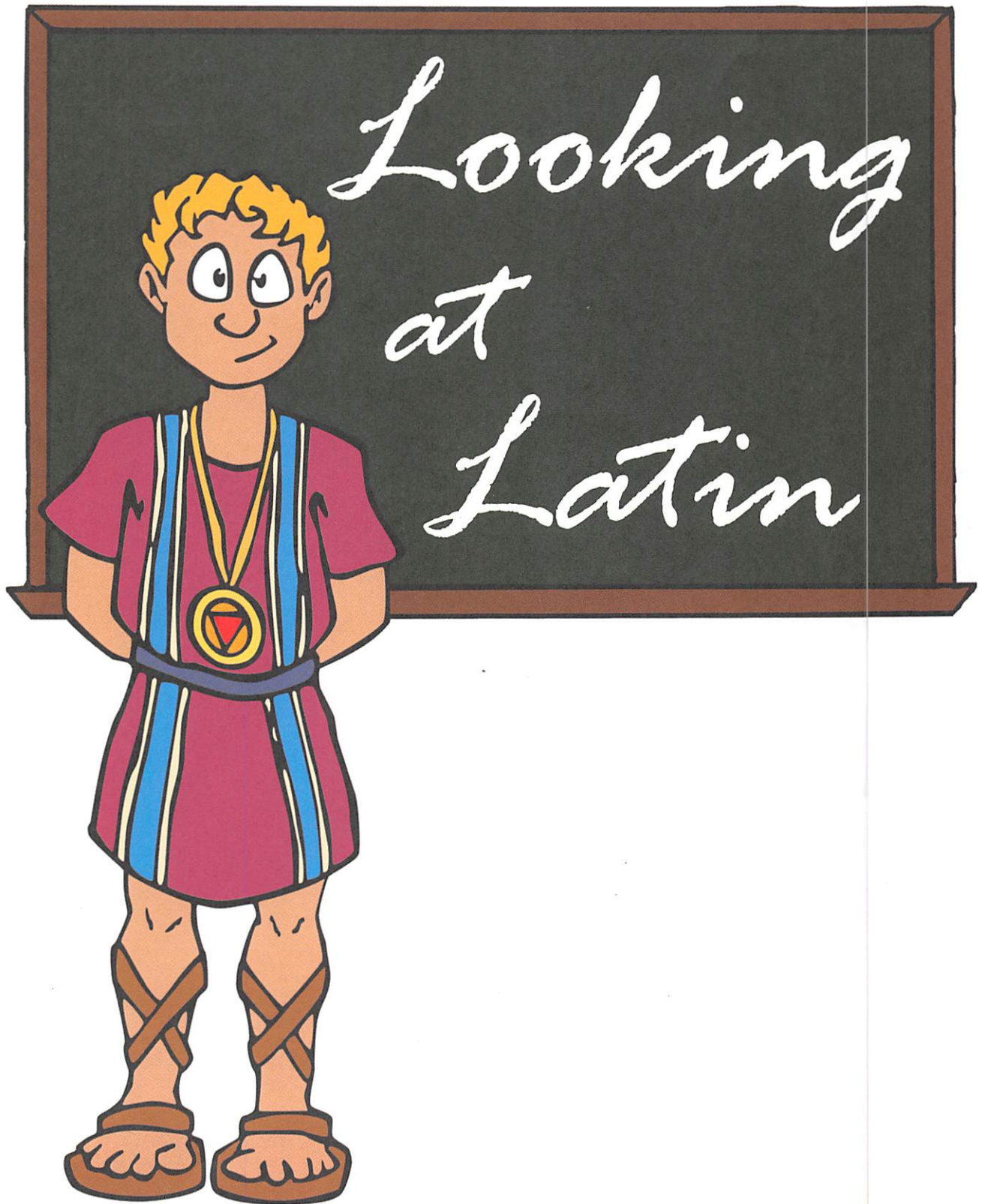
Looking at Latin

**A GRAMMAR
FOR
PRE-COLLEGE**

by
Anna Andresian



Lana Anadagnoli



Looking at Latin

A GRAMMAR FOR PRE-COLLEGE

by
Anna Andresian



Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, Inc.
Wauconda, Illinois USA

General Editor:
LeaAnn A. Osburn

Cover Design:
Adam Phillip Velez

**Looking at Latin
A Grammar for Pre-College**

Anna Andresian

© 2006 Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, Inc.
All rights reserved

Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, Inc.
1000 Brown Street, Unit 101
Wauconda, Illinois 60084
www.bolchazy.com

Printed in Canada

2006
by Friesens

ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-615-8
ISBN-10: 0-86516-615-3

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Andresian, Anna.
Looking at Latin : a grammar for precollege / Anna Andresian.
p. cm.
ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-615-8 (pbk. : alk. paper)
ISBN-10: 0-86516-615-3 (pbk. : alk. paper)
1. Latin language--Grammar. I. Title.

PA2080
478.2'421--dc22

2006004113

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE	ix
NOTATION	xiii
ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION	xiv

NOUNS

INTRODUCTION TO NOUNS

Noun Terminology

Case	1
Number	2
Gender	3
Declension	4
Dictionary Entry and Stem	5
Summary	6

NOUN FORMS

First Declension

Feminine (and Some Masculine) Nouns	7
---	---

Second Declension

Masculine Nouns in <i>-us</i>	8
Masculine Nouns in <i>-r</i>	9
Neuter Nouns in <i>-um</i>	10
Summary	11

Third Declension

Masculine and Feminine Nouns	12
Neuter Nouns	13
I-Stem Nouns	14
Summary	15

Fourth Declension

Masculine Nouns	16
Neuter Nouns	17
Summary	18

Fifth Declension

Feminine (and Some Masculine) Nouns	19
---	----

Irregular Nouns

<i>Domus</i>	20
<i>Vis</i>	21

Noun Case Overview

All Declension Forms	22
Basic Case Translations	23

Articles	24
----------------	----

NOMINATIVE CASE

Introduction to the Nominative Case	25
Subject Nominative	26
Predicate Nominative	
With <i>Sum, Esse</i>	27
With Passive of "Call," "Name," "Make"	28

GENITIVE CASE

Introduction to the Genitive Case	29
Possession	30

Partitive

With <i>multi, nēmō, pars, quis, numbers</i>	31
With <i>nihil, aliquid, satis, etc.</i>	32

Objective	33
-----------------	----

Subjective	34
------------------	----

Description	35
-------------------	----

Material	36
----------------	----

Value	37
-------------	----

As an Appositive	38
------------------------	----

Of the Charge	39
---------------------	----

With Special Adjectives	40
-------------------------------	----

With Special Verbs	41
--------------------------	----

With Impersonal Verbs

With the Genitive	42
With the Genitive and the Accusative	43

DATIVE CASE

Introduction to the Dative Case	44
---------------------------------------	----

Indirect Object	45
-----------------------	----

Reference

Advantage and Disadvantage	46
With Genitive Force	47

Possession	48
------------------	----

Purpose	49
---------------	----

Double Dative	50
---------------------	----

Agent	51
-------------	----

With Special Adjectives	52
-------------------------------	----

With Special Verbs	53
--------------------------	----

Passive Voice of Special Verb Construction	54
--	----

With Compound Verbs	55
---------------------------	----

With Impersonal Verbs	56
-----------------------------	----

ACCUSATIVE CASE

Introduction to the Accusative Case	57
---	----

Place to Which	58
----------------------	----

Direct Object	59
---------------------	----

Duration of Time	60
------------------------	----

Extent of Space	61
-----------------------	----

Predicate Accusative	62
----------------------------	----

Exclamations	63
--------------------	----

With Impersonal Verbs	64
-----------------------------	----

ABLATIVE CASE

Introduction to the Ablative Case	65
---	----

Place Where	66
-------------------	----

Place from Which	67
------------------------	----

Partitive	68
-----------------	----

Agent	69
-------------	----

Accompaniment	70
---------------------	----

Means	71
-------------	----

Manner	72
--------------	----

Description	73
-------------------	----

Time When	74
-----------------	----

Time Within Which	75
Specification	76
Cause	77
Separation	78
Comparison	79
Degree of Difference	80
Ablative Absolute	
With Perfect Passive Participle	81
With Present Active Participle	82
With Noun or Adjective	83
Price	84
Source	85
With Special Adjectives	86
With Deponent Verbs	87
 VOCATIVE CASE	
Direct Address	88
 LOCATIVE CASE	see page 96
 MORE ABOUT NOUN CASES	
Translating Noun Phrases	
"Of" Phrases	89
"To" Phrases	90
"With" Phrases	91
Prepositional Phrases	92
Place Prepositions	93
Special Place Constructions	
Introduction	94
Place to Which / Place from Which	95
Place Where: Locative	96
Appositives	97
Renaming Unexpressed Nouns / Alternate Translations ..	98
Possession	
Genitive of Possession vs. Possessive Adjectives	99
Third Person Possession: <i>Suus</i> vs. <i>Eius</i>	100

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

INTRODUCTION TO ADJECTIVES

Overview of Adjectives	
Introduction / Dictionary Entry / Forms / Stem	101
Agreement of Adjectives	102

ADJECTIVE FORMS

2-1-2 Adjectives	
Adjectives in <i>-us, -a, -um</i>	103
Adjectives in <i>-r, -a, -um</i>	104
Third Declension Adjectives	
Introduction / Termination	105
1, 2, 3 Termination	106
Endings	107
Irregular Adjectives	108
Numbers	
Cardinal Numbers: 1 – 20	109
Declining <i>ūnus, duo, trēs</i>	110
Ordinal Numbers: 1st – 20th	111

Cardinal & Ordinal: 20 – 100	112
Cardinal & Ordinal: 100 – 1000	113
<i>Mille</i> vs. <i>Milia</i>	114
Substantive Adjectives	115

INTRODUCTION TO ADVERBS

Overview of Adverbs	116
---------------------------	-----

ADVERB FORMS

2-1-2 Adverbs	117
Third Declension Adverbs	118

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Comparison of Adjectives	
Regular Adjectives	119
Adjectives in <i>-ilis, -er, -eus, -ius</i>	120
Common Irregular Adjectives	121
More Irregular Adjectives: Part I	122
More Irregular Adjectives: Part II	123
Comparison of Adverbs	
Regular Adverbs	124
Irregular Adverbs	125
<i>Quam</i>	126

PRONOUNS, ETC.

PRONOUNS

Demonstrative Pronouns/Adjectives	
Introduction	127
Forms of <i>hic, ille, is</i>	128
The Third Person Demonstrative Pronoun	129
Personal Pronouns	
First and Second Person	130
Reflexive Pronouns	
Introduction	131
Forms	132
Relative Pronoun	
Introduction	133
Forms and Translation	134
Case, Number, Gender Rule	135
Implied Demonstrative	136
Acting as a Demonstrative	137

INTERROGATIVES

Interrogative Adjective	
Introduction	138
Forms and Translation	139
Interrogative Pronoun	
Introduction	140
Forms and Translation	141
Interrogative Pronoun vs. Adjective	142
Interrogative Particles	143
Interrogative Adverbs	144

OTHER PRONOUNS/ADJECTIVES

<i>Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum</i>	145
<i>Aliquis, Aliquid</i>	146

<i>Idem, Eadem, Idem</i>	147
<i>Quīdam, Quaedam, Quoddam</i>	148

VERBS

INTRODUCTION TO VERBS

Verb Terminology	
Person and Number	149
Tense	150
Voice	151
Mood	152
Conjugation	153
Dictionary Entry and Stems	154
Summary	155

INTRODUCTION TO VERB FORMS

Personal Endings	
Active	156
Passive	157
Connector Vowels	158
Voice	
Active vs. Passive	159

INDICATIVE VERB FORMS AND MEANINGS

Systems of Tenses: Meanings	
Present System	160
Perfect System	161
Present Tense	
Present Active Indicative	162
Present Passive Indicative	163
Imperfect Tense	
Imperfect Active Indicative	164
Imperfect Passive Indicative	165
Future Tense	
Future Active Indicative	166
Future Passive Indicative	167
Perfect Tense	
Perfect Active Indicative	168
Perfect Passive Indicative	169
Pluperfect Tense	
Pluperfect Active Indicative	170
Pluperfect Passive Indicative	171
Future Perfect Tense	
Future Perfect Active Indicative	172
Future Perfect Passive Indicative	173
Systems of Tenses: Forms	
Present System	174
Perfect System	175

REGULAR VERB CONJUGATIONS

First Conjugation	176
Second Conjugation	177
Third Conjugation	178
Similar-looking Third Conjugation Forms	179
Second Conjugation vs. Third Conjugation	180
Third -IO Conjugation	181
Fourth Conjugation	182

IRREGULAR VERBS

Introduction to Irregular Verbs	183
<i>Sum, Esse, Fuī, Futūrus</i>	184
Alone and as Part of Other Verb Forms	185
<i>Possum, Posse, Potuī</i>	186
<i>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</i>	187
<i>Eō, Īre, Īvī or Īi, Itus</i>	188
Passive of <i>Eō</i> Compounds	189
<i>Ferō, Ferre, Tulī, Lātus</i>	
- Active Voice	190
- Passive Voice	191
<i>Fīō, Fierī, Factus Sum</i>	192

OTHER VERB FORMS

Deponent Verbs	193
Semideponent Verbs	194

VERB MOODS

INDICATIVE MOOD

Indicative Summary	195
---------------------------------	-----

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Imperative Forms	
Present Active	196
Present Passive	197
Negative	198
Future Active and Passive	199

INFINITIVE MOOD

Infinitive Forms	
Present Active and Passive	200
Perfect Active and Passive	201
Future Active and Passive	202
Summary	203

Infinitive Constructions

Complementary	204
Objective	205
Subjective	206
With Impersonal Verbs	207
With Subject Accusative	
Translating with "To"	208
Translating with "That"	209

Infinitive in an Indirect Statement

Overview	210
Tense of the Infinitive	211
Translating the Infinitive	212
List of Infinitive Translations	213
He/She/It/They Subjects	214

PARTICIPIAL MOOD

Participles	
Introduction	215
Forms	216
Participle Syntax / Translating Participles as Clauses ..	217

Indicative Active Periphrastic	218
Alone and as Part of Other Verb Forms	219

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Subjunctive Forms

Present Active and Passive	220
Imperfect Active and Passive	221
Perfect Active and Passive	222
Pluperfect Active and Passive	223
Summary of Forms	224
Irregular Verbs	225

Independent Subjunctive Uses

Hortatory/Jussive/Volitive	226
Optative	227
Hortatory vs. Optative	228
Deliberative	229
Potential	230

Sequence of Tenses in Dependent Clauses

Primary vs. Secondary Sequence	231
Significance of Subjunctive Verb Tenses	232
Translating Subjunctive Forms	233
Subjunctive Active Periphrastic	234

Dependent Subjunctive Uses

Purpose	235
Result	236
Substantive	237
Indirect Command	238
Introductory Verbs	239
Fear	240
Summary of Subjunctives Using <i>Ut</i> and <i>Nē</i>	241
Indirect Question	242
<i>Cum</i> Clauses	243
Translation Tips	244
Relative Clauses of Characteristic	
Overview	245
Imagined Antecedents	246
Common Phrases	247
Relative Clauses of Purpose	248
Dependent Clauses in Indirect Discourse	249
Anticipatory	250

OTHER VERB CONSTRUCTIONS

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Conditions

The Parts of a Condition/ Indicative Conditions	251
Subjunctive Conditions	252
Future Conditions / Mixed Conditions & Substitutions ..	253

GERUNDS & GERUNDIVES

Gerunds	254
Gerundives	255
Gerunds and Gerundives	
“Verbing the Noun”	256
Case Uses	257
Passive Periphrastic	
Standard	258
With Dative of Agent	259
Impersonal	260
With Special Object Verbs	261
Translation Tips	262

SUPINE

Supine Forms and Syntax	263
-------------------------------	-----

VERB MISCELLANY

Translating “To”	264
Impersonal Passive	265
Alternate Forms	266

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A

Noun, Adjective, and Pronoun Forms	267
--	-----

APPENDIX B

Verb Forms	268
First Conjugation	269
Second Conjugation	270
Third Conjugation	271
Third -IO Conjugation	272
Fourth Conjugation	273
<i>Sum, Esse, Fuī, Futūrus</i>	274
<i>Possum, Posse, Potuī</i>	275
<i>Volō, Velle, Voluī</i>	276
<i>Nōlō, Nolle, Noluī</i>	277
<i>Mālō, Malle, Māluī</i>	278
<i>Eō, Ire, Ivī or Iī, Itus</i>	279
<i>Ferō, Ferre, Tulī, Lātus</i>	280
<i>Fīō, Fieri, Factus Sum</i>	281

PREFACE

Looking at Latin is an illustrated grammar aid intended for young classicists studying at the middle and upper school levels. This project evolved over the course of my teaching career at the Rocky Hill School in East Greenwich, Rhode Island, as I prepared each week to conduct my classes. The goal of these pages is to provide students with essential form paradigms and grammatical explanations, comprehensive example sentences, and useful hints, all arranged in a visually appealing and unintimidating layout whose primary objective is clarity. It is my hope that this book will help students both learn and review Latin grammar and that it will enhance their ability to find answers and clarify confusion independently.

Since *Looking at Latin* is intended for middle and upper school students, I have omitted some details on the grounds that they fall outside the scope of what is fundamental to a pre-college curriculum. For example, there is no discussion of conditions in indirect statement or of the conative force of the imperfect. Students are encouraged to consult a larger reference grammar when they come upon scenarios not covered here. Another important resource that students should own is a Latin dictionary, as practical constraints have not allowed me to treat individual vocabulary words of particular interest in depth (such as *ut*, *quam*, and correlative adjectives and adverbs).

The topics in this book are arranged by category. Since *Looking at Latin* does not impose any particular order, it can be used as a companion to any other textbook. On the other hand, teachers who have developed their own set of practice exercises and who do not use a traditional textbook may find *Looking at Latin* an appropriate resource for presenting grammar to their students. This book is suitable for those who are just beginning their study of Latin and for those who have moved on to literature, as upper level students may find it a useful reference tool in which information is conveniently arranged and consolidated.

Looking at Latin was designed with particular attention to visual cues, as I believe that their mnemonic power will facilitate students' acquisition of Latin grammar. I have included abundant illustrations, multicolored text, and arrows pointing the way in an attempt to make the contents of this book less intimidating, more memorable, and more clear.

The study of Roman antiquity is well worth the time and effort it requires, as it enhances students' language and logic skills, sets the scene for an examination of more recent developments in human affairs, and both challenges and delights the curious mind.

GUIDELINES FOR USING THIS BOOK

1. **Locating a Topic:** Turn to the table of contents, find the relevant section (nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.) and browse for the desired item.

NOUNS

INTRODUCTION TO NOUNS

Noun Terminology

Case	1
Number	2
Gender	3
Declension	4
Dictionary Entry and Stem	5
Summary	6

NOUN FORMS

First Declension

Feminine (and Some Masculine) Nouns	7
---	---

Second Declension

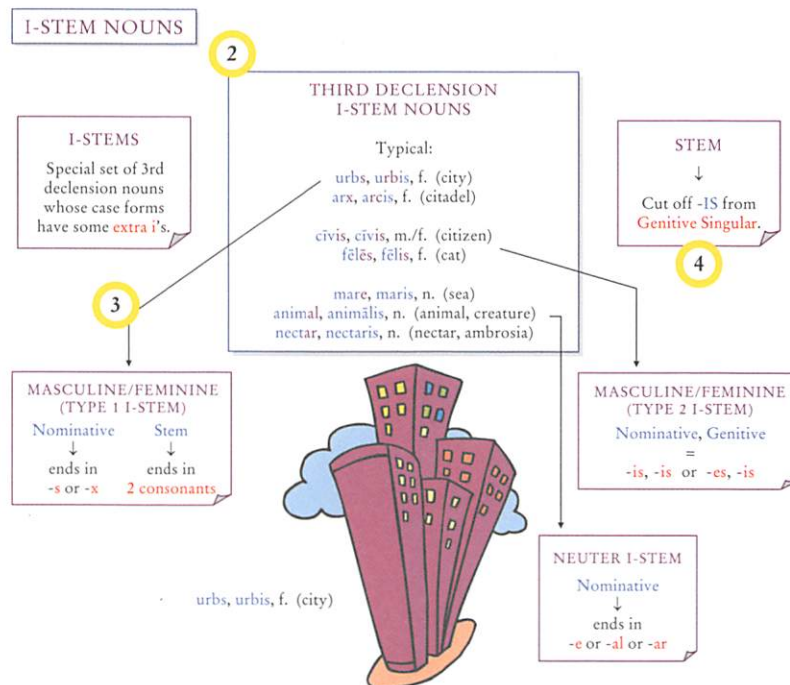
Masculine Nouns in <i>-us</i>	8
Masculine Nouns in <i>-r</i>	9
Neuter Nouns in <i>-um</i>	10
Summary	11

Third Declension

Masculine and Feminine Nouns	12
Neuter Nouns	13
I-Stem Nouns	14
Summary	15

2. **Page Layout—Where to Begin:** Start in the large text box at the top of the page and work your way down.
3. **Page Layout—Arrows:** Pay close attention to the arrows that link one piece of information with another or with example sentences.
4. **Page Layout—Color:** Particularly important information is highlighted in red, purple, or blue.

THIRD DECLENSION



NOTATIONAL REMARKS

ALPHABET: (See p. xiv)

In this book, both consonantal *i* (pronounced as in “yellow”) and vocalic *i* (pronounced as in “green” and “in”) are represented by the letter *i*. Consonantal *v* (pronounced as in “water”) is represented by *v* whereas vocalic *v* (pronounced as “pool” and “foot”) is represented by *u*.

GENITIVE SINGULAR OF -IUS/-IUM NOUNS:

In all vocabulary lists, this book gives -ī as the genitive singular ending rather than -ī (see p. 11).

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS:

Intransitive verbs such as currō (to run) are generally listed in dictionaries in one of the following ways:

- currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum (fourth principal part = supine)
- currō, currere, cucurrī, cursurus (fourth principal part = future active participle)

This book gives all fourth principal parts in -us:

- currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus (fourth principal part = perfect passive participle)
- Although some verbs never actually appear in perfect passive participle form, the form is given as the fourth principal part for the sake of uniformity and simplicity.

MARKERS & SYMBOLS:

Recurring notational features are described on p. xiii.

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS:

- The words in black all caps indicate general categories of topics.
- The words in boldface correspond to the titles at the top of each page.
- The sub-headings under the boldface words correspond to the sub-titles that appear below on some pages.
- Each page has a footer with its general category, title, and subtitle.
 - o For example, the footer of p. 20 is: Noun Forms – Irregular Nouns – *Domus*.

PEDAGOGICAL REMARKS

NOUN CASE INTRODUCTIONS:

For each noun case, this book presents an introductory overview of forms and usage (see pp. 25, 29, 44, 57, 65). First declension, second declension (masculine), and third declension (masculine/feminine) forms are provided. These lists are not meant to be comprehensive and aim simply at supplying quick reference to help students practice declining the most common nouns. A comprehensive list of all noun endings can be found on p. 22.

PRESENT STEM:

The present stem is traditionally defined in the following manner:

- First Conjugation: remove -re from second principal part (amāre → amā-).
- Second Conjugation: remove -re from second principal part (tenēre → tenē-).
- Third Conjugation: remove -ere from second principal part (mittere → mitt-).
- Fourth Conjugation: remove -re from second principal part (audīre → audī-).

This book attempts to simplify the treatment of the present stem as follows:

- All Conjugations: remove last three letters (-xRE) from second principal part.
- Stem vowels (called “connector vowels” in this book) are then added as a second step (see p. 158).

A NOTE ON THE ILLUSTRATIONS

While the result is by no means perfect, every effort has been made to select illustrations that reflect the diversity of our society. To that end, this book depicts people of a variety of ages and ethnic backgrounds engaged in a wide range of activities. This is not a perfunctory show of political-correctness but rather a sincere attempt (motivated by convictions that spring from my own experience) to bring it about that diverse users of this book may in some form see themselves and their realities in it.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

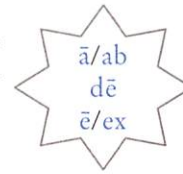
I am grateful to my students for their humor, enthusiasm, and fellowship. I very much appreciate Kathy Todd's technical advice and the assistance rendered by Joe Pucci and John Penney in later stages of revision (any errors remaining in this book are entirely my own). Indeed, I am indebted to Joe for many years of support and guidance. Finally, I thank my parents for encouraging me in the study of Classics from high school through college and beyond.

Anna Andresian
Worcester College, Oxford
anna.andresian@worcester.oxon.org

NOTATION

PREPOSITION MARKERS

For uses of the Ablative and some uses of other cases, a star appears in the upper right corner indicating what preposition is used.



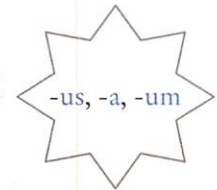
NOUN DECLENSION MARKERS

For each noun declension, a star appears in the upper right corner indicating the declension's genitive singular ending.



ADJECTIVE DECLENSION MARKERS

For adjectives, a star appears in the upper right hand corner indicating the standard nominative singular endings.



VERB CONJUGATION MARKERS

For each verb conjugation, a star appears in the upper right corner indicating the conjugation's present active infinitive ending.



PRINCIPAL PART MARKERS

For each verb tense, a star appears in the upper right corner indicating what principal part of the verb is used for the active or passive voice.



SUBJUNCTIVE MARKERS

For uses of the subjunctive, a star in the upper right corner lists the subjunctive tenses that are used and indicates whether the construction is an independent or a dependent clause.



CONNECTOR VOWEL CHARTS

The vowels used to connect verb endings to verb stems are presented by charts described in greater detail on p. 158.

IMPERFECT CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1	2
3	4
(i)e	ie

SYMBOLS

-◇RE → Refers to the last three letters of the present infinitive, which may be -āre, -ēre, -ere, or -īre (see pp. 153, 162-167).

1° → Primary Sequence } (See p. 231)
2° → Secondary Sequence }

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION

THE LATIN ALPHABET

The alphabet used by the ancient Romans includes almost all of the letters in the modern English alphabet.

Note that **j** and **w** are missing and that **v** is pronounced quite differently in Latin than it is in English.

LONG MARKS

A mark (called a “long mark” or a “macron”) may appear over a vowel to indicate that it is long (ā) rather than short (a).

The sound produced by a long vowel is slightly different from that of a short vowel and is held for a longer duration.

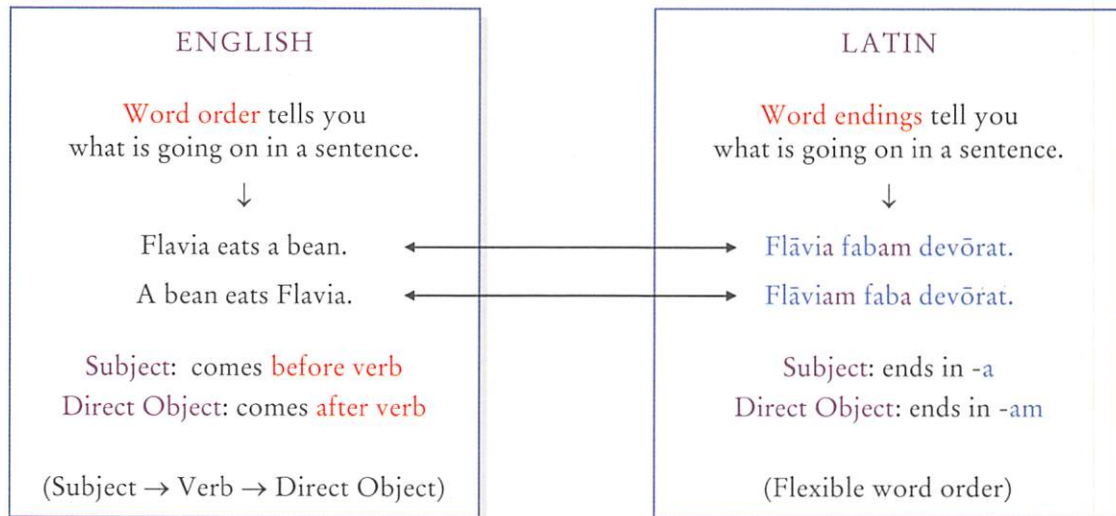
<u>Consonants</u>		<u>Vowels</u>		<u>Diphthongs</u>
A		(ā) father	(a) Similar to long ā, but of shorter duration.	(ae) eyebrow
B	bridge			(au) plow
C	score (not as in “cellar”)			
D	drama			
E		(ē) fiancé	(e) egg	(ei) they
F	father			(eu) eh-oo – pronounced as one syllable.
G	game (not as in “age”)			
H	home			
I	yellow	(ī) green	(i) in	
K	key			
L	laugh			
M	mother			
N	name			
O		(ō) open	(o) on	(oe) boy
P	spine			
Q(u)	quiet			
R	river			
S	stable			
T	enter			
V	water	(ū) pool	(u) foot	(ui) oo-ee – pronounced as one syllable.
X	index			
Y		(y/ȳ) Originally pronounced as French <i>u</i> , later as Latin <i>i/ī</i> .		
Z	zoom			
Ch	core	These three sounds are known as “aspirates,” which means that the c/p/t sound is accompanied by a breathy release of air. The difference between c and ch, for example, can be heard in the English words “score” (similar to Latin c) and core (similar to Latin ch, though Latin aspiration is even more forceful).		
Ph	pine			
Th	table			

I and V

Regularly serve as consonants between vowels (Āiāx, avis) and at the beginning of a word if followed by a vowel (iam, vīta).

NOUN TERMINOLOGY

CASE



CASES

NOMINATIVE: SUBJECT

✧Andrew✧ likes ketchup.

GENITIVE: POSSESSION

✧Courtney's✧ hair is brown.

DATIVE: INDIRECT OBJECT

You gave a CD ✧to Ashley✧.

ACCUSATIVE: DIRECT OBJECT

You saw ✧Matthew✧ in the halls.

ABLATIVE: ---[Many different uses]---

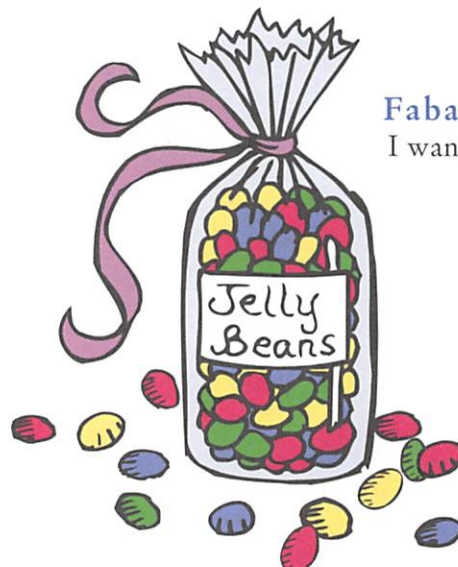
André surprises Sue ✧with flowers✧.
Barney and Anne live ✧in New York✧.
Julian walks back ✧from the bus stop✧.

CASE

Different **word forms** (Flāvia vs. Flāviam) are called "**cases**." The case of a word reveals its **grammatical role** in the sentence.

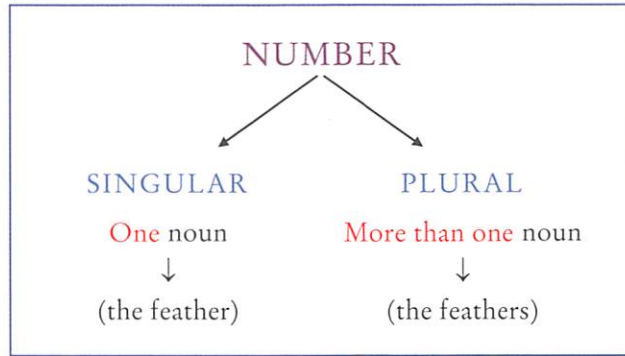
Fabam cupiō.

I want ✧a bean✧.



NOUN TERMINOLOGY

NUMBER



plūma
nominative singular



plūmae
nominative plural

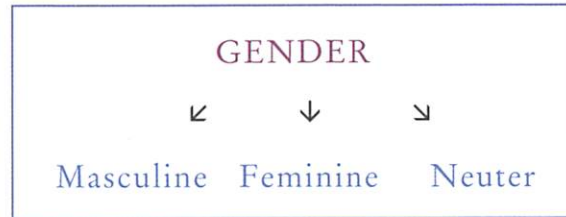


The **ending** of a noun reveals its case and number.

Every noun has a set of **singular** case forms and a set of **plural** case forms.

NOUN TERMINOLOGY

GENDER



The gender of a noun is **sometimes but not always related to the meaning** of the noun.

RELATED MEANING & GENDER

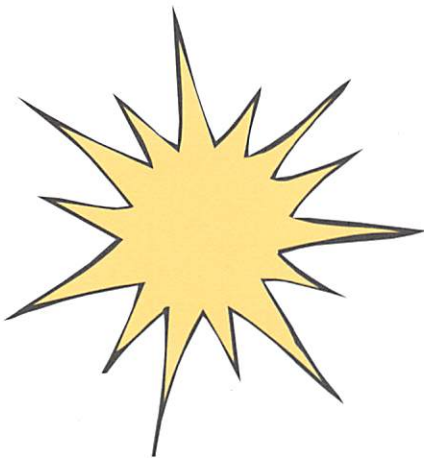
puella - girl → feminine
puer - boy → masculine

UNRELATED MEANING & GENDER

vīcus - village → masculine
urbs - city → feminine
oppidum - town → neuter

IDENTIFYING A NOUN'S GENDER

Some genders are obvious (*puer* - boy → masculine), but in many cases, you must look in the **dictionary** to find the gender of a noun.



stella, stellae, **f.** (star)

astrum, astrī, **n.** (star)

Typical noun dictionary entries

GENDER MATTERS!

Different genders use slightly **different endings**, so you may misunderstand a noun's form if you do not know its gender.

puer**um** (boy)
↓
masculine
↓
accusative singular

verb**um** (word)
↓
neuter
↓
nominative or **accusative** singular

NOUN TERMINOLOGY

DECLENSION

DECLENSION

"Declension" is simply a word that means
"Noun Type."

There are 5 different types of nouns in the Latin language,
each of which has its own set of case endings.

IDENTIFYING A NOUN'S DECLENSION

Every declension has a
genitive singular form
that is different from the
genitive singular forms
of other declensions.

Look at a noun's **dictionary
entry** to find its genitive
singular form.

stella, **stellae**, f. (star)

astrum, **astrī**, n. (star)

GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDINGS

- ae → 1st Declension
- ī → 2nd Declension
- is → 3rd Declension
- ūs → 4th Declension
- eī → 5th Declension

DECLENSION MATTERS!

It will be difficult to
interpret noun **endings**
correctly if you do not
know the noun's
declension.

SECOND DECLENSION

	SING.	PL.
Nom.	puer	puerī
Gen.	puerī	puerōrum
Dat.	puerō	puerīs
Acc.	puerum	puerōs
Abl.	puerō	puerīs

puerum:
Second
Declension
↓
accusative
singular

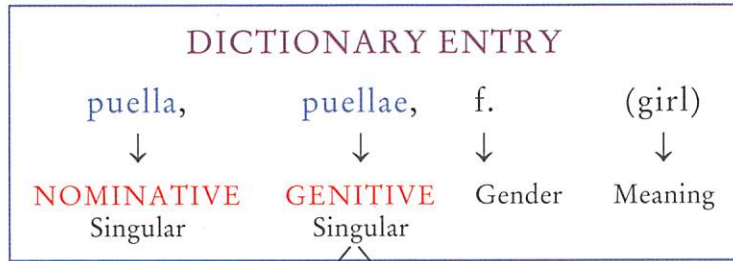
THIRD DECLENSION

	SING.	PL.
Nom.	pater	patrēs
Gen.	patris	patrum
Dat.	patrī	patribus
Acc.	patrem	patrēs
Abl.	patre	patribus

patrum:
Third
Declension
↓
genitive
plural

NOUN TERMINOLOGY

DICTIONARY ENTRY AND STEM



Use genitive to identify the **declension** of the noun.

Use genitive to identify the **stem** of the noun.

GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDINGS

- ae → 1st Declension
- ī → 2nd Declension
- is → 3rd Declension
- ūs → 4th Declension
- eī → 5th Declension

PLURAL-ONLY NOUNS

Some nouns only use **plural** forms, so their dictionary entries give: **nom. pl., gen. pl.,** gender, meaning

dēliciae, dēliciārum, f. (sweetheart)
castra, castrōrum, n. (battle camp)

STEM

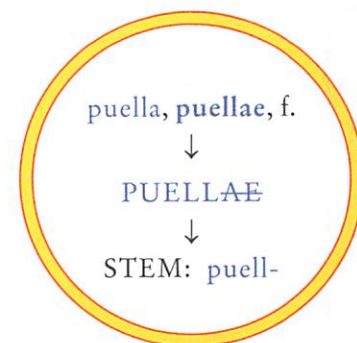
Basic **foundation** of a noun - case endings are added to it.

Remove **genitive singular** ending to identify the stem of a noun.

DICTIONARY ENTRY

agricola, agricol ae , m. (farmer)	→	agricol-
ager, agri i , m. (field)	→	agr-
libertās, libertāt is , f. (freedom)	→	libertāt-
manus, man ūs , f. (hand)	→	man-
diēs, diē i , m. (day)	→	di-

STEM



NOUN TERMINOLOGY

SUMMARY

CASE	Reveals grammatical function of noun.	Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative
NUMBER	Indicates whether there is one or more than one .	Singular, Plural
GENDER	Plays a role in determining what case endings are used.	Masculine Feminine Neuter
DECLENSION	Type of noun: different declensions use different case endings .	1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th
STEM	Basic foundation of noun: case endings are added to it.	Cut off ending of genitive singular form
DICTIONARY ENTRY	Reveals declension, stem, gender , and meaning of noun.	Nominative, Genitive, Gender, Meaning

FIRST DECLENSION



FEMININE (AND SOME MASCULINE) NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

Typical:
aqua, aquae, f. (water)

Genitive Singular: -AE

*LONG MARK



Nominative Sing.: -A
Ablative Sing.: -Ā

STEM



Cut off -AE from
Genitive Singular.

1ST DECLENSION ENDINGS

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-a	-ae
<i>Genitive</i>	-ae	-ārum
<i>Dative</i>	-ae	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	-am	-ās
<i>Ablative</i>	-ā*	-īs



aqua, aquae, f. (water)

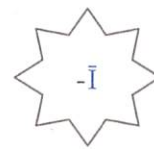
1ST DECLENSION aqua, aquae, f. (water)

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	aqua	aquae
<i>Genitive</i>	aquae	aquārum
<i>Dative</i>	aquae	aquīs
<i>Accusative</i>	aquam	aquās
<i>Ablative</i>	aquā	aquīs

Most first declension
nouns are **feminine**,
but **several** are
masculine:

agricola → farmer
nauta → sailor
poēta → poet

SECOND DECLENSION



MASCULINE NOUNS IN -US

Nouns in -US

↓
Masculine
(Plants, trees, cities
are feminine.)

SECOND DECLENSION MASCULINE (-US)

Typical:
animus, animī, m. (mind, heart, soul)
nūntius, nūntiī, m. (messenger)

Genitive Singular: -ī

STEM

↓
Cut off -ī from
Genitive Singular.



nūntius, nūntiī, m.
(messenger)

2ND DECLENSION MASCULINE ENDINGS (-US)

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-us	-ī
<i>Genitive</i>	-ī	-ōrum
<i>Dative</i>	-ō	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	-um	-ōs
<i>Ablative</i>	-ō	-īs

Nouns in -IUS
have an "i" at
the end of their
stems. Do not
cut this off.

2ND DECLENSION MASCULINE (-US) *animus, animī, m.* (mind, heart, soul)

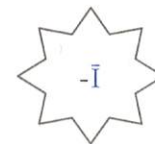
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>animus</i>	<i>animī</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>animī</i>	<i>animōrum</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>animō</i>	<i>animīs</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>animum</i>	<i>animōs</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>animō</i>	<i>animīs</i>

2ND DECLENSION MASCULINE (-IUS) *nūntius, nūntiī, m.* (messenger)[†]

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>nūntius</i>	<i>nūntiī</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>nūntiī</i>	<i>nūntiōrum</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>nūntiō</i>	<i>nūntiīs</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>nūntium</i>	<i>nūntiōs</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>nūntiō</i>	<i>nūntiīs</i>

[†]See p. 11 for important information about an alternative genitive singular form for -ius nouns.

SECOND DECLENSION



MASCULINE NOUNS IN -R

Nouns in -R

↓
Masculine

SECOND DECLENSION MASCULINE (-R)

Typical:

puer, puerī, m. (boy)

ager, agrī, m. (field)

vir, virī, m. (man)

Genitive Singular: -ī

STEM



Cut off -ī from
Genitive Singular.



puer, puerī, m. (boy)

2ND DECLENSION MASCULINE ENDINGS (-R)

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-r	-ī
<i>Genitive</i>	-ī	-ōrum
<i>Dative</i>	-ō	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	-um	-ōs
<i>Ablative</i>	-ō	-īs

NOTE:

Some nouns **drop** an
"e" from their stems.

The dictionary entries
below indicate that
puer keeps the "e"
in its stem but that
ager drops it.

2ND DECLENSION MASCULINE puer, puerī, m. (boy)

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	puer	puerī
<i>Genitive</i>	puerī	puerōrum
<i>Dative</i>	puerō	puerīs
<i>Accusative</i>	puerum	puerōs
<i>Ablative</i>	puerō	puerīs

2ND DECLENSION MASCULINE ager, agrī, m. (field)

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	ager	agrī
<i>Genitive</i>	agrī	agrōrum
<i>Dative</i>	agrō	agrīs
<i>Accusative</i>	agrum	agrōs
<i>Ablative</i>	agrō	agrīs

SECOND DECLENSION



NEUTER NOUNS IN -UM

Nouns in -UM

↓
Neuter

SECOND DECLENSION NEUTER (-UM)

Typical:

signum, signī, n. (sign)
auxilium, auxiliī, n. (help)

Genitive Singular: -ī

STEM

↓
Cut off -ī from
Genitive Singular.



gaudium, gaudiī, n.
(joy)

2ND DECLENSION NEUTER ENDINGS (-UM)

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-um	-a
Genitive	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-um	-a
Ablative	-ō	-īs

★
NOMINUSATIVE
★

"Nominusative" is a made-up word to help you remember that neuter **nominative** and **accusative** look the same. (It is *not* a separate case.)

For all neuter nouns, the "nominusative" plural is -A.

2ND DECLENSION NEUTER signum, signī, n. (sign)

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	signum	signa
Genitive	signī	signōrum
Dative	signō	signīs
Accusative	signum	signa
Ablative	signō	signīs

2ND DECLENSION NEUTER gaudium, gaudiī, n. (joy)[†]

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	gaudium	gaudia
Genitive	gaudiī	gaudiōrum
Dative	gaudiō	gaudiīs
Accusative	gaudium	gaudia
Ablative	gaudiō	gaudiīs

[†]See p. 11 for important information about an alternative genitive singular form for -ius nouns.

SECOND DECLENSION



SUMMARY

2 ND DECLENSION MASCULINE		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-us, -r	-ī
<i>Genitive</i>	-ī	-ōrum
<i>Dative</i>	-ō	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	-um	-ōs
<i>Ablative</i>	-ō	-īs

MASCULINE VS. NEUTER

Differences appear
in the **nominative** and
the **accusative**.

2 ND DECLENSION NEUTER		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-um	-a
<i>Genitive</i>	-ī	-ōrum
<i>Dative</i>	-ō	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	-um	-a
<i>Ablative</i>	-ō	-īs

Virum vocāmus.
We call "the man".

This masculine form can
only be **accusative**.

↓
Direct Object

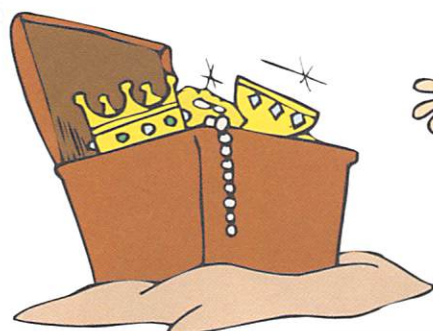
You must know
the **gender** of a
noun in order to
identify its ending
correctly.

Aurum fulget.
"The gold" shines.

This neuter form can be
nominative or **accusative**

↓
Subject

↓
× Direct Object



Aurum inveniō.
I find "the gold".

This neuter form can be
nominative or **accusative**

↓
× Subject

↓
Direct Object

NOTE ON THE GENITIVE SINGULAR

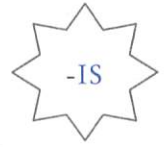
For nouns with -ius and -ium in the
nominative singular, there are **two**
possible forms for the **genitive singular**:

nūntius, nūntī, m. - early form

nūntius, nūntiī, m. - Augustan form

This book will use the Augustan -iī.

THIRD DECLENSION



MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

Masculine and feminine nouns use the same case endings.

THIRD DECLENSION MASCULINE/FEMININE

There is no "typical" noun.
The **nominative singular varies**.

soror, sorōris, f. (sister)
flōs, flōris, m. (flower)
māter, mātris, f. (mother)

Genitive Singular: -IS

STEM



Cut off **-IS** from
Genitive Singular.

3 RD DECLENSION MASCULINE/FEMININE ENDINGS		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-varies-	-ēs
<i>Genitive</i>	-is	-um
<i>Dative</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Ablative</i>	-e	-ibus

3RD DECLENSION STEMS

Some stems **keep**
the entire nominative:
soror → sorōr-

Some stems **change letters**
in the nominative:
flōs → flōr-

Some stems **drop letters**
from the nominative:
māter → mātr-

3 RD DECLENSION MASCULINE/FEMININE flōs, flōris, m. (flower)		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	flōs	flōrēs
<i>Genitive</i>	flōris	flōrum
<i>Dative</i>	flōrī	flōribus
<i>Accusative</i>	flōrem	flōrēs
<i>Ablative</i>	flōre	flōribus



flōs, flōris, m. (flower)

THIRD DECLENSION



NEUTER NOUNS

All nouns
with nominatives
ending in **-men**
are neuter.

THIRD DECLENSION NEUTER

There is no "typical" noun.
The **nominative singular varies**.

lūmen, lūminis, n. (light)
caput, capitis, n. (head)
onus, oneris, n. (burden)

Genitive Singular: -IS

STEM



Cut off **-IS** from
Genitive Singular.

3RD DECLENSION NEUTER ENDINGS

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-varies-	-a
<i>Genitive</i>	- i s	- u m
<i>Dative</i>	- i	- i bus
<i>Accusative</i>	-varies-	-a
<i>Ablative</i>	-e	- i bus



3RD DECLENSION NEUTER **onus, oneris, n.** (burden)

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	onus	onera
<i>Genitive</i>	oneris	onerum
<i>Dative</i>	oneri	oneribus
<i>Accusative</i>	onus	onera
<i>Ablative</i>	onere	oneribus



onus, oneris, n. (burden)

THIRD DECLENSION



I-STEM NOUNS

I-STEMS

Special set of 3rd declension nouns whose case forms have some **extra i's**.

THIRD DECLENSION I-STEM NOUNS

Typical:

urbs, urbis, f. (city)
arx, arcis, f. (citadel)

cīvis, cīvis, m./f. (citizen)
fēlēs, fēlis, f. (cat)

mare, maris, n. (sea)
animal, animālis, n. (animal, creature)
nectar, nectaris, n. (nectar, ambrosia)

STEM

↓
Cut off **-IS** from
Genitive Singular.

MASCULINE/FEMININE (TYPE 1 I-STEM)

Nominative Stem
↓ ↓
ends in ends in
-s or -x **2 consonants**

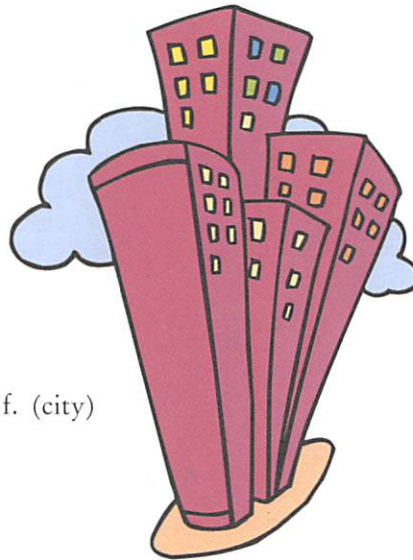
MASCULINE/FEMININE (TYPE 2 I-STEM)

Nominative, Genitive
=
-is, -is or **-es, -is**

NEUTER I-STEM

Nominative
↓
ends in
-e or -al or -ar

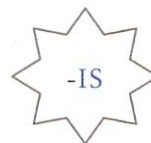
urbs, urbis, f. (city)



MASCULINE/FEMININE I-STEM ENDINGS		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-varies-	-ēs
<i>Genitive</i>	-is	-i <u>u</u> m
<i>Dative</i>	-ī	-ib <u>u</u> s
<i>Accusative</i>	-em	-ēs / -ī <u>s</u>
<i>Ablative</i>	-e	-ib <u>u</u> s

NEUTER I-STEM ENDINGS		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-varies-	-i <u>a</u>
<i>Genitive</i>	-is	-i <u>u</u> m
<i>Dative</i>	-ī	-ib <u>u</u> s
<i>Accusative</i>	-varies-	-i <u>a</u>
<i>Ablative</i>	-ī	-ib <u>u</u> s

THIRD DECLENSION



SUMMARY

3 RD DECLENSION MASCULINE/FEMININE		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-varies-	-ēs
<i>Genitive</i>	-is	-um
<i>Dative</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Ablative</i>	-e	-ibus

3 RD DECLENSION NEUTER		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-varies-	-a
<i>Genitive</i>	-is	-um
<i>Dative</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-varies-	-a
<i>Ablative</i>	-e	-ibus

3 RD DECLENSION MASCULINE/FEMININE I-STEM		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-varies-	-ēs
<i>Genitive</i>	-is	-ium
<i>Dative</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-em	-ēs / -īs
<i>Ablative</i>	-e	-ibus

3 RD DECLENSION NEUTER I-STEM		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-varies-	-ia
<i>Genitive</i>	-is	-ium
<i>Dative</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-varies	-ia
<i>Ablative</i>	-ī	-ibus

BEWARE OF NEUTER NOUNS!!

The unusual-looking
nominatives of the
3rd declension might
actually be **accusative**
if the noun is neuter!



Animal tē terret.

✧The animal✧ scares you.
(Neuter Nominative)

Animal vidēs.

You see ✧the animal✧.
(Neuter Accusative)

FOURTH DECLENSION



MASCULINE NOUNS

Nouns in -US
↓
Masculine
except for:
manus, f. (hand)
domus, f. (house)
+
a few other
feminine nouns.

FOURTH DECLENSION MASCULINE

Typical:
fluctus, fluctūs, m. (wave)
Genitive Singular: -ŪS

STEM
↓
Cut off -ŪS from
Genitive Singular.

4TH DECLENSION MASCULINE ENDINGS

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-us	-ūs
<i>Genitive</i>	-ūs*	-uum
<i>Dative</i>	-uī	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-um	-ūs
<i>Ablative</i>	-ū	-ibus

NOTE:

Accusative
Singular → -UM

Genitive
Plural → -UUM

*LONG MARK

Nominative
Singular → -US

Genitive
Singular → -ŪS

4 TH DECLENSION MASCULINE fluctus, fluctūs, m. (wave)		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	fluctus	fluctūs
<i>Genitive</i>	fluctūs	fluctuum
<i>Dative</i>	fluctuī	fluctibus
<i>Accusative</i>	fluctum	fluctūs
<i>Ablative</i>	fluctū	fluctibus



fluctus, fluctūs, m. (wave)

FOURTH DECLENSION



NEUTER NOUNS

Nouns in -Ū
↓
Neuter

FOURTH DECLENSION NEUTER

Typical:
cornū, cornūs, n. (horn, wing of an army)
Genitive Singular: -Ūs

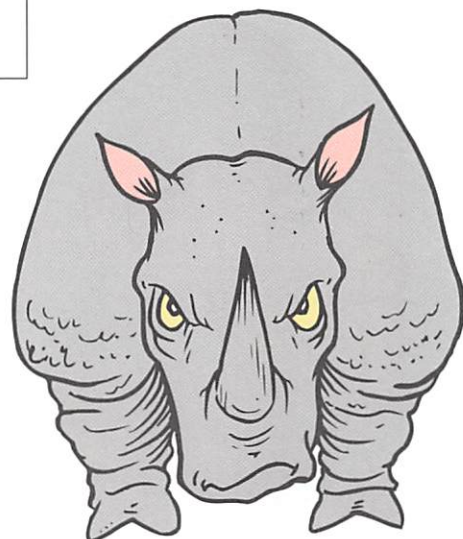
STEM
↓
Cut off -Ūs from
Genitive Singular.

4TH DECLENSION NEUTER ENDINGS

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-ū	-ua
<i>Genitive</i>	-ūs	-uum
<i>Dative</i>	-ū	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-ū	-ua
<i>Ablative</i>	-ū	-ibus



4 TH DECLENSION NEUTER cornū, cornūs, n. (horn, wing of an army)		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Genitive</i>	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dative</i>	cornū	cornibus
<i>Accusative</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Ablative</i>	cornū	cornibus



cornū, cornūs, n. (horn)

FOURTH DECLENSION



SUMMARY

4 TH DECLENSION MASCULINE		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-us	-ūs
<i>Genitive</i>	-ūs	-uum
<i>Dative</i>	-uī	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-um	-ūs
<i>Ablative</i>	-ū	-ibus

MASCULINE VS. NEUTER

Major differences
in the singular,
“nominative”
differences in
the plural.

4 TH DECLENSION NEUTER		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-ū	-ūa
<i>Genitive</i>	-ūs	-uum
<i>Dative</i>	-ū	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	-ū	-ūa
<i>Ablative</i>	-ū	-ibus

MASCULINE NOUNS: -US vs. -ŪS

-US



Nominative Singular

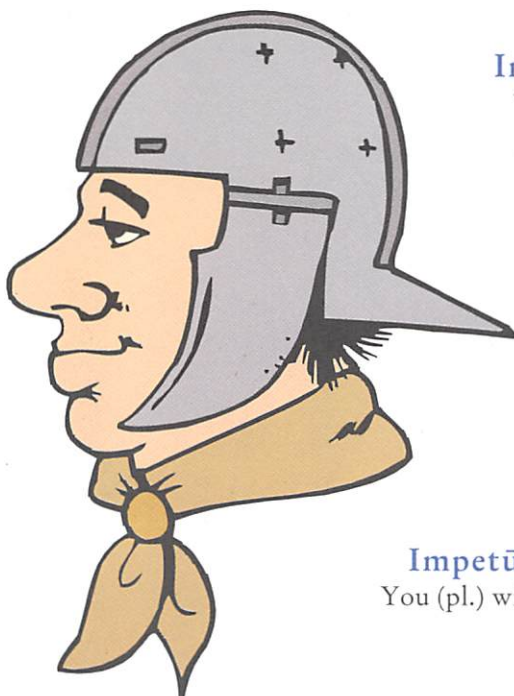
-ŪS



Genitive Singular

Nominative Plural

Accusative Plural



Impetus nōs terruit.

✧The attack✧ scared us.

(Nominative Singular)

Ēventum **impetūs** expectāmus.

We await the outcome ✧of the attack✧.

(Genitive Singular)

Impetūs hostium ācerrimī erant.

✧The attacks✧ of the enemies were very fierce.

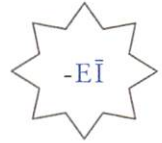
(Nominative Plural)

Impetūs in patriam nostram faciētis.

You (pl.) will make ✧attacks✧ against our fatherland.

(Accusative Plural)

FIFTH DECLENSION



FEMININE (AND SOME MASCULINE) NOUNS

Most fifth declension nouns are **feminine**, but **a few** are **masculine**:

diēs → day
merīdiēs → midday

FIFTH DECLENSION

Typical:
rēs, reī, f. (thing, matter, situation)
diēs, diēī, f. (day)

Genitive Singular: -EĪ

STEM

↓
Cut off **-EĪ** from **Genitive Singular**.



diēs, diēī, m. (day)

5 TH DECLENSION ENDINGS		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Genitive</i>	-eī	-ērum
<i>Dative</i>	-eī	-ēbus
<i>Accusative</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Ablative</i>	-ē	-ēbus

Some nouns have an "i" at the end of their stems. Do not cut this off!

(Notice also that these nouns have ēī with a long ē in the genitive and dative singular.)

5 TH DECLENSION rēs, reī, f. (thing, matter, situation)		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	rēs	rēs
<i>Genitive</i>	reī	rērum
<i>Dative</i>	reī	rēbus
<i>Accusative</i>	rem	rēs
<i>Ablative</i>	rē	rēbus

5 TH DECLENSION diēs, diēī, m. (day)		
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	diēs	diēs
<i>Genitive</i>	diēī	diērum
<i>Dative</i>	diēī	diēbus
<i>Accusative</i>	diem	diēs
<i>Ablative</i>	diē	diēbus

IRREGULAR NOUNS

DOMUS

DOMUS, DOMŪS, F.
(house, home)

This noun belongs
to the 4th declension,
but it often uses some
2nd declension endings.

STANDARD ENDINGS: 4TH DECLENSION

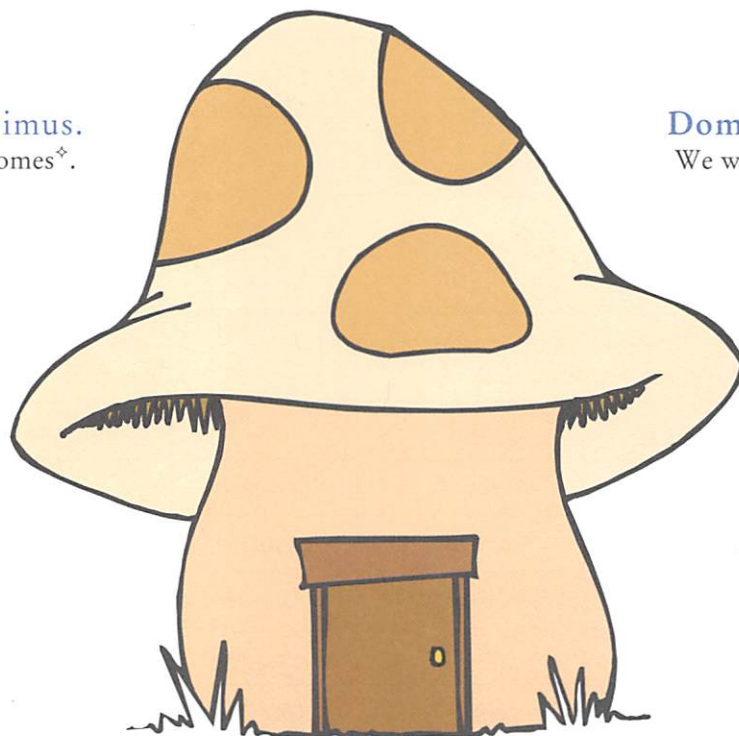
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs	domuum
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domū	domibus

COMMON SUBSTITUTIONS: 2ND DECLENSION

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domī	domōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	domō	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domōs
<i>Abl.</i>	domō	domibus

Domūs aedificābimus.
We will build our *homes*.

Domōs aedificābimus.
We will build our *homes*.



IRREGULAR NOUNS

VĪS



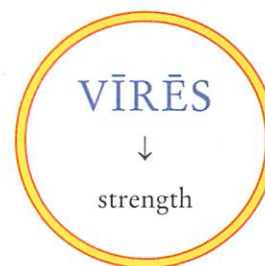
VĪS, VĪS, F.
(force, violence)

This noun is a 3rd declension I-Stem with some **unusual singular** forms and very unusual plural forms.

In fact, *vīs* looks completely **different** in the **plural** and has a different meaning as well.

↓

VĪRĒS, VĪRIUM, F.
(strength) - **plural** of *vīs*



	VĪS, VĪS, F. (force, violence; strength [pl.])	
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	vīs	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	vī	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vīm	vīrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus

Vīrēs ursī timēmus.
We fear *the strength* of the bear.



NOUN CASE OVERVIEW

ALL DECLENSION FORMS

1ST DECLENSION

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	-a	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	-ae	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ae	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	-am	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	-ā	-īs
<i>Voc.</i>	-a	-ae

2ND MASCULINE

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	-us/-ius, -r	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	-ī	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ō	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	-ō	-īs
<i>Voc.</i>	-e/-ī, -r	-ī

2ND NEUTER

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	-um	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	-ī	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ō	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	-ō	-īs
<i>Voc.</i>	-um	-a

See p. 88
for more
information on
the **vocative**
case.

3RD MASC./FEM.

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	---	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	-e	-ibus
<i>Voc.</i>	---	-ēs

3RD NEUTER

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	---	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	---	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	-e	-ibus
<i>Voc.</i>	---	-a

3RD I-STEM MASC./FEM.

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	---	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-ēs / -īs
<i>Abl.</i>	-e	-ibus
<i>Voc.</i>	---	-ēs

3RD I-STEM NEUT.

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	---	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	---	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Voc.</i>	---	-ia

4TH MASCULINE

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	-us	-ūs
<i>Gen.</i>	-ūs	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	-uī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-ūs
<i>Abl.</i>	-ū	-ibus
<i>Voc.</i>	-us	-ūs

4TH NEUTER

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	-ū	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	-ūs	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ū	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-ū	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	-ū	-ibus
<i>Voc.</i>	-ū	-ua

5TH DECLENSION

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-eī	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	-eī	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	-ē	-ēbus
<i>Voc.</i>	-ēs	-ēs

NOUN CASE OVERVIEW

BASIC CASE TRANSLATIONS

The chart below presents the **basic translation** of each noun case.

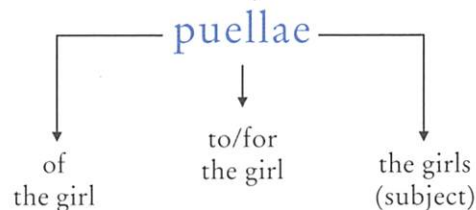
	<u>SINGULAR</u>	<u>PLURAL</u>
<i>Nominative</i>	the noun (subject)	the nouns (subject)
<i>Genitive</i>	OF the noun	OF the nouns
<i>Dative</i>	TO/FOR the noun	TO/FOR the nouns
<i>Accusative</i>	the noun (direct object)	the nouns (direct object)
<i>Ablative</i>	* _____ * the noun	* _____ * the nouns

There are **many words** that may be used when translating ablatives into English.

Some examples are:
by, with, from, in, within,
because of, and than.

Often, one form may represent several different cases.

In a sentence, **context** clues will help you determine the correct interpretation.



ARTICLES

ARTICLES

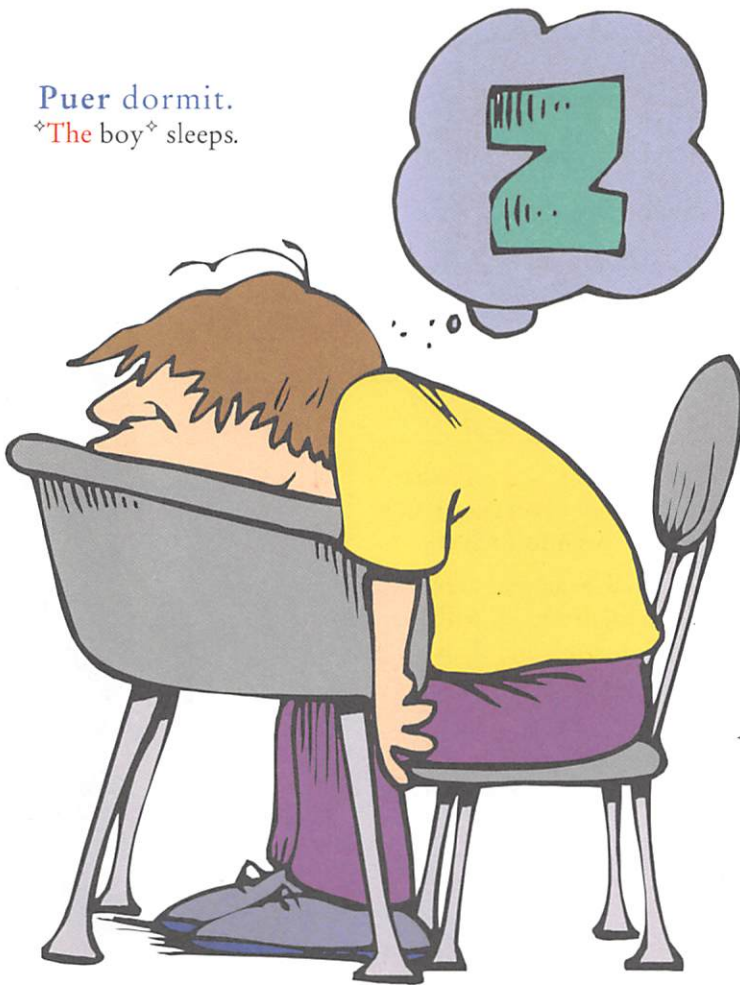
“The” is referred to as the
definite article.

“A/An” is referred to as the
indefinite article.



Latin does not have words
for “the” or “a/an,”
so you must add them
into your English translation
whenever it seems appropriate.

Puer dormit.
♦The boy♦ sleeps.



Your instincts and context
clues will help you decide
whether to add “the” or
“a/an” to a noun.

Often, “the” will sound best
if the noun has already
been mentioned.

Puer nōn in lectō dormit.
♦The boy♦ does not sleep on ♦a bed♦.

INTRODUCTION TO THE NOMINATIVE CASE

NOMINATIVE CASE

Acts as the **subject** of the verb.

OR

Is linked to the subject by "**is**."

Subject
Nominative

Antōnia currit.

♦Antonia♦ runs.



Predicate
Nominative

Antōnia dēfessa est.

Antonia is ♦tired♦.

1ST DECLENSION NOMINATIVES

	M./F.
Sing.	-a
Pl.	-ae

2ND DECLENSION NOMINATIVES

	M.	N.
Sing.	-us	-um
Pl.	-ī	-a

3RD DECLENSION NOMINATIVES

	M./F.	N.
Sing.	-varies-	-varies-
Pl.	-ēs	-a

SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

SUBJECT:

Noun that **performs** the verb -
appears in the **nominative** case.

Puella lūdit.

✧The girl✧ plays.

SINGULAR

"The girl" = "She" –
3rd person singular



Verb ends in: **-T**

Puellae lūdunt.

✧The girls✧ play.

PLURAL

"The girls" = "They" –
3rd person plural



Verb ends in: **-NT**



1ST & 2ND PERSON VERBS

When the subject of a verb is
I, you, we, or you (pl.),
you will usually not find a
subject nominative.

3RD PERSON VERBS

If the subject of the verb is
he/she/it and there is no
nominative, use context to
figure out whether to say
"he", "she", or "it."

Dormīre parāmus.

✧We✧ prepare to sleep.



No nominative is required
because the verb ending indicates
that "we" is the subject.

Titus dormīre parat.

✧Titus✧ prepares to sleep.

In lectō iacet.

✧He✧ lies down on the bed.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

WITH *SUM, ESSE*

LINKING
VERB:
am, is, are
was, were
will be

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

Noun or Adjective **linked to the subject**
by a linking verb:

"Noun" IS "noun/adjective."
↓ ↓ ↓
Subject Linking Verb Predicate Nominative

Caesar is **a general**.
(Noun)

Caesar is **brave**.
(Adjective)

WORD ORDER

English word order:
Subject - Linking Verb - Predicate Nominative

Latin word order:
Flexible



Diāna est dea lūnae.
Diana is ^{the goddess} of the moon.
(Noun)

Stēllae vetustae sunt.
The stars are ^{ancient}.
(Adjective)

Lūcida erat lūna.
The moon was ^{bright}.
(Adjective)

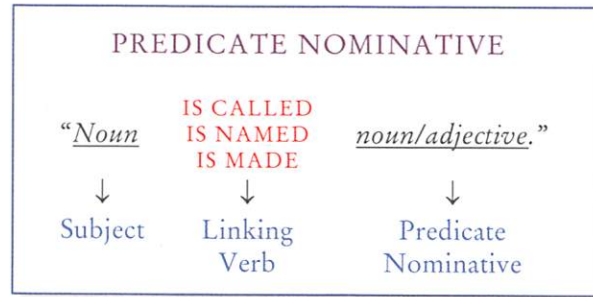
PRESENT OF SUM

sum - I am
es - you are
est - he/she/it is
sumus - we are
estis - you (pl.) are
sunt - they are

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

WITH PASSIVE OF "CALL," "NAME," "MAKE"

LINKING
VERB:
Passive of
call, name,
make



You were named **king**.
(Noun)

You were called the **best**
of all students.
(Adjective)

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE TRIGGERS

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus (to call)

appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus (to name)

fīō, fierī, factus sum (to be made, become)

Equus **Pēgasus** appellātur.

The horse is named †Pegasus†.

(Noun)



Pēgasus ab omnibus **optimus equus** vocātur.

Pegasus is called †the best horse† by everyone.

(Adjective + Noun)

INTRODUCTION TO THE GENITIVE CASE

GENITIVE CASE

Often translated
into English
by adding
“**OF**.”

Castra Rōmānōrum dēfendēmus.
We will defend the camp **of** the Romans.

Genitive
of
Possession

Militēs magnae audāciae sumus.
We are soldiers **of** great daring.

Genitive
of
Description

Quis timōrem Gallōrum habet?
Who has fear **of** the Gauls?

Objective
Genitive



1ST DECLENSION GENITIVES

	<i>M./F.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	-ae
<i>Pl.</i>	-ārum

2ND DECLENSION GENITIVES

	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	-ī	-ī
<i>Pl.</i>	-ōrum	-ōrum

3RD DECLENSION GENITIVES

	<i>M./F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	-is	-is
<i>Pl.</i>	-um	-um

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

Genitive case can indicate **ownership**.



“**OF**” or “**’S**”

Vōcem **Antōniae** agnōscō.



I recognize ♡Antonia’**s**♡ voice.

I recognize the voice ♡**of** Antonia♡.



APOSTROPHE RULES

When the possessive noun is **plural**, the **apostrophe** goes **after** the “s.”

Singular	Plural
’s	s’



Meārum amīcārum vōcēs agnōscō.

I recognize ♡my friends’♡ voices.

Marcus possesses the friend,
not the food.



Marcī amīcus cibum devōrat.

♡ ♡Marcus♡ friend devours the food.

✗ A friend devours ♡Marcus♡ food.

Genitives are generally placed close to the nouns they possess.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE

PARTITIVE – WITH *MULTĪ*, *NĒMŌ*, *PARS*, *QUIS*, NUMBERS



PARTITIVE GENITIVE

Multī, *nēmō*, *pars*, *quis*, and numbers represent a “**part**” (or **quantity**).

A noun in the **genitive** represents the “**whole**” that the “part” belongs to.

↓
“**OF**”

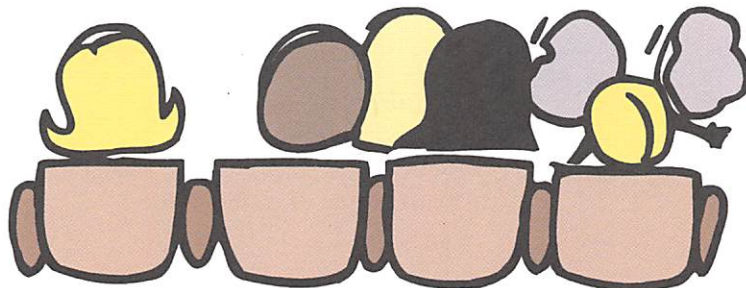
NUMBERS

ūnus (1)
quīnque (5)
decem (10)
centum (100)

PARTITIVE GENITIVE TRIGGERS

multī, *multae*, *multa* (many)
nēmō, *nēminis*, m. (no one)
pars, *partis*, f. (part)
quis (who?)

Part Whole
↓ ↓
One of the spectators



Multōs equōrum laudāmus.
We praise many **of** the horses.

Nēmō agricolārum tē timet.
None (no one) **of** the farmers fears you.

Partem urbis vīdī.
I saw part **of** the city.

Quis poētārum Rōmam amat?
Who/Which **of** the poets loves Rome?

Quīnque equōrum effūgerunt.
Five **of** the horses fled.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE

PARTITIVE – WITH *NIHIL*, *ALIQUID*, *SATIS*, ETC.



PARTITIVE GENITIVE

Nihil, *aliquid*, *satis*, etc. (see below) represent a “**part**” (or **quantity**).

A noun in the **genitive** represents the “**whole**” that the “part” belongs to.

“OF” is not needed.



PARTITIVE GENITIVE TRIGGERS

nihil (nothing)
aliquid (something)
satis (enough)
tantum (so much)
quantum (how much?)
nimis (too much)
parum (too little)
plūs (more)
minus (less)

NOTE:

These forms are all neuter **nominative** or **accusative**.

nihil cibī → **no** food
nihil malī → **nothing** bad

aliquid cibī → **some** food
aliquid malī → **something** bad

satis cibī → **enough** food

tantum cibī → **so much** food

parum cibī → **too little** food

plūs cibī → **more** food

tantum aquae
so much ♦water♦



OBJECTIVE GENITIVE



OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

An **action** or **emotion** noun can trigger a noun in the genitive case.

That **genitive** noun is the **recipient** of the action or emotion expressed by the trigger noun.



“OF” or “FOR” or “S”

“OBJECT”



Noun that **receives** action.

COMMON NOUNS THAT IMPLY EMOTION

amor, amōris, m. (love)
cūra, cūrae, f. (concern, care)
spēs, speī, f. (hope)
studium, studiī, n. (zeal, enthusiasm)
metus, metūs, m. (fear)
timor, timōris, m. (fear)
odium, odiī, n. (hatred)

COMMON NOUNS THAT IMPLY ACTION

auxilium, auxiliī, n. (help)
causa, causae, f. (cause, reason)
iniūria, iniūriae, f. (injury, insult)
dux, ducis, m. (leader)
imperātor, imperatōris, m. (commander)
magister, magistrī, m. (teacher)
custōs, custōdis, m./f. (guardian)

Metum **fābulārum** horrendārum habeō.

I have a fear [✧]of scary stories[✧].

“Scary stories” are the direct object of the implied verb “to fear.”

Quis erit custōs **līberōrum**?

Who will be the [✧]children’s[✧] guardian?

“Children” are the direct object of the implied verb “to guard.”



Studium **salūtis** mē rēgit.
Enthusiasm [✧]for safety[✧] guides me.

Fābula erat causa **timōris**.
The story was the reason [✧]for my fear[✧].

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

With
Action
or
Emotion
noun

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

An **action** or **emotion** noun can trigger
a noun in the genitive case.

That **genitive** noun represents the **subject**
of the action or emotion expressed
by the trigger noun.

↓
“OF” or “’S”

“SUBJECT”

↓
Noun that
performs action.

Huius viri adventus nōs terruit.

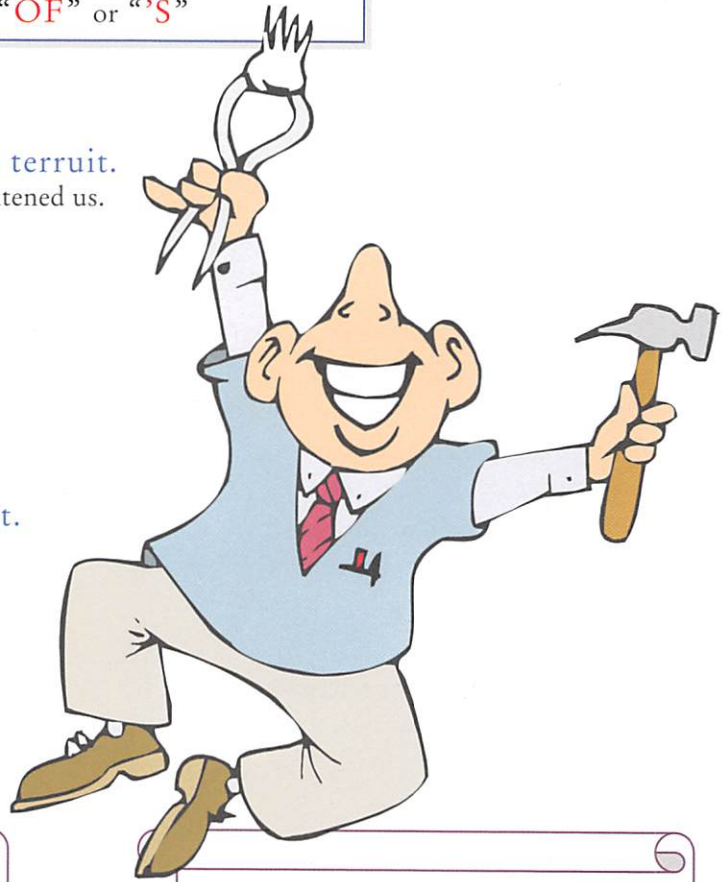
The arrival **of** this man frightened us.

↓
“This man” is
the subject of
the implied verb
“to arrive.”

Studium huius viri malum est.

“This man’s” enthusiasm is sinister.

↓
“This man” is
the subject of
the implied verb
“to hope.”



COMMON NOUNS THAT IMPLY **EMOTION**

amor, amōris, m. (love)
cūra, cūrae, f. (concern, care)
spēs, speī, f. (hope)
studium, studiī, n. (zeal, enthusiasm)
metus, metūs, m. (fear)
timor, timōris, m. (fear)
odium, odiī, n. (hatred)

COMMON NOUNS THAT IMPLY **ACTION**

auxilium, auxiliī, n. (help)
iniūria, iniūriae, f. (injury, insult)
adventus, adventūs, m. (arrival)
exitus, exitūs, m. (departure)
impetus, impetūs, m. (attack)
ductus, ductūs, m. (leadership)
mandātum, mandātī, n. (order)

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

Descriptions can give **physical** or **personality** information.

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

Genitive Noun + Adjective pair



Indicates a **characteristic** of some other noun in the sentence.



“**OF**” or “**WITH**”

NOUN
&
ADJECTIVE

Hominem fortis animi dēsiderāmus.
We need a person **with** a courageous heart.

EIUS MODI



“of that sort”



Vir eius modi es.
You are a man **of** that sort.



GENITIVE & ABLATIVE

Both cases can convey descriptions (see p. 73).



Vir tantae prouidentiae es!
You are a man **of** such great wisdom!
(Genitive)

The **genitive** is used when the description involves **definite measurements**. This use of the genitive of description is sometimes called the “Genitive of Measurement.”

Vir tantā prouidentia es!
You are a man **of** such great wisdom!
(Ablative)

Ignem vīcistī post proelium trium hōrārum.
You conquered the fire after a battle **of** three hours.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

Genitive noun indicates the **material** of which something is composed.



“OF”

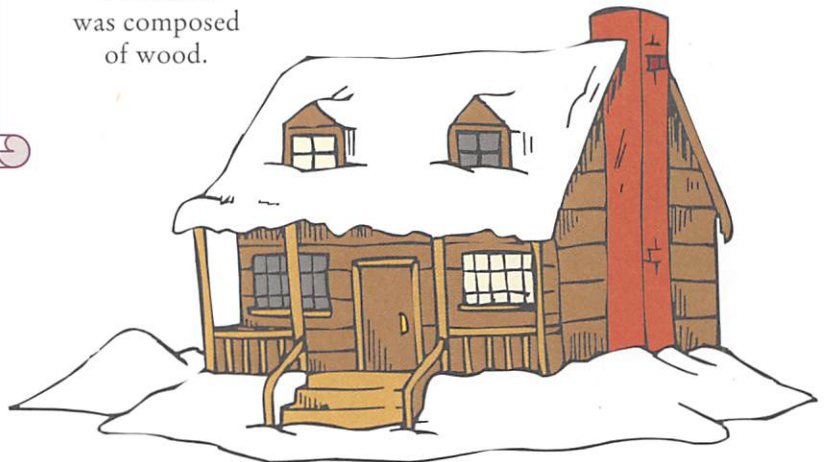
COMMON MATERIALS

- aes, aeris, n. (bronze)
- argentum, argentī, n. (silver)
- aurum, aurī, n. (gold)
- lignum, lignī, n. (wood)
- marmor, marmoris, n. (marble)
- saxum, saxī, n. (stone)

Haec domus **lignī** ā tē aedificāta est.

This house [♦]of wood[♦] was built by you.

The house
was composed
of wood.



Ingentem acervum **vestimentōrum** portābās.

You were carrying a huge pile [♦]of clothes[♦].

The pile
was composed
of clothes.

Genitive of Material
is not limited to
construction
materials!



GENITIVE OF VALUE

Be creative with your English translation and phrase this construction in whatever way seems to make sense.

GENITIVE OF VALUE

A verb of **buying, selling, esteeming** or a **linking** verb can trigger a genitive noun indicating **value/importance**.

Note the special meaning these verbs take on when combined with a genitive of value.

BUYING, SELLING, ESTEEMING

emō, emere, ēmi, emptus (to buy)

vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus (to sell)

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (to value)

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (to value)

aestimō, aestimāre, aestimāvī, aestimātus (to value)

LINKING

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (to be)

fīō, fīerī, factus sum (to become)

to sell
for a high
price

to
value
highly

to be
of great
value



Quantī venditur cibus?

♦For how much♦ is the food sold?

Hunc lūdum maximī facis.

You value this game ♦very highly♦.

Quid plūris est quam victōria?

What is ♦of greater value♦ than victory?

GENITIVES OF VALUE

magnī - high

plūris - higher

maximī - highest

parvī - little

minōris - less

minimī - the least

tantī - so much

quantī - how much?

nihilī - unimportant

GENITIVE AS AN APPOSITIVE



APPOSITIONAL GENITIVE

Genitive noun can
rename/explain another noun.

e.g. the burden of fear
("Of fear" explains what the burden is.)



"OF"

NOTE:

The appositional genitive
is **not** used for phrases like:

"the city of Troy"

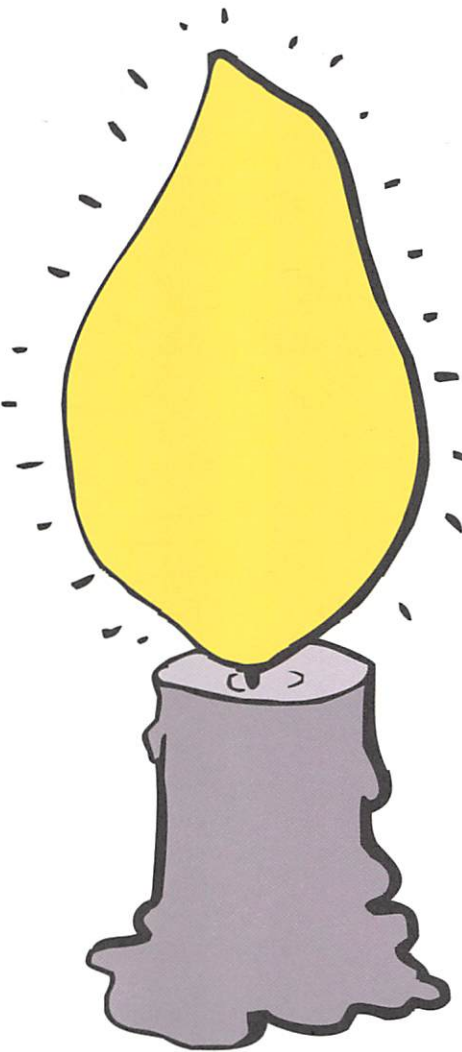
or

"the island of Sardinia"



A simple **appositive**
is used instead:

urbs Trōia
īnsula Sardinia



Promētheus dōnum flammae hominibus dedit.

Prometheus gave the gift ^{of} fire ^{to} mankind.



"Of fire" explains
what the gift is.

Promētheus poenam exiliī pendit.

Prometheus paid the penalty ^{of} exile ^{to}.



"Of exile" explains
what the penalty is.

GENITIVE OF THE CHARGE

GENITIVE OF THE CHARGE

Genitive noun indicates the charge of which someone has been accused, convicted, or acquitted.



“OF” or “FOR”

Pecūniae publicae accūsātus es.
You were accused [✧]of embezzlement[✧].

CHARGES

ambitus, ambitūs, m. (bribery)
avāritia, avāritiae, f. (greed)
fūrtum, fūrtī, m. (theft)
impietās, impietātis, f. (blasphemy)
pecūnia pūblica, -ae, f. (embezzlement)

ACCUSING, CONVICTING, ACQUITTING

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (to accuse)
arguō, arguere, arguī, argūtus (to accuse)
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (to condemn)
damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (to condemn)
absolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus (to acquit)

NON-GENITIVE CHARGES

dē vī - “of assault”
dē venēficiīs - “of poisoning”
dē caede - “of murder”
inter sīcāriōs - “of murder”

Lūcium fūrtī damnāvērunt.
They condemned Lucius [✧]for theft[✧].

Lūcium dē vī absolvētur.
Lucius will be acquitted [✧]of assault[✧].



GENITIVE WITH SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives
can trigger a genitive noun.



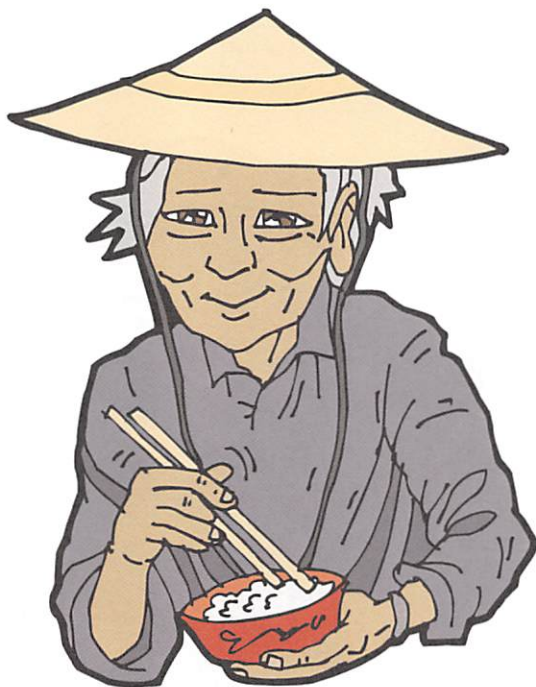
“OF” or “FOR”

NOTE:

Adjectives that trigger a
genitive tend to express **desire**,
memory, **knowledge**, **fullness**,
power, and **sharing**.

Cupida cibī sum!

I am eager [✧]for food[✧].



Perīta artium coquīnāriārum sum.

I am skilled [✧]in the culinary arts[✧].

COMMON ADJECTIVES THAT TRIGGER A GENITIVE

avidus, avida, avidum (greedy)

cupidus, cupida, cupidum (desirous, eager)

memor, memōris (mindful)

perītus, perīta, perītum (skilled [in])

imperītus, imperīta, imperītum (ignorant)

plēnus, plēna, plēnum (full)

expers, expertis (devoid)

potēns, potentis (powerful [over])

particeps, participis (sharing [in])

affīnis, affīne (involved [with])

Sometimes words other
than “of” and “for”
may be necessary.

GENITIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

GENITIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

Some verbs take their **direct object** in the **genitive case**.



Virī vulnerātī miseretur.
She pities ♦the wounded man♦.

VERBS WITH GENITIVE OBJECTS

misereor, miserēri, miseritus sum (to pity, feel sorry for)

meminī, meminisse (to remember)

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum (to forget)

potior, potīri, potītus sum (to get control of, get possession of)

Meminī and **oblīvīscor** sometimes take **accusative** objects.

Potior can also take an **ablative** object, and in fact it usually does so.
(See p. 87)

MEMINĪ, MEMINISSE

DEFECTIVE:

Only has **perfect, pluperfect, future perfect** forms

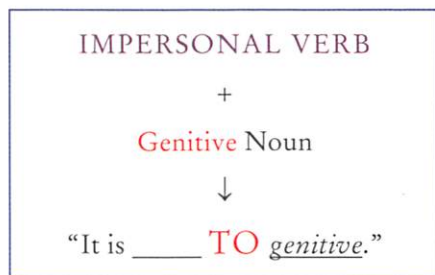


Translate as present, perfect, and future

meministī	You remember
meminerās	You remembered
memineris	You will remember

GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS

WITH THE GENITIVE



Flāviae interest.
It is important **to** Flavia.

IMPERSONAL VERBS THAT TRIGGER A GENITIVE

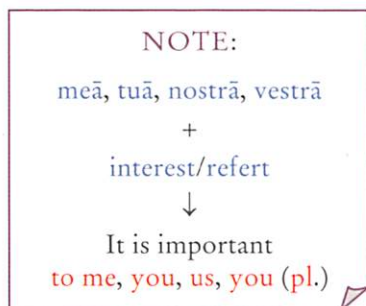
interest, interesse, interfui
(it is important, it matters)

rēfert, rēferre, rētulit
(it is important, it matters)

Omnium intererit.
It will be important **to** all.

Impersonal verbs are
often accompanied
by **infinitives**.

Patriam dēfendere Rōmānōrum interest.
It is important to the Romans **to defend** the fatherland.



Illud meā referēbat.
That was important **to me**.



GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS

WITH THE GENITIVE AND THE ACCUSATIVE

ACCUSATIVE

↓
Person
affected

IMPERSONAL VERBS THAT TRIGGER GENITIVE & ACCUSATIVE

miseret, miserēre, miseruīt (*acc. pities gen.*)

piget, pigēre, piguit (*acc. dislikes gen.*)

pudet, pudēre, puduit (*acc. is ashamed of gen.*)

taedet, taedēre, taeduit (*acc. is weary of gen.*)

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit (*acc. feels sorrow about gen.*)

GENITIVE

↓
Cause of
accusative's
feeling

Cornēliam piget diērum frīgidōrum.

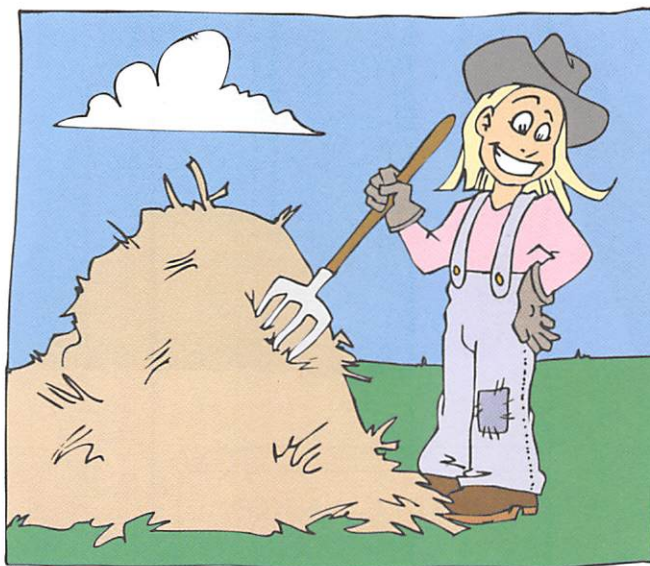
✧Cornelia✧ dislikes ✧cold days✧.

Labōrum Cornēliam taedēbat.

✧Cornelia✧ was weary of ✧her chores✧.

Urbānōrum miseret Cornēliam.

✧Cornelia✧ pities ✧city folk✧.



Vītae Cornēliam nōn paenitēbit.

✧Cornelia✧ will not feel regret about ✧her life✧.

INTRODUCTION TO THE DATIVE CASE

DATIVE CASE

Often translated
into English
by adding
"TO" or "FOR."

Militibus auxilium dabimus.
We will give help ^{to} the soldiers^{*}.

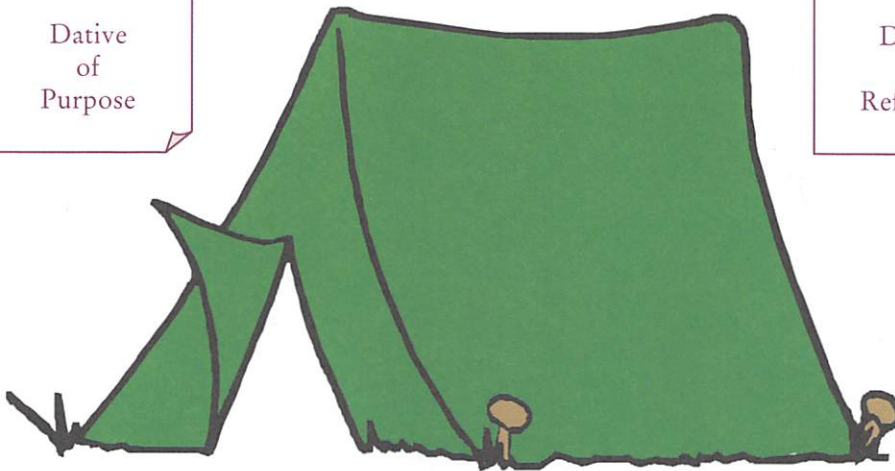
Dative
of
Indirect
Object

Locum castris petimus.
We look for a place ^{for} our camp^{*}.

Dative
of
Purpose

Tentorium vulneratis ponēs.
You will set up a tent ^{for} the wounded^{*}.

Dative
of
Reference



1ST DECLENSION DATIVES

	<i>M./F.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	-ae
<i>Pl.</i>	-īs

2ND DECLENSION DATIVES

	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	-ō	-ō
<i>Pl.</i>	-īs	-īs

3RD DECLENSION DATIVES

	<i>M./F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	-ī	-ī
<i>Pl.</i>	-ibus	-ibus

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT



DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT:
Noun to which something
is **given**, **shown**, or **said**.

I give noun a gift.
I give a gift to noun.
↓
"TO"

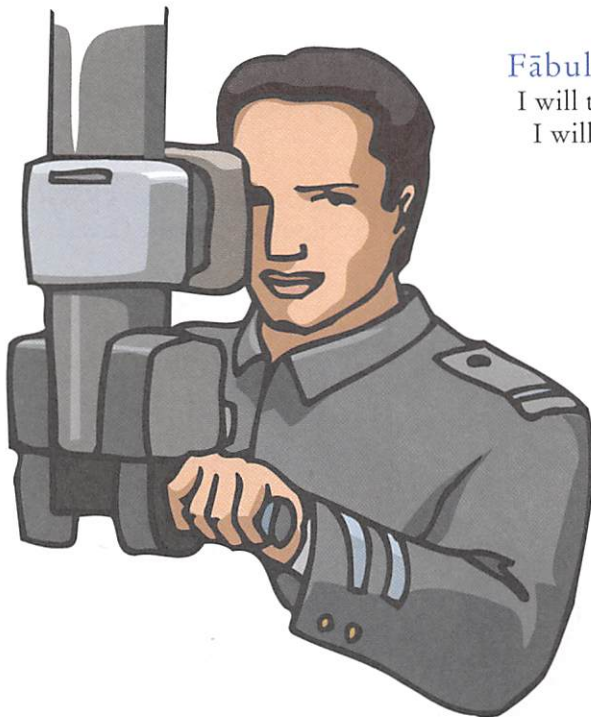
INDIRECT OBJECT TRIGGERS

dō, dare, dedī, datus
(to give)

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus
(to show)

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus
(to tell)

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus
(to say, speak)



Fābulam **filiae** nārrābō dē itineribus meīs.

I will tell a story about my travels **to** my daughter.

I will tell my daughter a story about my travels.

Mihi, nautae, virtūtem monstrāte.

Show your courage **to** me, sailors.

Show me your courage, sailors.

Deī **linteīs** ventum dant.

The gods give wind **to** the sails.

The gods give the sails wind.

DIRECT OBJECT

The noun that is
given, shown, or told.

Pauca verba dīcam.

I will speak a few words.

INDIRECT OBJECT

The noun that something is
given, shown, or told **to**.

Nautae dīcam.

I will speak to the sailor.

DATIVE OF REFERENCE

ADVANTAGE AND DISADVANTAGE

DATIVE OF REFERENCE

Dative noun indicates the person/thing
“for whom” the verb is performed:

can indicate that the verb happens to the
advantage or disadvantage of the dative noun.



“FOR”

ADVANTAGE

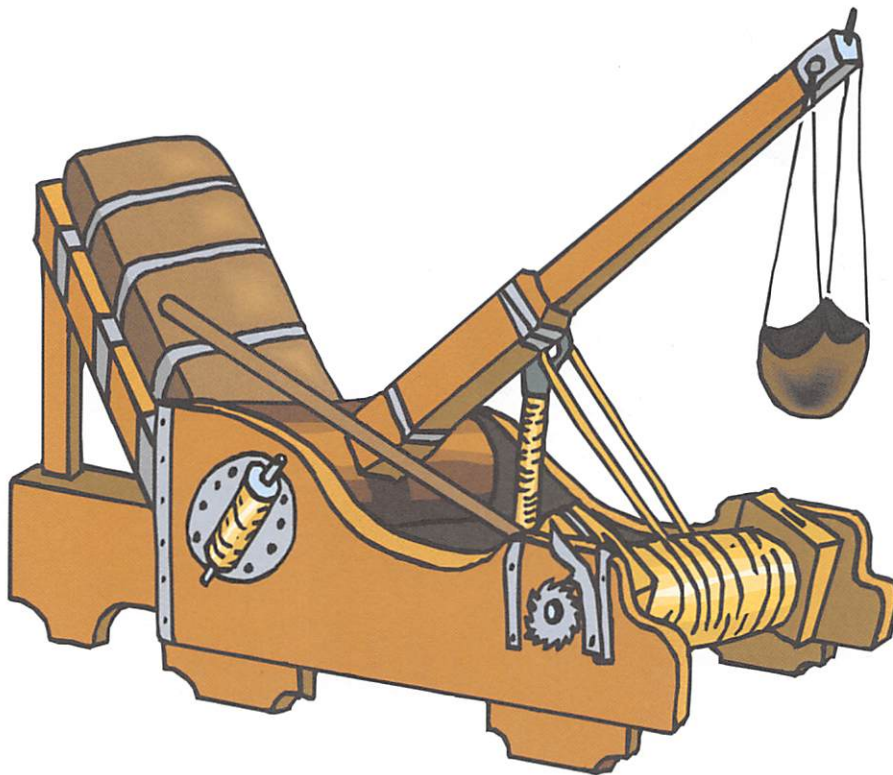


Rēgnum tibi condam.
I will found a kingdom [♦]for you[♦].

DISADVANTAGE



Calamitātem Graecīs parāvisti.
You prepared disaster [♦]for the Greeks[♦].



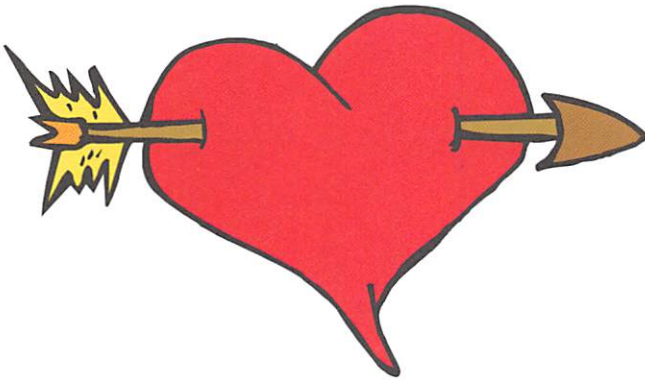
DATIVE OF REFERENCE

WITH GENITIVE FORCE

DATIVE OF REFERENCE WITH GENITIVE FORCE

Sometimes a dative of reference is best translated as if it were a **possessive** genitive. When this occurs, we use the term:

“Dative of Reference
with Genitive Force.”



Amor animum tibi flammāvit.

Love inflamed *your* heart.

(Love inflamed the heart *for you*.)

When the dative seems to indicate who is being affected by some action but “to” or “for” sound ridiculous, try “of”.

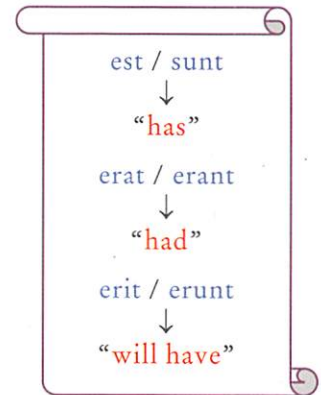
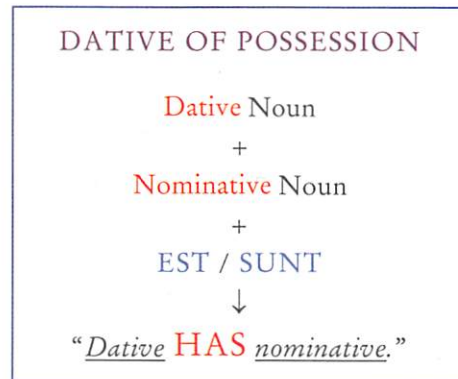
Crīnēs puerō tondēbās.

You were cutting *the boy's* hair.

(You were cutting the hair *for the boy*.)



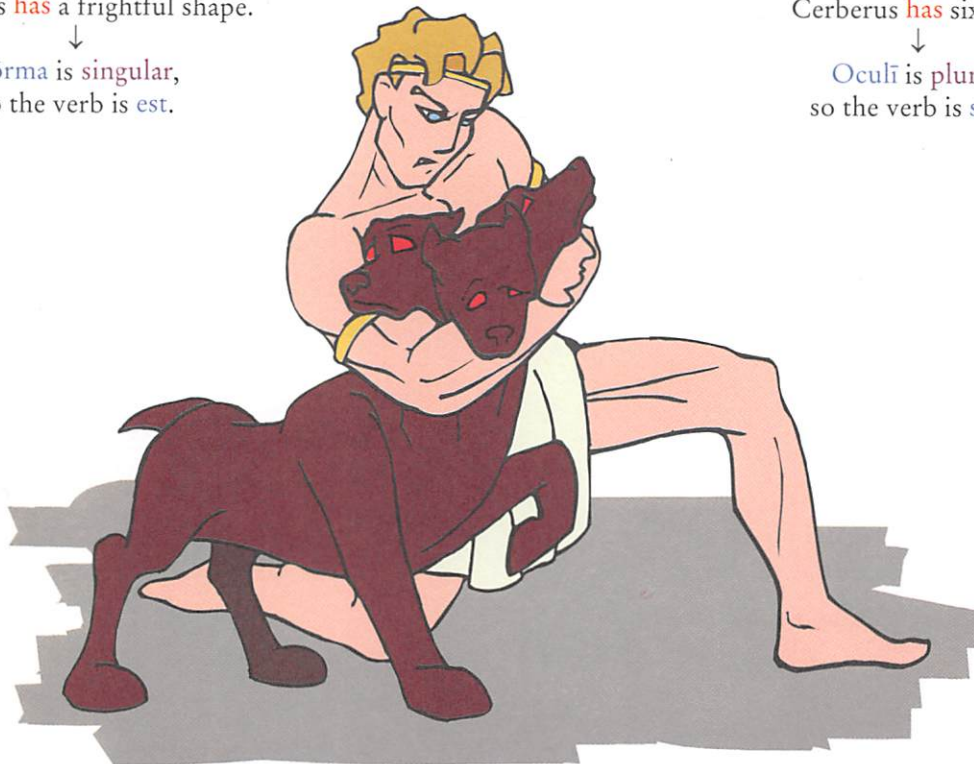
DATIVE OF POSSESSION



The **verb's number** (singular or plural) depends on the number of things being possessed (**nominative**), not on the number of things possessing.

Dative Nominative
↓ ↓
Cerberō est fōrma terribilis.
Cerberus **has** a frightful shape.
↓
Fōrma is **singular**,
so the verb is **est**.

Dative Nominative
↓ ↓
Cerberō sunt sex oculī.
Cerberus **has** six eyes.
↓
Oculī is **plural**,
so the verb is **sunt**.



DATIVE OF PURPOSE

DATIVE OF PURPOSE (OR END)

Dative noun indicates the
purpose or the effect
of some noun or action.



“AS” or “FOR”

Cornēlia auxiliō veniet.

Cornelia will come ◊as a help◊.



Auxiliō indicates the
purpose of Cornelia coming.

Haec sella dolōrī est!

This chair is ◊as a source of pain◊!



Dolōrī indicates the
effect of the chair.

Malum locum sellae dēlēgī.

I picked a bad place ◊for my chair◊!



Sellae indicates the
purpose of picking a place.

IMPORTANT DATIVES OF PURPOSE

auxiliō - as a help

subsidiō - as a help

praesidiō - as protection

salūtī - as a salvation

ūsuī - as an advantage

impedimentō - as a hindrance

dōnō - as a gift

mūnerī - as a gift/service

cūrae - as a source of concern

dolōrī - as a source of sorrow

odiō - as a source of hatred

AWKWARD TRANSLATIONS

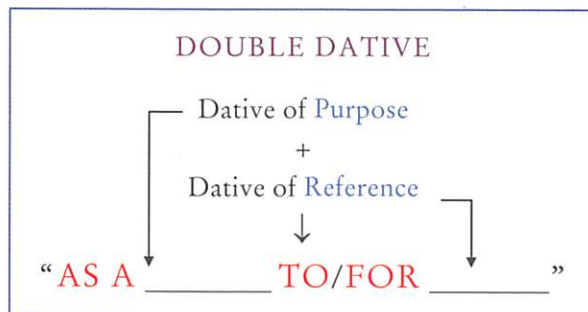
Literal translations
with “as” sometimes
sound awkward,
so you may wish to
rephrase in more
natural terms.

Cornēlia auxiliō veniet.
Cornelia will come to help.

Haec sella dolōrī est.
This chair is causing pain.



DOUBLE DATIVE



Militēs subsidiō tibi vērunt.
The soldiers came ^{as} a help ^{for} you^{*}.

Vōbisne cūrae est bellum?
Is war ^{as} a source of concern ^{to} you (pl.)^{*}?



IMPORTANT DATIVES OF PURPOSE

auxiliō - as a help
 subsidiō - as a help
 praesidiō - as protection
 salūtī - as a salvation
 ūsuī - as an advantage
 impedimentō - as a hindrance
 dōnō - as a gift
 mūnerī - as a gift/service
 cūrae - as a source of concern
 dolōrī - as a source of sorrow
 odiō - as a source of hatred

AWKWARD TRANSLATIONS

Literal translations with “as” sometimes sound awkward, so you may wish to rephrase in more natural terms.

Militēs subsidiō tibi vērunt.
The soldiers came to help you.

Vōbisne cūrae est bellum?
Does war worry you (pl.)?

DATIVE OF AGENT

DATIVE OF AGENT

Typically appears with
the **passive periphrastic**.
(See pp. 258-262)

↓
“Nominative
must be verbed
BY dative.”



PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC PHRASINGS

“Nominative
must be verbed
by dative.”

OR

“Dative
must verb
nominative.”

Scōpae nōbis agendaē sunt.

↓

The brooms must be driven **by** us.

or

“We” **must** drive the brooms.

IMPERSONAL PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

“It is necessary
for dative to verb.”

or

“Dative **must** verb.”

Mihi volandum est.

↓

It is necessary **for** me to fly.

or

“I” **must** fly.

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives can trigger
a **dative** noun.



“**TO**” or “**FOR**”

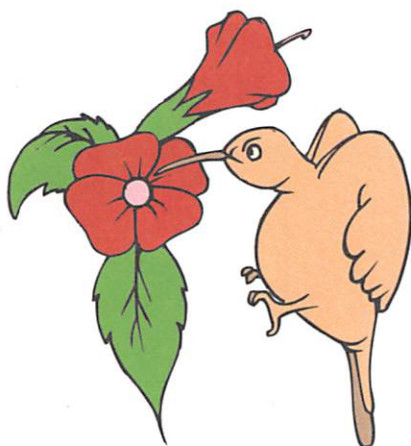
Flōrēs āvibus grātī sunt.
Flowers are pleasing **to** birds.

Facile āvibus est volāre.
It is easy **for** birds to fly.

“to”/“for”



sometimes
unnecessary



In arbore propinquā viae habitant.
They live in a tree near **to** the road.

TRANSLATION TIP

In English, you can put
the adjective **before** or **after**
the noun it modifies. Use
whichever order sounds
more natural to you.

terra idōnea tibi



a **land suitable** for you
a **suitable land** for you

SIMILIS



Often goes with the
genitive instead of
the dative when a
person is involved.

COMMON ADJECTIVES THAT TRIGGER A DATIVE

fidēlis, fidēle (loyal)

īnfestus, īnfesta, īnfestum (hostile)

amīcus, amīca, amīcum (friendly)

inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum (unfriendly)

facilis, facile (easy)

difficilis, difficile (difficult)

pār, paris (equal)

similis, simile (similar)

dissimilis, dissimile (unlike)

fīnitimus, fīnitima, fīnitimum (neighboring)

propinquus, propinqua, propinquum (near)

vīcīnus, vīcīna, vīcīnum (near)

cārus, cāra, cārum (dear)

grātus, grāta, grātum (pleasing)

idōneus, idōnea, idōneum (suitable)

molestus, molesta, molestum (troublesome)

nōtus, nōta, nōtum (well-known)

ūtilis, ūtile (useful)

→ **similis Corinthō**

similar **to** Corinth

(Standard use of **similis** with dative)

→ **similis Marcī**

similar **to** Marcus

(Special use of **similis** with genitive
because Marcus is a **person**)

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

Some verbs take their **direct object**
in the **dative case**.

Appius Līviae favet.
Appius favors ♦Livia♦.



VERBS WITH DATIVE OBJECTS[†]

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus (to give way, yield to)
cōnfidō, cōnfidere, cōnfisus sum (to rely on, trust)
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (to believe, trust)
diffidō, diffidere, diffisus sum (to distrust, not trust)
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautus (to favor)
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus (to pardon)
imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus (to order)
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus (to harm)
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus (to marry)
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus (to spare)
pāreō, pārēre, pārūī, pārītus (to obey)
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus (to persuade)
placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus (to please)
serviō, servīre, servīvī, servītus (to serve)
studeō, studēre, studuī (to study, be enthusiastic about)

[†]Different books list the principle parts of these verbs in a number of different ways. For example, you may see *cessūrus* or *cessum* as the fourth principle parts of *cēdō* instead of *cessus*.

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

PASSIVE VOICE OF SPECIAL VERB CONSTRUCTION

IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

This use of the passive voice is known as the **impersonal passive**.

LITERAL MEANING

"Verbing occurs and is directed toward dative."

(See p. 265)

PASSIVE VOICE

"noun is verbed"



Dative noun

+

3rd person singular passive verb form



Example from the **Present System** of Tenses:

nōbis crēditur
"we are trusted"

Example from the **Perfect System** of Tenses:

nōbis crēditum est
"we were trusted"

"WE ARE TRUSTED"



NŌBIS CRĒDITUR



Form of Noun
that is being verbed

Dative

Form of Verb

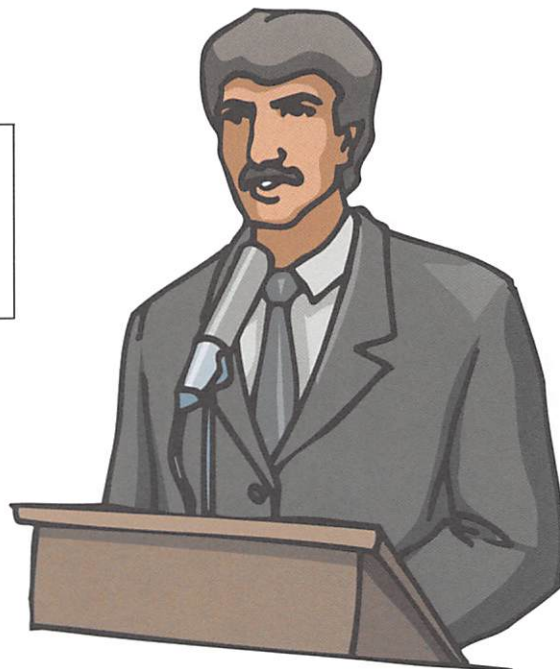
3rd person singular passive



Mihi ōratiōne perusāsūm est.

✧I was persuaded✧ by the speech.

Use the **neuter** ending on the **4th** principal part in the perfect system of tenses.



DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

DATIVE

↓
Direct
Object

If the root verb is intransitive (cannot take a direct object), the compound verb can take a **dative** noun as its **direct object** instead of the usual accusative.

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

Many verbs with the following **prefixes** can trigger a noun in the dative case:

ad-	in-	prae-
ante-	inter-	prō-
circum-	ob-	sub-
con-	post-	super-

DATIVE

↓
Finishes the
thought

If the root verb is transitive (can take a direct object), the compound verb takes an accusative direct object and uses a **dative** to **finish the thought**.

Puerī Marcō īstant.

The boys pursue †Marcus†.

Root Verb:
stō, stāre, stetī, stātus (to stand)

↓
Intransitive

Corōnam Marcī capitī impōnēmus.

We will place a garland on Marcus' †head†.

Root Verb:
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (to put)

↓
Transitive

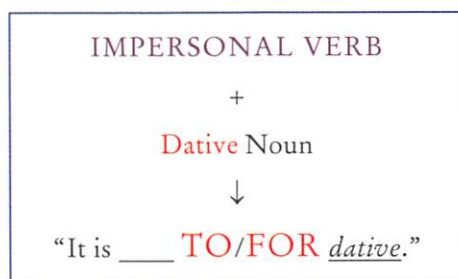


NOTE:

Some letters in these prefixes tend to change when they are placed next to certain letters.

in + p = imp-
ad + p = app-
etc.

DATIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS



IMPERSONAL VERBS THAT TRIGGER A DATIVE

accidit, accidere, accidit (it happens)
cōnstat, cōnstāre, cōnstitit (it is clear)
libet, libēre, libuit (it is pleasing)
licet, licēre, licuit (it is ^{allowed} necessary)
necesse est, esse, fuit (it is necessary)
placet, placēre, placuit (it seems good)
praestat, praestāre, praestitit (it is better)

Tibi necesse est.
It is necessary ^{for} you^{*}.

Claudiō libet.
It is pleasing ^{to} Claudius^{*}.

Impersonal verbs are
often accompanied
by **infinitives**.

Virīs necesse est **festīnāre**.
It is necessary for the men ^{to} hurry^{*}.

Claudiō libet **clāmāre**.
It is pleasing to Claudius ^{to} shout^{*}.



INTRODUCTION TO THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

ACCUSATIVE CASE

Usually acts as the **direct object** of the verb.

OR

Appears after a **preposition**.

Accusative
Direct
Object

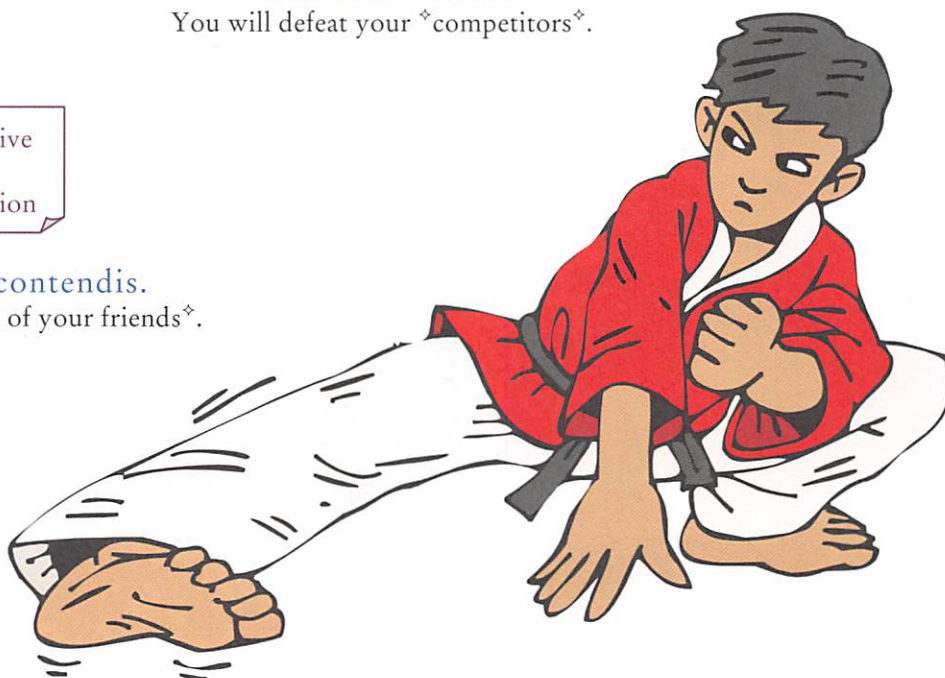
Aemulōs vincēs.

You will defeat your *competitors*.

Accusative
with
Preposition

Ante amīcōs contendis.

You compete *in front of your friends*.



1ST DECLENSION ACCUSATIVES

	M./F.
Sing.	-am
Pl.	-ās

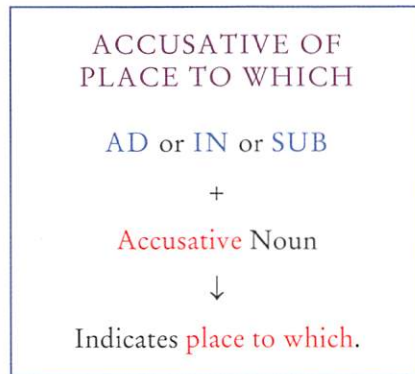
2ND DECLENSION ACCUSATIVES

	M.	N.
Sing.	-um	-um
Pl.	-ōs	-a

3RD DECLENSION ACCUSATIVES

	M./F.	N.
Sing.	-em	-varies-
Pl.	-ēs	-a

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH



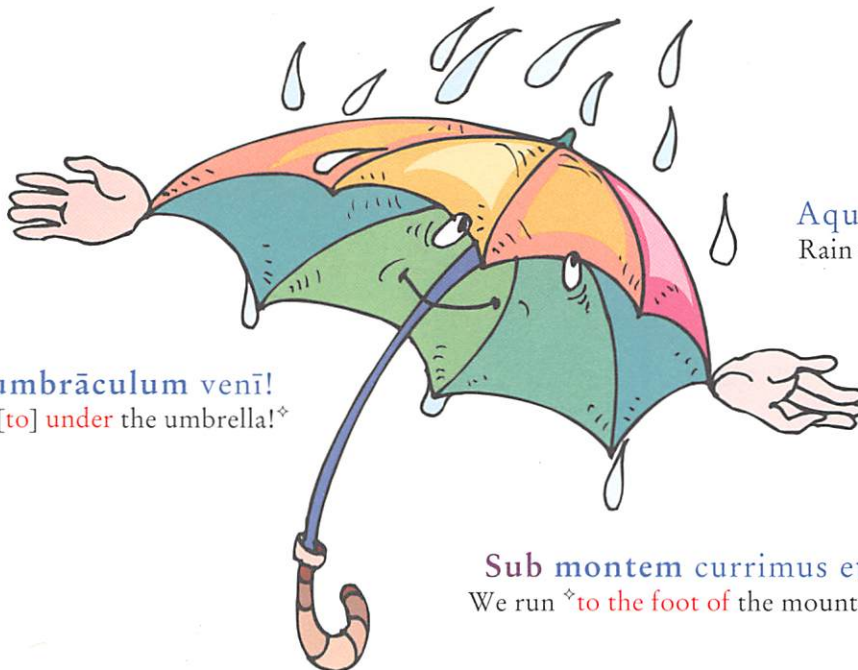
ad, prep. + acc. (to, toward)

in, prep. + acc. (into, onto, against)

sub, prep. + acc. ([to] under, up to, to the foot of)

Ad terram siccam properāmus.
We hurry **to** dry land.

Caelum pluviam **in** umbrāculum fundit.
The sky pours rain **onto** the umbrella.



Aqua **in** fenestram cadit.
Rain falls **against** the window.

Sub umbrāculum venī!
Come **to** under the umbrella!

Sub montem currimus et antrum petimus.
We run **to the foot of** the mountain and look for a cave.

ACCUSATIVE DIRECT OBJECT

ACCUSATIVE DIRECT OBJECT

DIRECT OBJECT:

Noun that **receives the action** of the verb.

I	call	you.
↓	↓	↓
Subject	Verb	Direct Object
(nom.)		(acc.)

Claudia **Aureliam** salūtat.
Claudia greets ♡Aurelia♡.

Accusative case indicates that Aurelia is the direct object of salutat.



Claudiam Aurelia salūtat.
Aurelia greets ♡Claudia♡.

Accusative case indicates that Claudia is the direct object of salutat.

Although the direct object comes after the verb in English, it may appear **anywhere** in a Latin sentence.

Puer **aviam** iuvat.

Aviam iuvat puer.

Puer iuvat **aviam**.

↓
The boy helps his ♡grandmother♡.



ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

Accusative noun indicates
how long some situation lasts.



“FOR”



TIME VOCABULARY

hōra, hōrae, f. (hour)

diēs, diēi, m. (day)

nox, noctis, f. (night)

mēnsis, mēnsis, m. (month)

annus, annī, m. (year)

tempus, temporis, n. (time)

vēr, vēris, n. (spring)

aestās, aestātis, f. (summer)

autumnus, autumnī, m. (fall)

hiems, hiemis, f. (winter)

saeculum, saeculī, n. (century, age)

Duās hōrās expectāvimus.

We waited [✱]for two hours[✱].

Tōtam aestātem rūrī mānsimus.

We stayed in the country [✱]for the whole summer[✱].

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE

Accusative noun indicates
how far something goes or
how far away something is.



I walked **three miles**.
I live **three miles** away.

Centum pedēs in caelum ferimur.

We are carried ♦100 feet♦ into the air.

(How far)



Nunc ab urbe mille passūs absumus.

Now we are ♦one mile♦ away from the city.

(How far away)

SPATIAL VERBS

eō, īre, īvī or īī, itus (to go)[†]
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (to be away)
ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (to walk)
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus (to run)[†]
nāvīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (to sail)
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (to fly)

SPATIAL UNITS

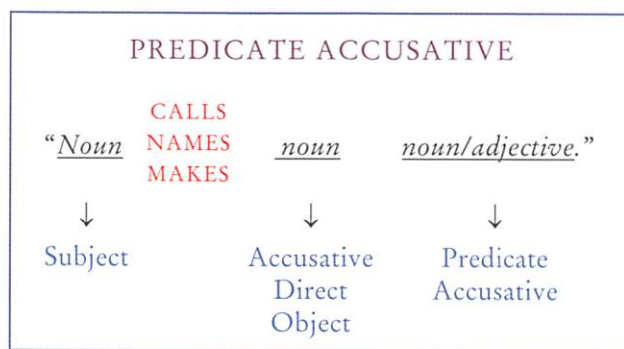
pēs, pedis, m. (foot)
passus, passūs, m. (pace)
mille passūs (mile)
mīlia passuum (miles)
spatium, spatī, n. (space, distance)

MILEAGE

1 mile → mille passūs
2 miles → duo mīlia passuum
3 miles → tria mīlia passuum
4 miles → quattuor mīlia passuum
5 miles → quīnque mīlia passuum
etc.

[†]Different books list the principle parts of these verbs in a number of different ways. You may see *itūrus* and *cursūrus* or *itum* and *cursum* as fourth principle parts instead of *itus* and *cursus*.

PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE



I made you **king**.
(Noun)

I made you **happy**.
(Adjective)

Direct Object Predicate Accusative

Iūliam rēgīnam vocāmus.
We call Julia our "queen".

TWO
ACCUSATIVES!

Direct Object
&
Predicate
Accusative

Direct Object Predicate Accusative

Rēgīna fīlium Marcum appellābit.
The queen will name her son "Marcus".



Direct Object Predicate Accusative

Iūliam laetam fēcimus.
We made Julia "happy".

PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE TRIGGERS

voco, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus (to call)
 appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus (to name)
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (to make)

ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS

ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS

Accusative Noun + Adjective



Expresses an exclamation.

Fēlicem diem nātālem!
Happy Birthday!

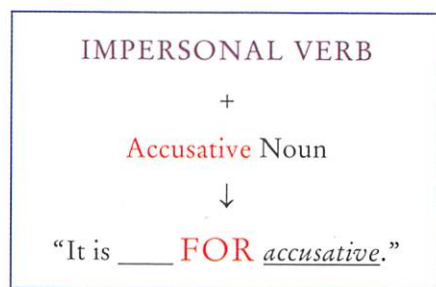
Ō pulcherrimum crustum!
Oh most beautiful cake!

Tē fēlicem!
Lucky you!

Exclamatory
accusatives are not
a complete sentence.
There is **no verb**.
The accusative
stands alone.



ACCUSATIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS



Mē oportet.
It is proper **for** me.

IMPERSONAL VERBS THAT
TRIGGER AN ACCUSATIVE

decet, **decē**re, **deci**t (it is fitting)
dēdecet, **dēdecē**re, **dēdeci**t (it is unsuitable)
oportet, **oportē**re, **oportui**t (it is necessary/proper)

Iūliam **dece**t.
It is fitting **for** Julia.

Impersonal verbs are
often accompanied
by **infinitives**.

Mē oportet hortum **colere**.
It is necessary for me **to** take care of the garden.



INTRODUCTION TO THE ABLATIVE CASE

Ablative with a preposition	from, away from, by	←	ā/ab	
			cum	→ with
	from, down from, about, concerning	←	dē	
			ē/ex	→ from, out of
	in, on	←	in	
			prae	→ before
	for, on behalf of, instead of, in exchange for	←	prō	
			sine	→ without
	under, at the foot of	←	sub	

Ablative
without a
preposition

Many uses of the ablative without a preposition will require you to **add words** in your English translation that are not actually present in the Latin.

↓
 “by means of noun”
 “because of noun”
 “in respect to noun”
 “than noun”

Pisces magnitudinis insignem capiemus.
 We will catch a fish remarkable **in respect to** its size.



1ST DECLENSION ABLATIVES

	M./F.
Sing.	-ā
Pl.	-īs

2ND DECLENSION ABLATIVES

	M.	N.
Sing.	-ō	-ō
Pl.	-īs	-īs

3RD DECLENSION ABLATIVES

	M./F.	N.
Sing.	-e	-e
Pl.	-ibus	-ibus

ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE

in
sub

ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE

IN or SUB

+

Ablative Noun

↓

Indicates location.

in, prep. + abl. (in, on)

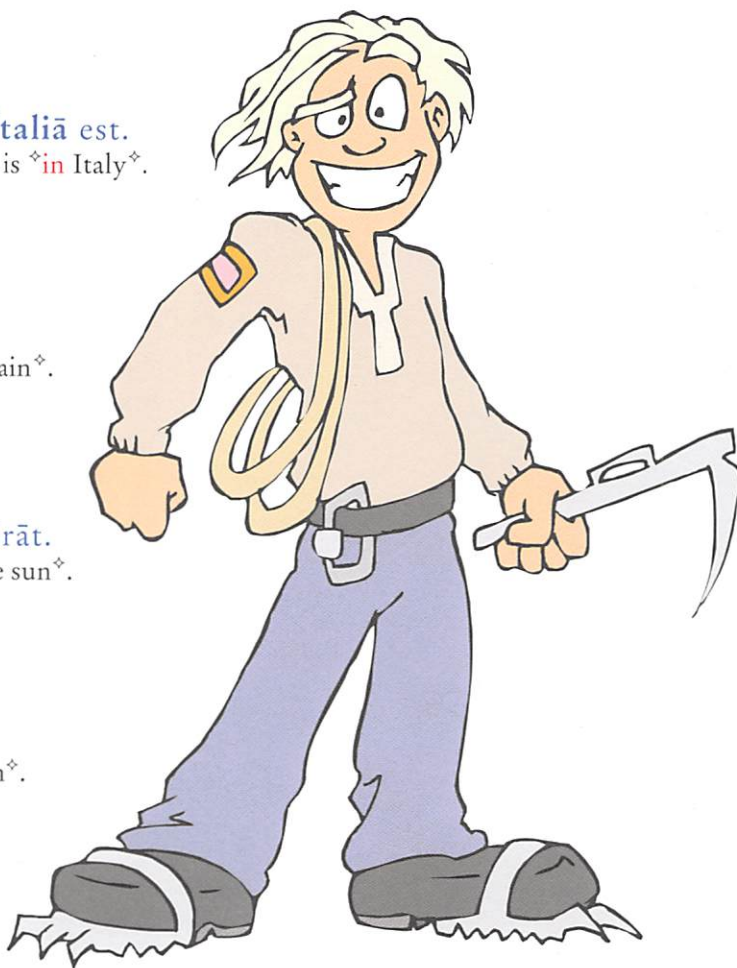
sub, prep. + abl. (under, at the foot of)

Mōns **in** Ītaliā est.
The mountain is **in** Italy.

Vir **in** summō monte stat.
The man stands **on** the top of the mountain.

Sub sōle labōrāt.
He toils **under** the sun.

Sub monte stāmus.
We stand **at the foot of** the mountain.



ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

ā/ab
dē
ē/ex

Ā/AB

Ā can be used when the next word starts with a **consonant** (except for *h*).

Ab can be used in any situation.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

Ā/AB or DĒ or Ē/EX

+E

Ablative Noun



Indicates **place from which**.

Ē/EX

Ē can be used when the next word starts with a **consonant** (except for *h*).

Ex can be used in any situation.

ā/ab, prep. + abl. (from, away from)

dē, prep. + abl. (from, down from)

ē/ex, prep. + abl. (from, out of)

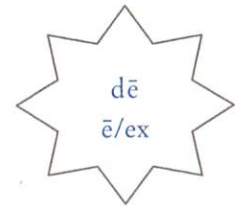


Lux **dē** lucernā fulget.
Light shines **down from** the lamp.

Trabs **ēx** terrā surgit.
A pole rises **out of** the ground.

Via ā villā meā dūcit.
The path leads **away from** my house.

PARTITIVE ABLATIVE



PARTITIVE ABLATIVE

Multi, pauci, quis, numbers

+
DĒ / ĒX

+
Ablative noun

↓
“many/few/who/1, 2, 3
OF the nouns”

NUMBERS

ūnus (1)
quīnque (5)
decem (10)
centum (100)

PARTITIVE ABLATIVE TRIGGERS

multi, multae, multa (many)
pauci, paucae, pauca (few, a few)
quis (who?)

Multi ex amicis tuis cantare et salire amant.

Many [♦]of your friends[♦] like to sing and dance.

Ūnam dē amicis tuis laudamus.

We praise one [♦]of your friends[♦].

Quis ē vobis cantabat?

Who [♦]of you[♦] was singing?
(Which of you was singing?)



PARTITIVE GENITIVE & ABLATIVE

Most of these partitive ablative triggers can also be used with a **partitive genitive**. (See p. 31)

Pauci is used only with the ablative.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT

ā/ab

“AGENT”
↓
The noun **by which** an action is performed.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT
↓
Ā/AB
+
Ablative Noun
↓
Indicates the **person by whom** some action is accomplished.
↓
“BY”

Ablative of agent is **only** for **people**.
“By thing” is expressed without a preposition using the Ablative of Means.
(See p. 71)

Aestus ā puellā fertur.
The heat is endured **by** the girl.

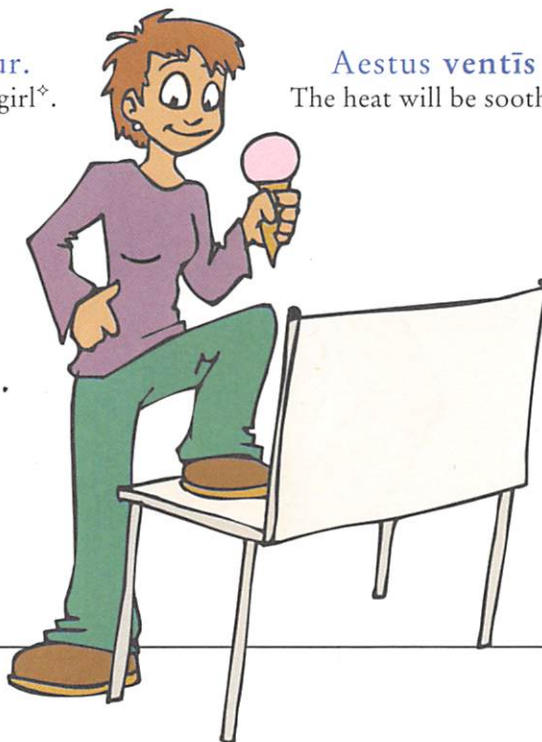
Personal Agent
(girl)

↓
Ablative **with** ā/ab
(Ablative of Agent)

Aestus ventīs mītigābitur.
The heat will be soothed **by** the winds.

Non-Personal Agent
(winds)

↓
Ablative **without** ā/ab
(Ablative of Means)



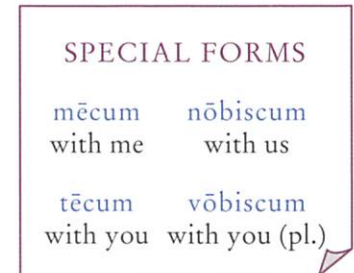
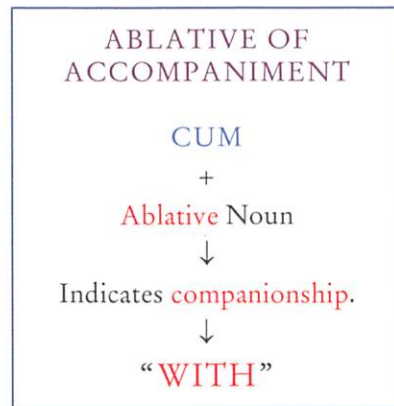
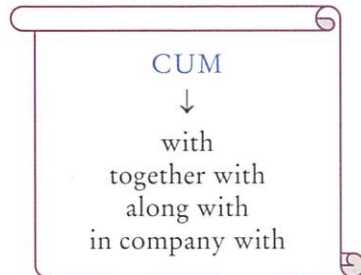
Ā/AB
↓
“from” / “by”
Use context and common sense!

Puella ab aestū effugiēbat.
The girl was escaping **from** the heat.

Puella ab amīcīs excipiēbātur.
The girl was being welcomed **by** her friends.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

cum



Quīntus cum aliīs cīvibus gaudet.
Quintus rejoices [♦]with the other citizens[♦].

Cum gladiō ante portās stat.
He stands in front of the gates [♦]with his sword[♦].



ABLATIVE OF MEANS

No
Preposition

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

Indicates the **means** or instrument
(*tool*) with which something
is accomplished.

(No Preposition)



“**BY MEANS OF**”
“**WITH**”
“**BY**”

Pēnicillō pingis.

You paint **with** a brush.

Deōs dōnīs plācābis.

You will appease the gods **by means of** gifts.

Nāve ad patriam tuam venīmus.

We are coming to your country **by** boat.

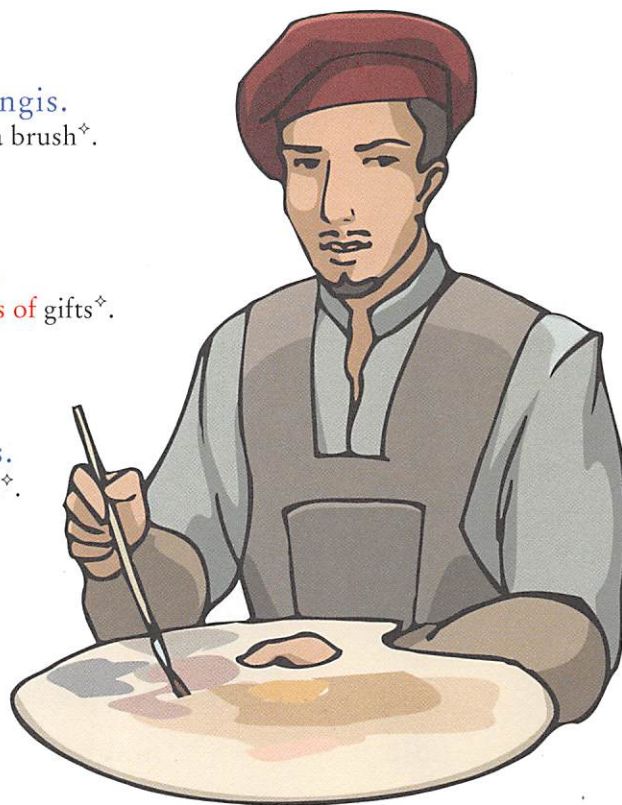
IN and **ON**
are sometimes
appropriate translations
for the ablative
of means.

Equīs ad urbem ībimus.

We will go to the city **on** horses.

Meā linguā dīcēbās.

You were speaking **in** my language.



“**BY THING**”

VS. “**BY PERSON**”

“The picture was
painted **by hand**.”



Ablative of Means
(no preposition)

“The picture was
painted **by Paul**.”



Ablative of Agent
(ā/ab + ablative:
see p. 69)

ABLATIVE OF MANNER

With or
without
cum

ABLATIVE OF MANNER		
CUM + Ablative noun	CUM + Ablative noun/adjective pair	No Preposition + Ablative noun/adjective pair
Indicates the manner/style in which some action is accomplished.		
↓ "WITH"		

Magnō gaudiō vītam agit.
She lives life **with** great joy.

CUM with a
noun/adjective pair:

Adjective
+
CUM
+
Noun

"IN"
is sometimes
appropriate.

Laetā voce cantat.
She sings **in** a happy voice.



cum gaudiō
with joy
(Noun)

magnō cum gaudiō
with great joy
(Noun + Adjective)

magnō gaudiō
with great joy
(Noun + Adjective)

Ablatives of Manner
can describe **physical**
as well as **emotional**
styles.

Citīs gradibus currit.
She runs **with** quick steps.
(Physical)

Cum gaudiō currit.
She runs **with** joy.
(Emotional)

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION



Descriptions can give **physical** or **personality** information.

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

Ablative Noun + Adjective pair

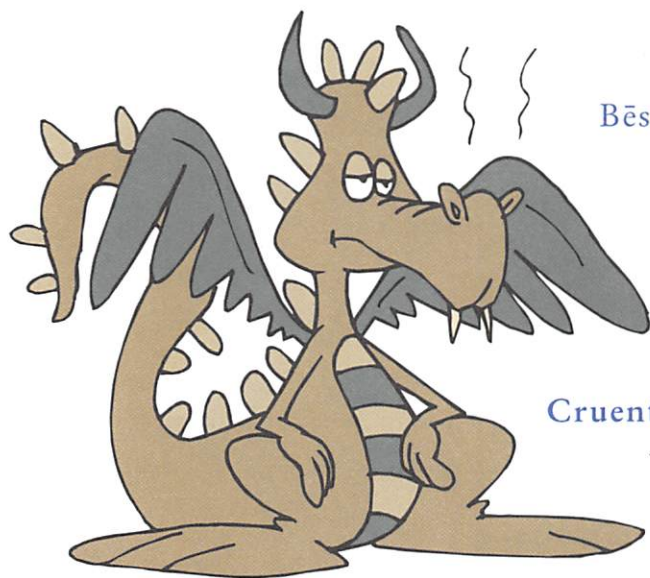


Indicates a **characteristic** of some other noun in the sentence.



“OF” or “WITH”

NOUN
&
ADJECTIVE



Bēstia magnā saevitiā in antrō cōspecta est.

A beast [♦]of great ferocity[♦] was seen in the cave.

Cruentīs faucibus dracō domum meam incendit.

A dragon [♦]with gory jaws[♦] burned my house.

GENITIVE & ABLATIVE

Both cases can convey descriptions (see p. 35).

Vir tantae prūdentiae es!

You are a man [♦]of such great wisdom[♦]!

(Genitive)

Vir tantā prūdentīa es!

You are a man [♦]of such great wisdom[♦]!

(Ablative)

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

No
Preposition

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

Ablative noun indicates **when**
some situation takes place.

(No Preposition)

↓
“IN” or “ON” or “AT” *“During”*

Aestāte male dormiō.

✧In the summer✧, I sleep poorly.



TIME VOCABULARY

hōra, hōrae, f. (hour)

diēs, diēi, m. (day)

nox, noctis, f. (night)

mēnsis, mēnsis, m. (month)

annus, annī, m. (year)

tempus, temporis, n. (time)

vēr, vēris, n. (spring)

aestās, aestātis, f. (summer)

autumnus, autumnī, m. (fall)

hiems, hiemis, f. (winter)

saeculum, saeculī, n. (century, age)

Illō diē maximē dēfessus fuī.

✧On that day✧, I was extremely tired.

Nocte dormiō et aliquando ambulō.

✧At night✧ I sleep and sometimes I walk.

ABLATIVE OF TIME WITHIN WHICH

No
Preposition

ABLATIVE OF TIME WITHIN WHICH

Ablative noun indicates the
time span **within which**
some situation takes place.

(No Preposition)



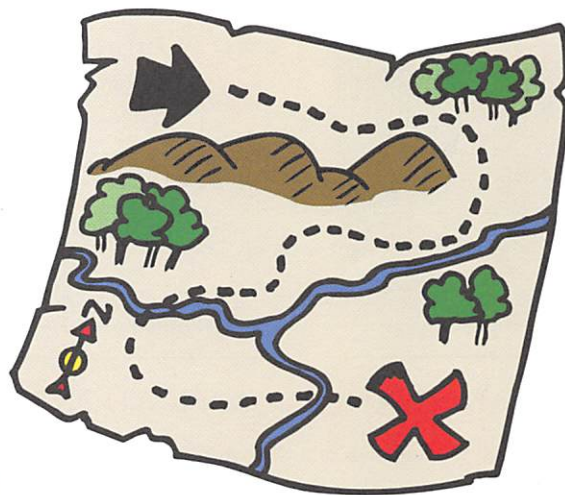
“IN” or “WITHIN” or “DURING”

Tribus hōrīs aurum inveniēmus.

✧**Within** three hours✧, we will find the gold.

Ūnō diē aurum cōnsūmēs.

You will spend the gold **in** one day✧.



TIME VOCABULARY

hōra, hōrae, f. (hour)

diēs, diēi, m. (day)

nox, noctis, f. (night)

mēnsis, mēnsis, m. (month)

annus, annī, m. (year)

tempus, temporis, n. (time)

vēr, vēris, n. (spring)

aestās, aestātis, f. (summer)

autumnus, autumnī, m. (fall)

hiems, hiemis, f. (winter)

saeculum, saeculī, n. (century, age)

“DURING”



Be careful not to associate
this word with “duration”
of time.

“During” indicates
time **when!**

(During the spring

=

In the spring)

*also for
page 14*

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

No
Preposition



ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

Ablative noun can indicate the **specific area** involved in some action or description.

(No Preposition)



“**IN RESPECT TO**” or “**IN**”

Quīntus sapientiā praecēdit.
Quintus excels [♦]in respect to wisdom[♦].

In what specific area
does Quintus excel?
In wisdom.

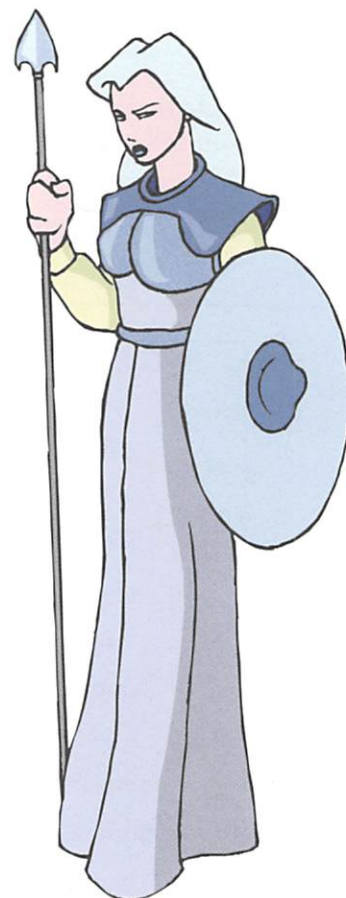
ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION TRIGGERS

praestāns, praestantis (outstanding)
splendidus, splendida, splendidum (outstanding, brilliant)
ēgregius, ēgregia, ēgregium (excellent, distinguished)
saucius, saucia, saucium (wounded)
integer, integra, integrum (healthy, sound)

excellō, excellere (to excel)
praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessus (to excel)
praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus (to excel)
superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus (to excel, surpass)

Valida corpore et animō est.
She is strong [♦]in respect to her body and her mind[♦].

In what specific area
is she strong?
In body and mind.



Minerva virtūte praecēdit.
Minerva excels [♦]in courage[♦].

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE



ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

Ablative noun indicates the **cause** of some situation.

(No Preposition)



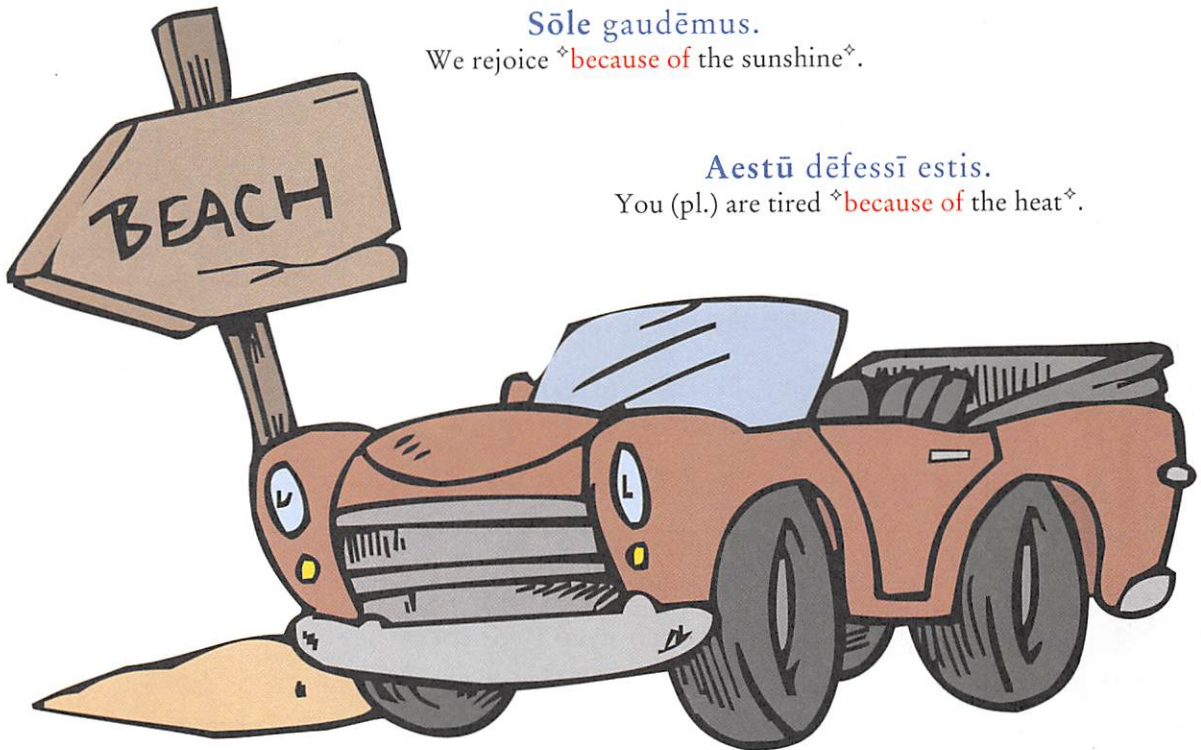
“BECAUSE OF”

Sōle gaudēmus.

We rejoice **because of** the sunshine[✧].

Aestū dēfessī estis.

You (pl.) are tired **because of** the heat[✧].



meā/tuā/nostrā/vestrā

+

causā



because of

me/you/us/you (pl.)

GENITIVE NOUN

+

causā



because of

genitive

Tuā causā hīc manēbimus.

Because of you[✧], we will stay here.

Brūtī causā hīc manēbimus.

Because of Brutus[✧], we will stay here.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

With or
without
ā/ab

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Verbs or adjectives of
freeing, depriving, lacking, prohibiting
can trigger an ablative with **Ā/AB**
or without a preposition.

↓
“OF” or “FROM”

LĪBERŌ & LĪBER

In general, ā/ab
is used only to express
freedom from a **person**.

Otherwise, **no**
preposition is used.

PROHIBEŌ, VACŌ & VACUUS

Sometimes ā/ab is used,
and sometimes it is not.
There is no general
pattern.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION TRIGGERS

prohibeŏ, -ēre, -uī, -itus (to prohibit, to keep away)
vacŏ, vacāre, vacāvī, vacātus (to be without, to be empty)
vacuus, vacua, vacuum (empty, without)

careŏ, carēre, caruī, caritus (to be without, to lack)
prīvŏ, prīvāre, prīvāvī, prīvātus (to deprive)

liberŏ, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus (to set free)
liber, libera, liberum (free)

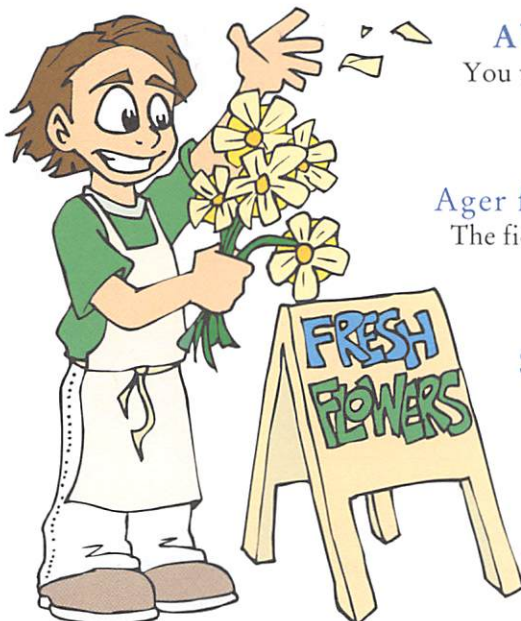
dēfendŏ, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensus (defend)

CAREŌ & PRĪVŌ

No preposition
is used.

DĒFENDŌ

ā/ab is
always used.



Ab hortō meō prohibēberis.
You will be kept away **from** my garden.

Ager flōribus nunc vacuus est.
The field is now empty **of** flowers.

Sextus dolōre liber est!
Sextus is free **of** sorrow!

Terram ā rēgē malō liberāvimus.
We freed the land **from** the evil king.

“Of” and “from”
are sometimes
unnecessary.

Sextus cūrīs vacat!
Sextus is without **worries**!

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON



ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

After a comparative,
the ablative case indicates the noun
to which some previously mentioned noun
is being compared.

(No Preposition)



“THAN”

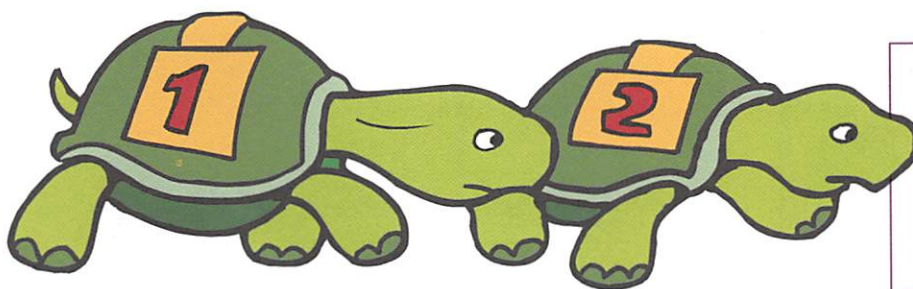
noun #1 ... THAN noun #2



Ablative

Flāvia celerior Lūciō est.
Flavia is swifter [◊]than[◊] Lucius[◊].

Flāvia celerius Lūciō currit.
Flavia runs more swiftly [◊]than[◊] Lucius[◊].



The ablative of comparison
can be used only when
Noun #1 is **nominative**
or **accusative**.

Otherwise, **quam** must
be used for “than.”

QUAM

Can also mean “**than**.”



The noun that comes after **quam**
must **agree** with the noun to which
it is being compared in **case**.

Flāvia celerius **quam** Lūcius currit.
Flavia runs more swiftly [◊]than[◊] Lucius[◊].

Flāvia = Subject Nominative

Lūcius must match Flāvia → Nominative

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

No
Preposition

Appears most frequently after a **comparative** or with **ante** and **post**.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

Ablative noun can express **how much** _____er one thing is than another.

(No Preposition)



"BY"

is sometimes a useful way of translating.

"I am **two inches** shorter than you."
"I am shorter than you **by two inches**."

Ūnō pede altior es quam ego.

You are ♦one foot♦ taller than I.
You are taller than I ♦**by** one foot♦.

(How much taller? One foot.)

Multō altior amīcīs es.

You are ♦much♦ taller than your friends.
You are taller than your friends ♦**by** a lot♦.

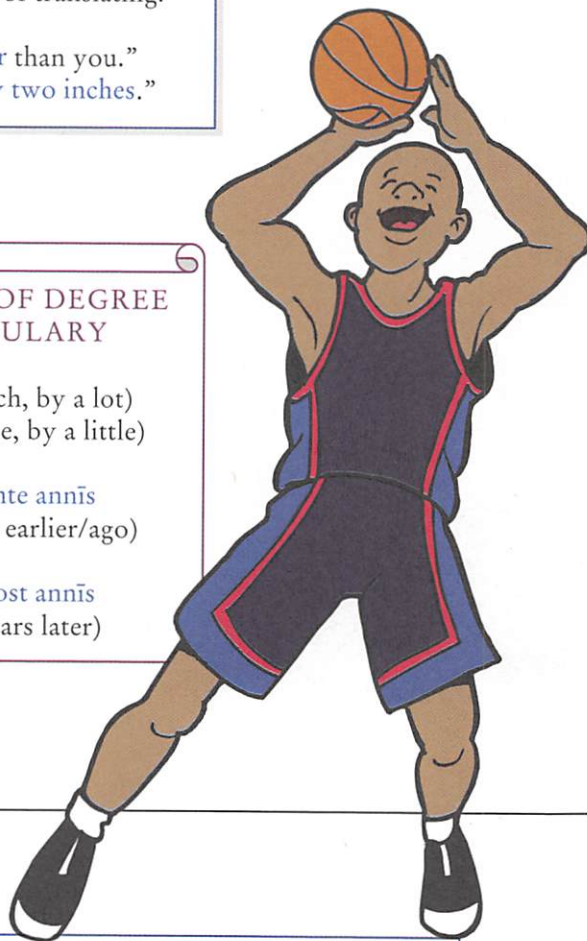
(How much taller? Much.)

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE VOCABULARY

multō (much, by a lot)
paulō (a little, by a little)

multīs ante annīs
(many years earlier/ago)

multīs post annīs
(many years later)



ANTE and POST



Can act as the prepositions "before" and "after," but this construction uses them as the **adverbs** "earlier/ago" and "later."

ADJECTIVE ante/post NOUN



Ablative



Paucīs ante hōrīs, puellam in hortō vīdī.

♦A few hours ago♦, I saw the girl in the garden.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE



WITH PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

[with]
noun
having been
verbed

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE
Ablative Noun
+
Perfect Passive Participle
↓
“[with] noun having been verbed”

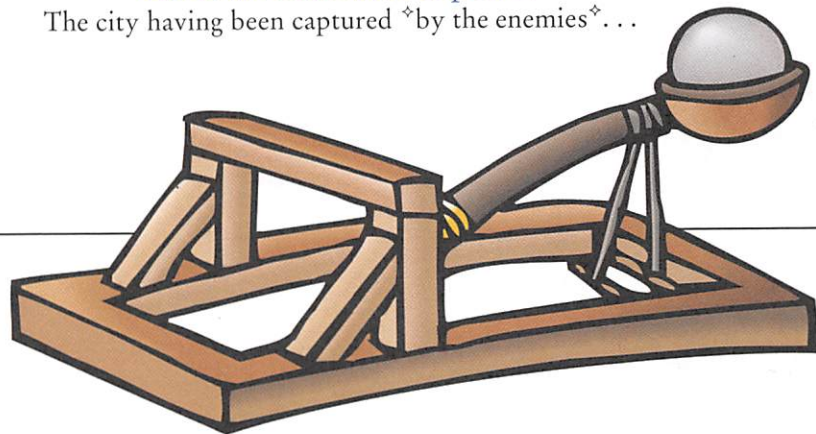
4th Principal
Part
(See p. 216)

Urbe captā maerēbam.

“[With] the city **having been** captured”, I was grieving.

Ablative absolutes may contain extra words like **adverbs** and **prepositional phrases**.

Urbe ab hostibus captā . . .
The city having been captured “by the enemies” . . .



when
once/after
since
although

“HAS”

↓
Use if main verb is **not past** (present, future, future perfect).

TRANSLATING AS
A CLAUSE

“when, once, after, since, although
noun **has/had** been verbed”

“HAD”

↓
Use if main verb is **past** (imperfect, perfect, pluperfect).

Urbe captā, hostēs gaudent.

“**Since** the city **has** been captured”, the enemies rejoice.

Urbe captā, spem tamen habēbam.

“**Although** the city **had** been captured”, I still had hope.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

No
Preposition

WITH PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

[with]
noun
verbing

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Ablative Noun
+
Present Active Participle
↓

“[with] *noun verbing*”

e.g.
amāns,
amantis
(See p. 216)

Marcō lacrimante, solliciti erāmus.
* [With] Marcus crying*, we were worried.

NOTE:

In ablative absolutes,
the **ablative singular**
present participle ends
in -e instead of the usual
i-stem ending -ī.
(See p. 216)

Ablative absolutes
may contain extra
words like **adverbs**
and **prepositional**
phrases.

Marcō trīstiter lacrimante...
With Marcus crying *sadly*...

when
while
since
although

TRANSLATING AS A CLAUSE

“when, while, since, although
noun is/was verbing”

“IS”

↓
Use if main verb
is **not past**
(present, future,
future perfect).

“WAS”

↓
Use if main verb
is **past**
(imperfect, perfect,
pluperfect).

Marcō lacrimante, cantāmus.
*While Marcus **is** crying*, we sing.

Marcō lacrimante, dormīre nōn poterāmus.
*Since Marcus **was** crying*, we were not able to sleep.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE



WITH NOUN OR ADJECTIVE



ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Ablative Noun

+

Ablative Noun or Adjective

↓

“[with] noun as/being noun/adjective”

NOUN

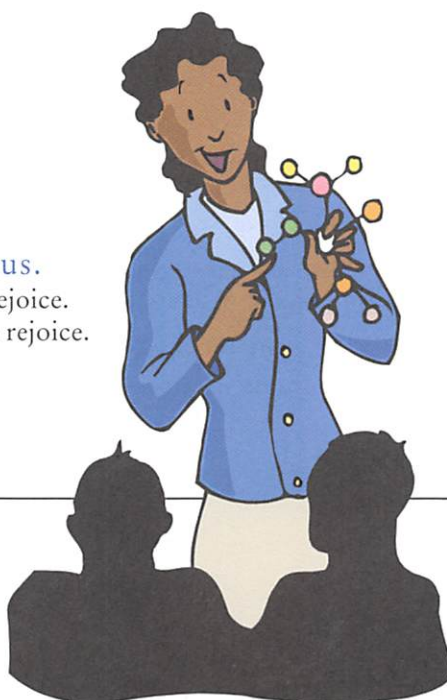
Tulliā magistrā gaudēmus.

- ✧ With Tullia **as** the teacher✧, we rejoice.
- ✧ With Tullia **being** the teacher✧, we rejoice.

ADJECTIVE

Tulliā miserā dolēmus.

- ✧ With Tullia **sad**✧, we are sad.
- ✧ With Tullia **being** sad✧, we are sad.



TRANSLATING AS A CLAUSE

“when, while, since, although
noun is/was noun/adjective”

“IS”

↓

Use if main verb
is **not past**
(present, future,
future perfect).

“WAS”

↓

Use if main verb
is **past**
(imperfect, perfect,
pluperfect).

Gaiō laetō, trīstēs tamen sumus.

- ✧ **Although** Gaius **is** happy✧, we are nevertheless sad.

Gaiō magistrō, bene didicistis.

- ✧ **While** Gaius **was** your teacher✧, you learned well.

ABLATIVE OF PRICE

No
Preposition

ABLATIVE OF PRICE

Ablative noun can indicate the **price**
for which something is bought or sold.

(No Preposition)



“**FOR**” or “**AT**”

BUYING AND SELLING VOCABULARY

emō, emere, ēmī, emptus (to buy)

vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus (to sell)

pretium, pretiū, n. (price)

aureus, aureī, m. (gold coin)

dēnārius, dēnārii, m. (silver coin)

sestertius, sestertiī, m. (silver coin)

as, assis, m. (copper coin)

Vestēs novās **parvō pretiō** emēmus.
We will buy new clothes **at** a small price.



1 Aureus = 25 Denarii

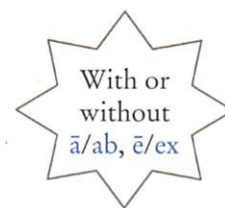
4 Sestertii = 1 Denarius

16 Asses = 1 Denarius

A well-paid Roman might earn several
hundred denarii per year.

Viginti sestertiis venditus est petasus.
A hat was sold **for** 20 sestertii.

ABLATIVE OF SOURCE



ABLATIVE OF SOURCE

Ablative noun with or without
Ā/AB or Ē/EX indicates ancestry.



“OF” or “FROM”

ANCESTRY VOCABULARY

nascor, nascī, nātus sum (to be born)

nātus, -a, -um (born, descended)

orior, orīrī, ortus sum (to rise, be born)

ortus, -a, -um (born, descended)

genus, generis, n. (descent, origin, stock)



Illa puella **ex tē** nāta celerrimē currit.
That girl descended [†]from you[†] runs very quickly.

Certē **ab Atalantā** orta est!
Surely she is descended [†]from Atalanta[†]!

Nōbilī genere nāta est.
She was born [†]of a noble family[†]!

Treats nāta/orta est as a
perfect passive indicative:

↓
Indicates the single
event of being born.

NOTE:

nāta/orta est



Translated as perfect **indicative**:
“she was born”

OR

Translated as **sum + adjective**:
“she is descended”

Treats nāta/orta as a simple
adjective and est as a linking verb:

↓
Indicates the inherent
characteristic of being
descended from someone.

ABLATIVE WITH SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

No
Preposition

ABLATIVE WITH SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives can trigger
an ablative noun.



Supply whatever **extra words**
seem logical.

COMMON ADJECTIVES THAT TRIGGER AN ABLATIVE

creber, crebra, crebrum (crowded [with])

dignus, digna, dignum (worthy [of])

indigus, indigna, indignum (unworthy [of])

dīves, dīvitis (rich [in])

frētus, frēta, frētum (relying [on])

liber, libera, liberum (free [from])

vacuus, vacua, vacuum (empty [of])

Artibus suis frētus, ursus cēnam capiet.

Relying **on** his skills, the bear will catch dinner.

Aqua crebra piscibus erat.

The water was crowded **with** fish.

Hic ursus dignus praemiō est.

This bear is worthy **of** a prize.



ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENT VERBS

No
Preposition

ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENT VERBS

Some deponent verbs take their **direct object**
in the **ablative** case.



Artibus meīs ūtar ut ignem concipiam.

I will use ♦my skills♦ to make a fire.

VERBS WITH ABLATIVE OBJECTS

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum (to enjoy, have the benefit of)

fungor, fungī, fūctus sum (to perform)

potior, potīrī, potītus sum (to get possession of, obtain)

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (to use, make use of)

vēscor, vēscī (to eat)

Note that **potior** can also take
a **genitive** object, though the
ablative is more common.

(See p. 41)

VOCATIVE OF DIRECT ADDRESS

DIRECT ADDRESS

Vocative nouns do **not** usually appear **first** in a Latin sentence, but they can be placed anywhere in your English translation.

VOCATIVE CASE

Used for **direct address** (calling someone by name)



“**Noun**, what time is it?”

“What time is it, **noun**?”

Vocative nouns are often set off by **commas** from the rest of the sentence.

VOCATIVE = NOMINATIVE
Singular & Plural = Singular & Plural

EXCEPT

Vocative **singular** of **2nd** declension **-us** and **-ius** nouns



-US



-E

-IUS



-Ī

-US	SINGULAR	-IUS
Marcus	Nominative	Lūcius
↓		↓
Marce	Vocative	Lūcī



Patriamne amās, Auguste?

Do you love the fatherland,
✧Augustus✧?

(Vocative Singular of Augustus)

SECOND DECLENSION VOCATIVE PHRASES

mī fīlī

“my son, . . .”

(vocative of *meus filius*)

servē

“slave, . . .”

(vocative of *servus*)

Patriam, Rōmānī, amō.

I do love the fatherland,
✧Romans✧.

(Vocative Plural of Rōmānus)

TRANSLATING NOUN PHRASES

"OF" PHRASES

POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

Genitive noun **possesses**
some other noun.

Hostēs **patriae** crūdēlēs sunt.
The enemies ^{of} the fatherland^{of} are cruel.

↓
"The fatherland"
possesses
"the enemies."

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

Genitive noun is a **characteristic**.

Virī **magnae pietātis** patriam amant.
Men ^{of} great devotion^{of} love the fatherland.

↓
"Great devotion"
is a characteristic.

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

Genitive noun is the **subject**
of some action/emotion.

Timorēs **patriae** multī sunt.
The fears ^{of} the fatherland^{of} are many.

↓
"The fatherland"
is the subject of the
implied verb "to fear."

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

Genitive noun is the **direct object**
of some action/emotion.

Noster amor **patriae** magnus est.
Our love ^{of} the fatherland^{of} is great.

↓
"The fatherland"
is the direct object of the
implied verb "to love."

With
Action
or
Emotion
noun



TRANSLATING NOUN PHRASES

“TO” PHRASES

NOT
DIRECTIONAL

DATIVE

Musae **Lūciō** nōtae sunt.
The Muses are well known [♦]to Lucius[♦].

Lūciō libet cantāre.
It is pleasing [♦]to Lucius[♦] to sing.

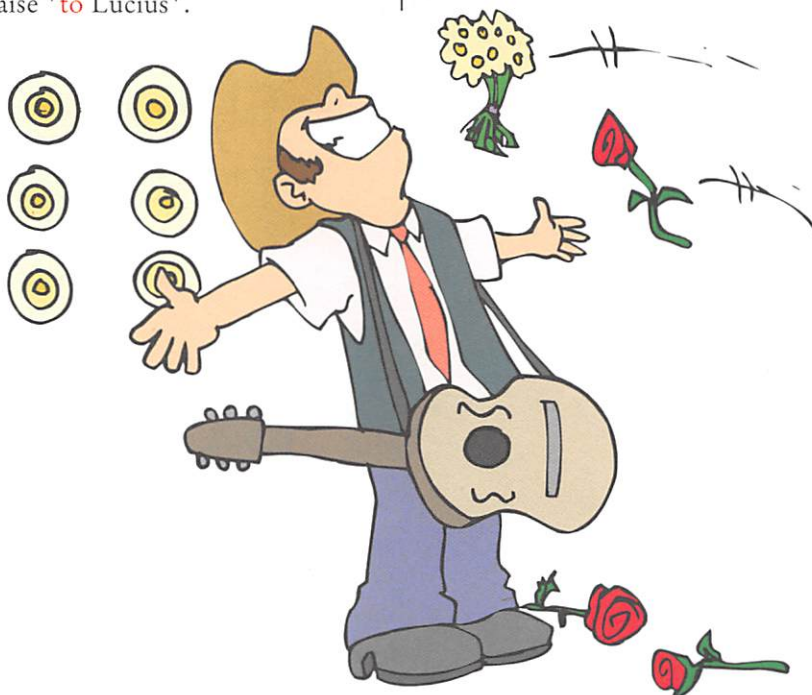
Laudem **Lūciō** damus.
We give praise [♦]to Lucius[♦].

DIRECTIONAL

AD
+
ACCUSATIVE

Admīrantēs **ad Lūcium** currunt.
Admirers run [♦]to Lucius[♦].

Oculōs **ad Lūcium** vertō.
I turn my eyes [♦]to Lucius[♦].



TRANSLATING NOUN PHRASES

“WITH” PHRASES

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT,
MEANS, MANNER, DESCRIPTION



“With” is used in the English translation
of all four grammatical constructions,
but the constructions have very
different meanings.

ACCOMPANIMENT

“Companion”

The man stands **with the girl**.

Always
with
cum

MEANS

“Tool”

The man points **with his finger**.

No
Preposition



MANNER

“Style”

The man talks **with great concern**.

Cum
is optional

DESCRIPTION

“Characteristic”

The man **with grey hair** talks.

No
Preposition

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

COMMON PREPOSITIONS

about	before	through
across	by	to
after	from	toward
around	near	under
at	out of	with
because of	over	without

OBJECT OF THE PREPOSITION



Noun that goes with the preposition.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE



Combination of **Preposition + Object**.

PREPOSITION:

"in"

OBJECT:

"road"

In viā stābat.

She was standing *in the road*.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE

In viā stābat.

She was standing *in the road*.

WORD ORDER OF PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

Prepositional phrases are usually written as follows:

in multīs terrīs
(in many lands)

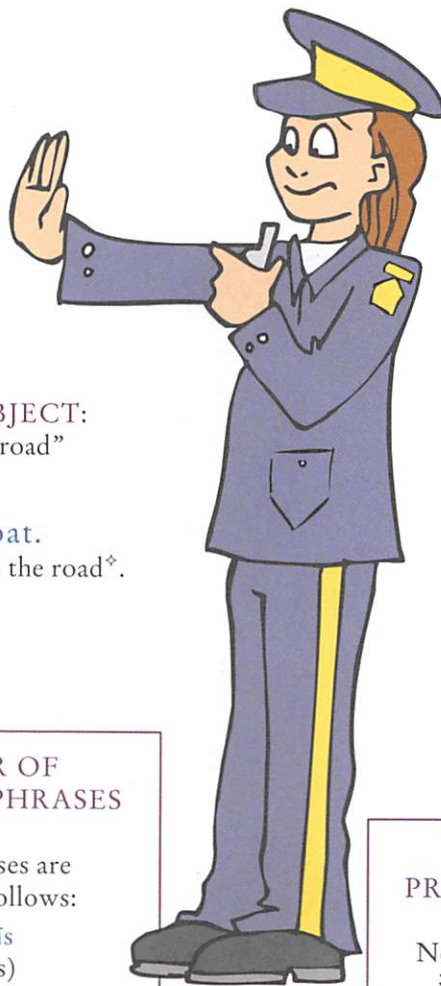
However, word order is flexible and rearrangement is possible:

multīs in terrīs
(in many lands)

GENITIVES IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

Note that genitives often appear inside prepositional phrases:

in Rōmānōrum terrīs
(in the lands of the Romans)

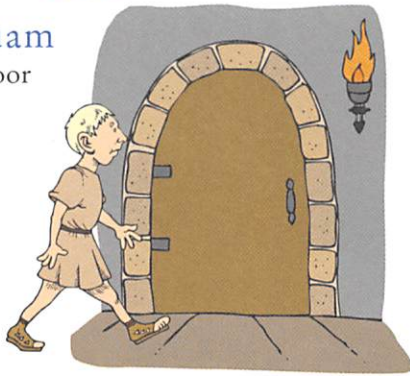


PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

PLACE PREPOSITIONS

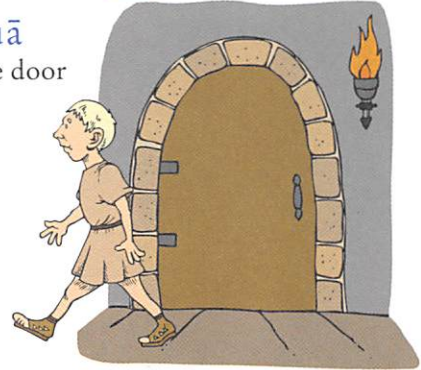
ACCUSATIVE

ad iānuam
to the door



ABLATIVE

ab iānuā
away from the door



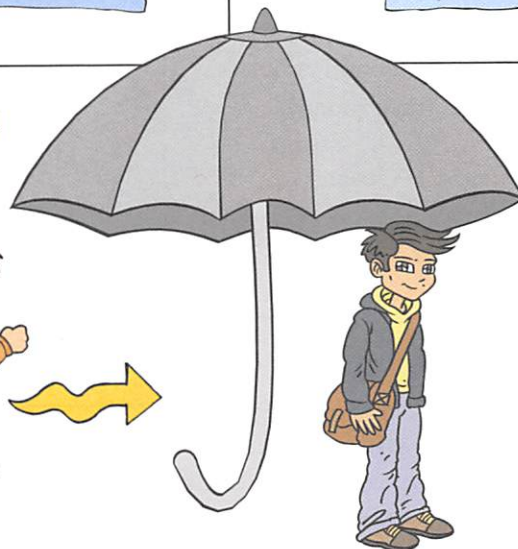
in aquam
into the water



in aquā
in the water



sub umbrāculum
under the umbrella
(to under)



sub umbrāculō
under the umbrella
(at under)



SPECIAL PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

INTRODUCTION

Cities
Towns
Small Islands
domus
rūs
humus

CITIES, TOWNS, SMALL ISLANDS,
DOMUS, RŪS, HUMUS

Place Where	Place to Which	Place from Which
↓	↓	↓
Locative	Accusative	Ablative

NO PREPOSITIONS

~~AD~~
~~AB~~
~~IN~~

Rōmae habitō.
I live ⁱⁿ Rome.
(Locative)

Rōmam eō.
I go ^{to} Rome.
(Accusative)

Rōmā discēdō.
I depart ^{from} Rome.
(Ablative)

Humum cecidistī.
You fell ^{to} the ground.

NAMES OF CERTAIN CITIES, TOWNS, & SMALL ISLANDS

domus, domūs, f. (home)
rūs, rūris, n. (country, countryside)
humus, humī, f. (the ground)

Rōma, Rōmae, f. - Rome
Pharus, Pharī, f. - small island near Egypt
Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f. - city in Africa
Sirmiō, Sirmiōnis, f. - town in N. Italy

Athēnae, Athēnārum, f. - Athens
Delphī, Delphōrum, m. - town in Greece
Gādēs, Gādium, f. - a city in Spain

domus:
Belongs to the 4th declension, but
can use some 2nd declension forms.

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domī	domōrum
Dat.	domō	domibus
Acc.	domum	domōs
Abl.	domō	domibus

Some place names
are **plural**.

SPECIAL PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

PLACE TO WHICH

STANDARD NOUN

ad viam
“to the road”

AD

SPECIAL PLACE

Rōmam
“to Rome”

~~AD~~



NOTE:

We would not say
“You will go **to home**.”

We would simply say
“You will go **home**.”

domum - [to] home
rūs - to the country
humum - to the ground

Athēnās nāvigās.
You sail **to** Athens.

Herī Carthāginem īvistī.
Yesterday you went **to** Carthage.

Crās domum ībis.
Tomorrow you will go **home**.

PLACE FROM WHICH

STANDARD NOUN

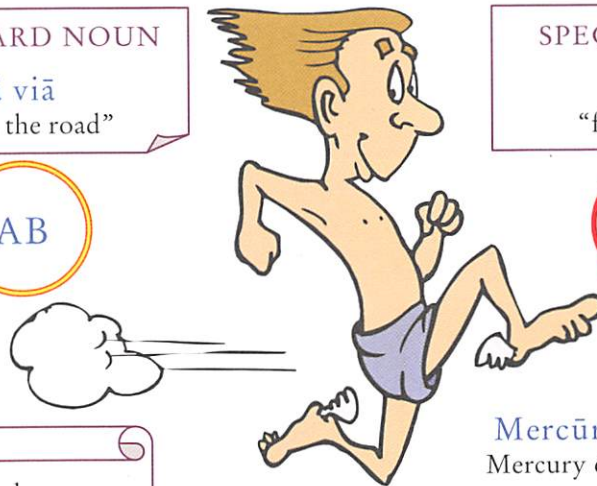
ā viā
“from the road”

AB

SPECIAL PLACE

Rōmā
“from Rome”

~~AB~~



domō - from home
rūre - from the country
humō - from the ground

Mercūrius domō discēdit.
Mercury departs **from** his home.

Tertiō diē Gādibus redībit.
He will return **from** Gades on the third day.

SPECIAL PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

PLACE WHERE: LOCATIVE

STANDARD NOUN

in viā
“in the road”



LOCATIVE CASE

Generally looks like the **ablative**
except
1st & 2nd declension singular:
Locative looks like **genitive**.

SPECIAL PLACE

Rōmae
“in Rome”



LOCATIVE CASE		
	Sing.	Pl.
1st	-ae	-īs
2nd	-ī	-īs
3rd	-e	-ibus

Note that **rūs** and **Carthāgō** belong to the third declension but use -ī in the locative.

domī - at home
rūrī - in the country
humī - on the ground

NOTE:
Carthāginī or **Carthāgine** -
at Carthage

Rūrī erās.
You were **in** the countryside.



Sirmiōne prope aquam manēbis.
You will stay **at** Sirmio near the water.

ABLATIVE VS. LOCATIVE

Since these cases frequently look the same, you have to use **context** to choose between a “place from which” and a “place where” translation.

Delphīs nāvigāvimus.

We sailed **from** Delphi.

(Ablative of Place from Which)

Delphīs mānsimus.

We stayed **at** Delphi.

(Locative of Place Where)

APPOSITIVES

APPOSITIVE

↓
Noun that **renames** some
previously mentioned noun.

↖ ↗
Claudia, my cousin, likes spaghetti.

↓
“My cousin” is an appositive
renaming “Claudia.”

↖ ↗
We Romans like poetry.

↓
“Romans” is an appositive
renaming “we”.

↖ ↗
I love my cat, Julian.

↓
“Julian” is an appositive
renaming “my cat.”



CASE OF APPPOSITIVE

An appositive must appear
in the **same case** as the noun
that it renames.

Ablative object
of preposition *dē*

Ablative appositive
agreeing with *patre*

↓ ↓
Dē patre Aenēā scrīpsit.
He wrote about father ✧ Aeneas ✧.



Accusative
direct object

Accusative appositive
agreeing with *Virgilium*

↓ ↓
Virgilium poētā laudāmus.
We praise Virgil ✧ the poet ✧.

APPOSITIVES

RENAMING UNEXPRESSED NOMINATIVES

APPOSITIVES OF UNEXPRESSED NOMINATIVES

Sometimes, the **subject** of the verb is **not directly stated**.



A sentence might have a **nominative appositive** that points back to this type of unexpressed subject.



Patrēs quoque carrulīs lūdīmus.

We [♣]fathers[♣] also play with mini-cars.

Patrēs is an appositive that renames *nōs*, the unexpressed subject of *lūdīmus*.

ALTERNATE TRANSLATIONS

Sometimes it helps to add the word “**AS**” when translating appositives.



Patrōnus in fōrum vēnistī.

You came [♣]as an advocate[♣] into the forum.



Sometimes (especially with place names), “**OF**” can be used to translate appositives.

Urbs Rōma multās causās vīdit.

The city [♣]of Rome[♣] saw many trials.

POSSESSION

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION VS. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

Used by **most nouns**
to indicate ownership.

The farmer's sons work hard.

Fīlia Iūlii es.
You are ♦Julius♦ daughter.

Possessive
Genitive

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

Used by **I, You, We, You (pl.)**
to indicate ownership.

My sons work hard.

Fīlia mea es.
You are ♦my♦ daughter.

Possessive **Adjective**

The genitives of
"I," "You,"
"We," "You (pl.)"
are **never** used
for **possession**.

Possessive adjectives
do not take on the
gender and **number**
of the possessor.

In the sentence above,
mea is feminine because
"daughter" is feminine.
It does not matter whether
"my" represents a male
or a female possessor.



POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

meus, mea, meum (my, mine)
tuus, tua, tuum (your, yours)
noster, nostra, nostrum (our, ours)
vester, vestra, vestrum (your, yours)

POSSESSION

THIRD PERSON POSSESSION: *SUUS* VS. *EIUS*

EIUS / *EŌRUM* / *EĀRUM*

“his” “their” “their”
 “her” (masculine or neuter (feminine
 “its” possessor) possessor)

(**Genitive** of Possession of *Is, Ea, Id*)

“His,” “Her,” “Its,” “Their”

↓
 Used when the **possessor** is **not**
 the **subject** of the main verb.

SUUS, *SUA*, *SUUM*

Gender/Number of possessor
 is irrelevant - **suus** **agrees** with
 the noun it modifies.

(Possessive **Adjective**)

“His,” “Her,” “Its,” “Their”

↓
 Used when the **possessor** is also
 the **subject** of the main verb.

Octāvia **eius** crīnēs compōnit.

Octavia arranges ♦**her** hair♦.

Possessor

Subject

Aurēlia crīnēs **suōs** amat.

Aurelia likes ♦**her** hair♦.

Subject

Possessor

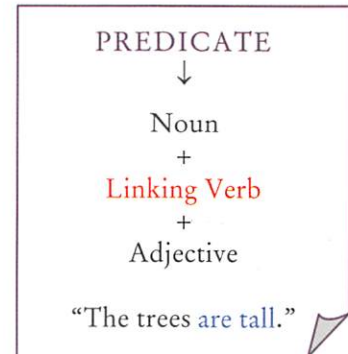
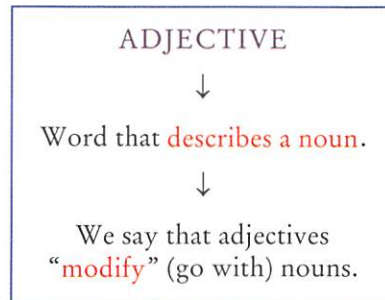
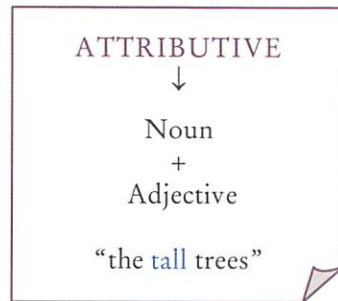
Possessor & Subject
 are **not** the same
 person.

Possessor & Subject
are the same
 person.



OVERVIEW OF ADJECTIVES

INTRODUCTION



DICTIONARY ENTRY

bonus,	bona,	bonum	(good)
↓	↓	↓	↓
MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MEANING
----- NOMINATIVE SINGULARS -----			

FORMS

Like nouns, adjectives have a full set of singular and plural **case forms**.

Unlike nouns, adjectives can take on **any gender**.

“GOOD HORSE” (Masculine)	“GOOD LAND” (Feminine)
↓	↓
bonus equus	bona terra
bonī equī	bonae terrae
bonō equō	bonae terrae
bonum equum	bonam terram
bonō equō	bonā terrā

STEM

Adjective stems are generally obtained by removing the **feminine** nominative singular ending.
(See pp. 103-104, 106)

GLOSSARY ENTRY

bonus, bona , bonum (good)	→	bon-
celer, celeris , celere (swift)	→	celer-
fortis , forte (brave)	→	fort-
audāx, audācis (bold)	→	audāc-

STEM

For some adjectives, the stem is obtained by removing the **genitive** singular ending.
(See p. 106)

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES



Adjectives in Latin must **agree** with the nouns they modify in **case, number, and gender**.



Adjectives must have the same case, number, and gender as the nouns they modify.

Adjectives may appear **before** or **after** the nouns they modify.

Puella parva fēminam spectat.
The *small* girl watches the woman.

Parva is
nominative singular feminine:



modifies **puella**
(also nominative singular feminine).

To translate
an adjective in a
sentence, you must
**identify the noun
with which
it agrees.**

Puella parvam fēminam spectat.
The girl watches the *small* woman.

Parvam is
accusative singular feminine:



modifies **fēminam**
(also accusative singular feminine).

PREDICATE
ADJECTIVES



Masculine if the group of
nouns are **living** beings.
Neuter if the group of nouns
are **not living** beings.

ADJECTIVES MODIFYING
A GROUP OF NOUNS
OF MIXED GENDER



ATTRIBUTIVE
ADJECTIVES



Agree with the
nearest noun.

Vir fēminaque Graecī sunt.
The man and woman are *Greek*.

Iocōs carminaque **tua** audiēbam.
I was listening to *your* jokes and songs.

Nominative Plural
3rd Decl. Noun 2-1-2 Adjective



Canēs irātī lātrant.
The angry dogs are barking.

The adjective ending
**does not have to look
the same as the noun**
ending as long as it has
the right case, number,
and gender.

Accusative Singular

1st Decl. Noun 3rd Decl. Adjective



Rēginam potentem vīdīsti.
You saw *the powerful queen*.

2-1-2 Adjective
Nominative Singular
Masculine

BONUS NAUTA

1st Decl. Noun
Nominative Singular
Masculine

2-1-2 ADJECTIVES

-us, -a, -um

ADJECTIVES IN -US, -A, -UM

2-1-2 ADJECTIVES IN -US, -A, -UM

Use 1st and 2nd declension endings.

Typical:

bonus, bona, bonum (good)

These are called 2-1-2 adjectives because they use 2nd declension forms when they are masculine, 1st declension forms when they are feminine, and 2nd declension forms when they are neuter.

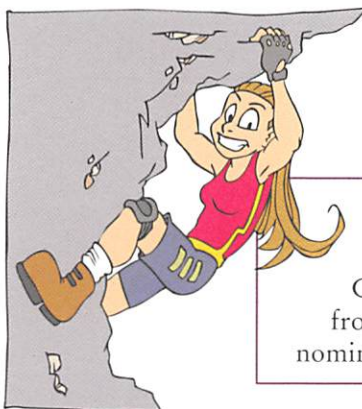
2nd
Declension
Masculine Endings
↓
Masculine
Adjective

1st
Declension
Endings
↓
Feminine
Adjective

2nd
Declension
Neuter Endings
↓
Neuter
Adjective

2-1-2 ADJECTIVE bonus, bona, bonum (good)

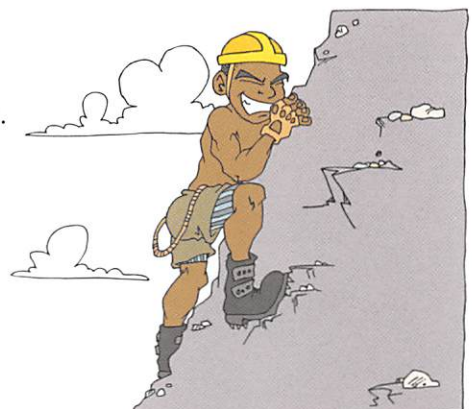
	<u>Singular</u>			<u>Plural</u>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs



STEM
↓
Cut off -A
from **feminine**
nominative singular.

Montēs **altōs** ascenditis.
You (pl.) climb *high* mountains.

STEM:
bonus, bona, bonum
↓
BONA → BON-



2-1-2 ADJECTIVES

-r, -a, -um

ADJECTIVES IN -R, -A, -UM

NOTE:

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
drops the "e"
from its stem.

2-1-2 ADJECTIVES IN -R, -A, -UM

Use 1st and 2nd declension endings.

Typical:
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (beautiful)
liber, libera, liberum (free)

NOTE:

liber, libera, liberum
keeps the "e"
in its stem.

2-1-2 ADJECTIVE pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (beautiful) → drops its "e"						
	<u>Singular</u>			<u>Plural</u>		
Nom.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
2-1-2 ADJECTIVE liber, libera, liberum (free) → keeps its "e"						
	<u>Singular</u>			<u>Plural</u>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom.	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
Gen.	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
Dat.	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
Acc.	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
Abl.	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

STEM:
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
↓
PULCHRA → PULCHR-

STEM
↓
Cut off -A
from feminine
nominative singular.

STEM:
liber, libera, liberum
↓
LĪBERA → LĪBER-

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

-r, -ris, -re
-is, -is, -e
---, -is

INTRODUCTION

-r, -ris, -re
-is, -e
-----, -is

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

Use **3rd declension endings**.

Glossary entry is distinctly different from that of a 2-1-2 Adjective.

celer, celeris, celere (swift)
ācer, ācris, ācre (sharp, fierce)
dulcis, dulce (sweet)
clēmēns, clēmētis (kind, merciful)

2-1-2 ADJECTIVES

-us, -a, -um
or
-r, -a, -um

2-1-2 ADJECTIVES

Use **1st and 2nd declension endings**



puellam **bonam** → acc. sing. fem.

puellam **bonem** × → mismatch:
2-1-2 adjective cannot use 3rd declension endings

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

Use **3rd declension endings**



puellam **celeram** × → mismatch:
3rd declension adjective cannot use 2-1-2 endings

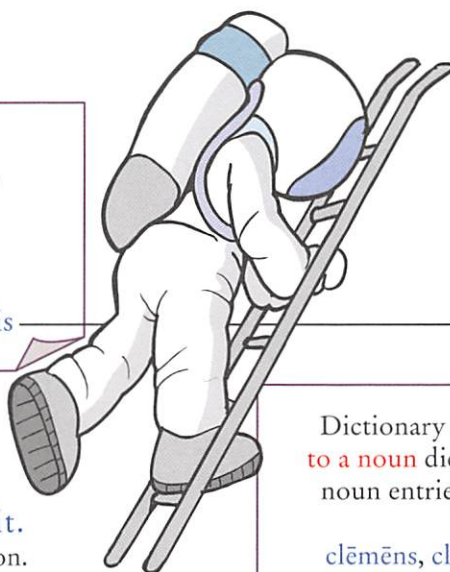
puellam **celerem** → acc. sing. fem.

TERMINATION

Three Types of Third Declension Adjectives:

- 3 Termination: ācer, ācris, ācre
- 2 Termination: dulcis, dulce
- 1 Termination: clēmēns, clēmētis

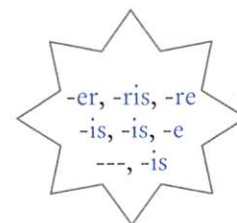
Fēmina **audāx** ad lūnam volābit.
The *daring* woman will fly to the moon.



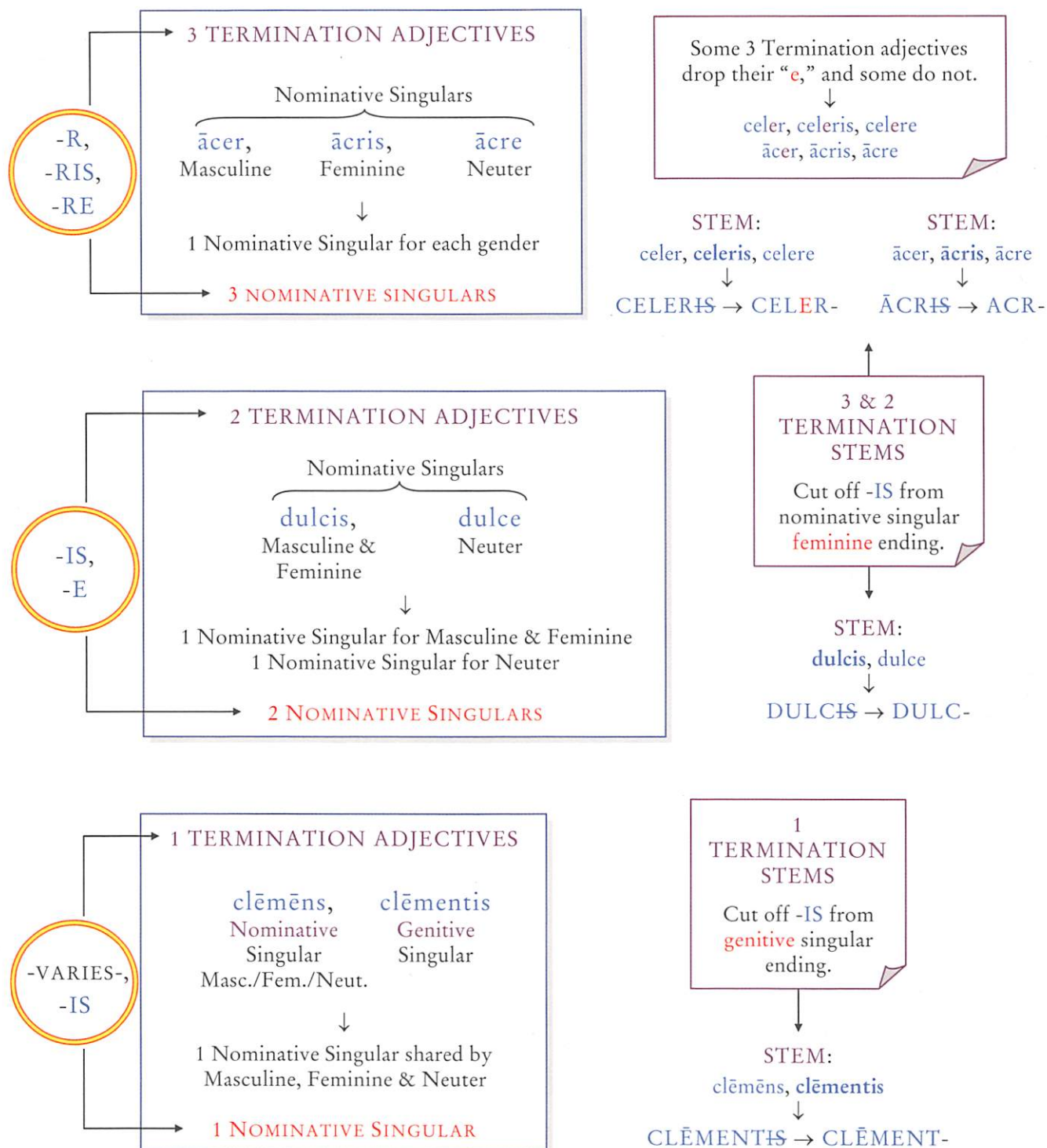
Dictionary entry looks **similar to a noun** dictionary entry, BUT noun entries also list a gender.

clēmēns, clēmētis - adjective
gēns, gentis, **f.** - noun

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES



1, 2, 3 TERMINATION



THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

-er, -ris, -re
-is, -is, -e
---, -is

ENDINGS

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR

The **dictionary entry** will tell you what nominative singular endings are used by a given adjective.

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVE



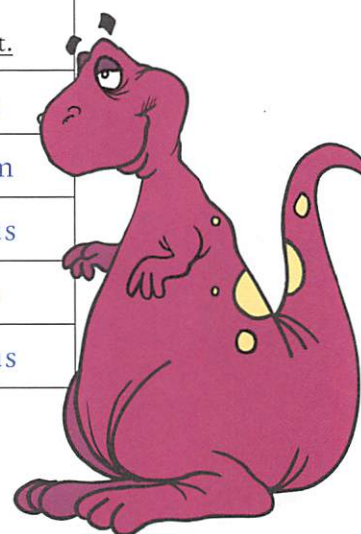
3rd declension adjective **resembles** 3rd declension **noun** but has some **extra i's**.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR

In the 3rd declension, most **nouns** have "e" in the ablative singular, but **adjectives** have "i."

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVE ENDINGS

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<u>Masc./Fem.</u>	<u>Neut.</u>	<u>Masc./Fem.</u>	<u>Neut.</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	----	----	-ēs	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-is	-ium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	----	-ēs / -īs	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus



THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVE ingēns, ingentis (huge)

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<u>Masc./Fem.</u>	<u>Neut.</u>	<u>Masc./Fem.</u>	<u>Neut.</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	ingēns	ingēns	ingentēs	ingentia
<i>Gen.</i>	ingentis	ingentis	ingentium	ingentium
<i>Dat.</i>	ingentī	ingentī	ingentibus	ingentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ingentem	ingēns	ingentēs / -īs	ingentia
<i>Abl.</i>	ingentī	ingentī	ingentibus	ingentibus

An adjective's ending **might not** look the same as the ending of the noun it modifies!

Ingentis dinosaurōs vīdī.
I saw *huge dinosaurs*.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

-IUS
-Ī

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Some 2-1-2 Adjectives are declined with a few unusual forms.

↓
Genitive Singular: -IUS
Dative Singular: -Ī

These adjectives resemble *ille* in the genitive and the dative.
(See p. 128)

Additional irregularity:
neuter nominative and accusative end in -ud instead of -um.

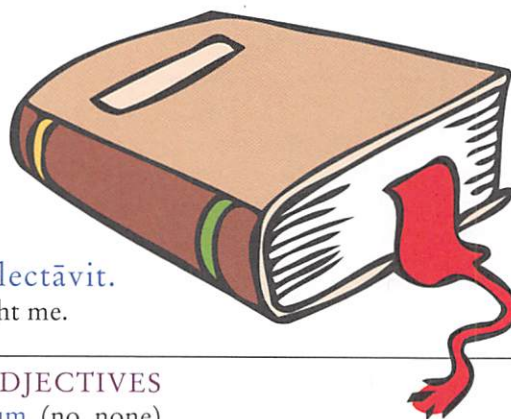
IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, alia, aliud (other, another)
alter, altera, alterum (the other [of two], second)
neuter, neutra, neutrum (neither)
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (no, none)
sōlus, sōla, sōlum (only, alone)
tōtus, tōta, tōtum (whole, entire)
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (any)
uter, utra, utrum (which? [of two])
uterque, utraque, utrumque (each [of two])

Forms of *uter* with -que on the end.

IDIOMS

alius...alius (one...another)
aliī...aliī (some...others)
alter...alter (one...the other)



Alterī poētae laudem dedī, sed alter mē nōn dēlectāvit.

I gave praise to [♦]one[♦] poet, but [♦]the other[♦] did not delight me.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (no, none)						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
Nom.	nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	nūllī	nūllae	nūlla
Gen.	nūllius	nūllius	nūllius	nūllōrum	nūllārum	nūllōrum
Dat.	nūllī	nūllī	nūllī	nūllīs	nūllīs	nūllīs
Acc.	nūllum	nūllam	nūllum	nūllōs	nūllās	nūlla
Abl.	nūllō	nūllā	nūllō	nūllīs	nūllīs	nūllīs

NUMBERS

CARDINAL NUMBERS: 1–20

CARDINAL NUMBERS

1, 2, 3, 4, 5. . .

Most are **indeclinable**,
BUT
1, 2, 3 are **declinable**.

DECLINABLE:

Adjective has **multiple case forms**
(nominative, genitive, dative, etc.).

INDECLINABLE:

Adjective has only **one form**
representing **all cases**.

1	I	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	11	XI	ūndecim
2	II	duo, duae, duo	12	XII	duodecim
3	III	trēs, tria	13	XIII	trēdecim
4	IV	quattuor	14	XIV	quattuordecim
5	V	quīnque	15	XV	quīndecim
6	VI	sex	16	XVI	sēdecim
7	VII	septem	17	XVII	septendecim
8	VIII	octō	18	XVIII	duodēvigintī
9	IX	novem	19	XIX	ūndēvigintī
10	X	decem	20	XX	vīgintī

ūna placenta
one cake
(Nominative)

ūnam placentam
one cake
(Accusative)



septem candēlae
seven candles
(Nominative)

septem candēlās
seven candles
(Accusative)

NUMBERS

DECLINING ŪNUS, DUŌ, TRĒS

1			2			3	
ŪNUS, ŪNA, ŪNUM			DUO, DUAE, DUO			TRĒS, TRIA	
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs/duo	duās	duo	trēs/trīs	tria
ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

ūnus puer
one boy

(Nominative)

ūnum puerum
one boy

(Accusative)

duae rotae
two wheels

(Nominative)

duābus rotīs
two wheels

(Dative/Ablative)

tria astra
three stars

(Nominative)

trium astrōrum
three stars

(Genitive)



NUMBERS

ORDINAL NUMBERS: 1st–20th

ORDINAL NUMBERS

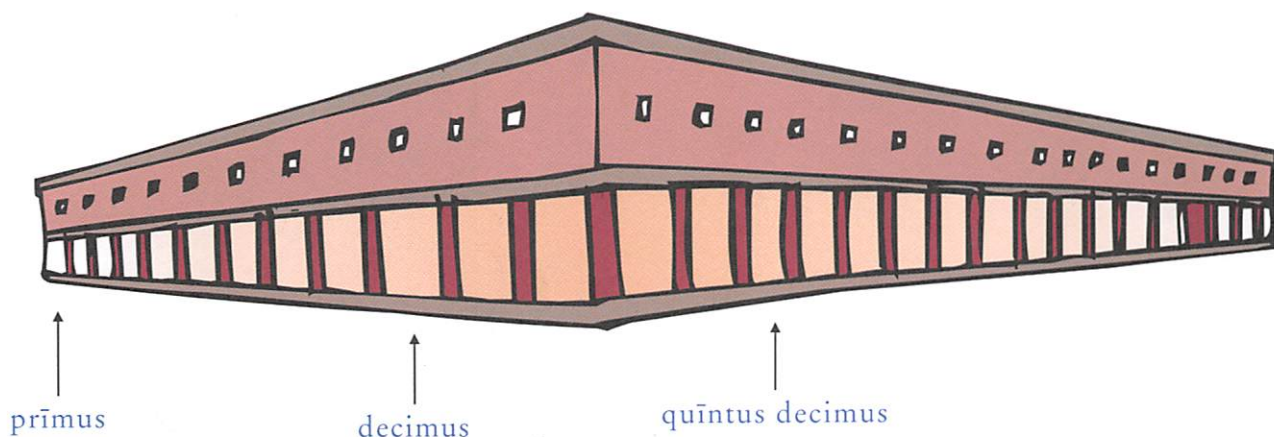
1ST, 2ND, 3RD, 4TH, 5TH . . .

2-1-2 Adjectives
(-us, -a, -um)

1st	I	prīmus	11th	XI	ūndecimus
2nd	II	secundus	12th	XII	duodecimus
3rd	III	tertius	13th	XIII	tertius decimus
4th	IV	quārtus	14th	XIV	quārtus decimus
5th	V	quīntus	15th	XV	quīntus decimus
6th	VI	sextus	16th	XVI	sextus decimus
7th	VII	septimus	17th	XVII	septimus decimus
8th	VIII	octāvus	18th	XVIII	duōdēvīcēsīmus
9th	IX	nōnus	19th	XIX	ūndēvīcēsīmus
10th	X	decimus	20th	XX	vīcēsīmus

Both words
must be **declined**
to match the
noun they
modify.

Per **tertiam decimam** fenestram spectās.
You look through the **13th** window.



NUMBERS

CARDINAL & ORDINAL: 20–100

CARDINAL (Indeclinable)			ORDINAL (2-1-2 Adjectives)		
20	XX	vīgintī	20th	XX	vīcēsīmus
30	XXX	trīgintā	30th	XXX	trīcēsīmus
40	XL	quadrāgintā	40th	XL	quadrāgēsīmus
50	L	quīnquāgintā	50th	L	quīnquāgēsīmus
60	LX	sexāgintā	60th	LX	sexāgēsīmus
70	LXX	septuāgintā	70th	LXX	septuāgēsīmus
80	LXXX	octōgintā	80th	LXXX	octōgēsīmus
90	XC	nōnāgintā	90th	XC	nōnāgēsīmus
100	C	centum	100th	C	centēsīmus

21 ↓ vīgintī ūnus or ūnus et vīgintī	21 ST ↓ vīcēsīmus prīmus
--	--

In ūnō diē sunt **quattuor et vīgintī** hōrae.

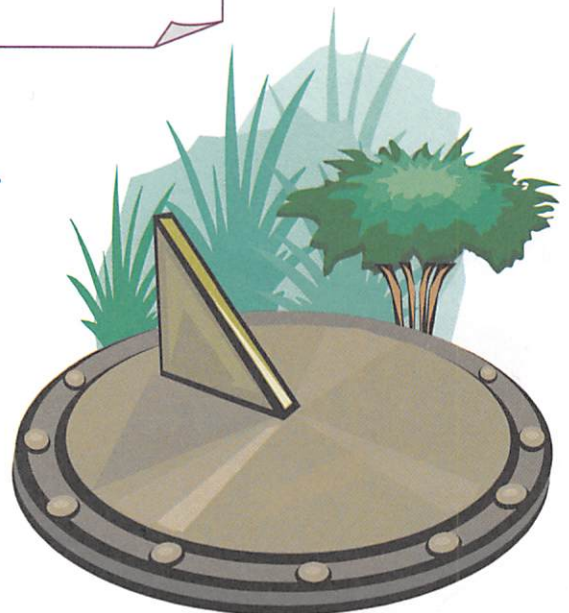
In one day there are *24* hours.

Trīcēsīmō quīntō momentō pervēnistī.

You arrived at the *35th* minute.

Quadrāgintā mōmenta dormīvī.

I slept for *40* minutes.



NUMBERS

CARDINAL & ORDINAL: 100–1000

CARDINAL (Indeclinable & Declinable)

100	C	centum
200	CC	ducentī
300	CCC	trecentī
400	CCCC	quadringentī
500	D	quīgentī
600	DC	sescentī
700	DCC	septingentī
800	DCCC	octingentī
900	DCCCC	nongentī
1000	M	mille

ORDINAL (2-1-2 Adjectives)

100th	C	centēsimus
200th	CC	ducentēsimus
300th	CCC	trecentēsimus
400th	CCCC	quadringentēsimus
500th	D	quīgentēsimus
600th	DC	sescentēsimus
700th	DCC	septingentēsimus
800th	DCCC	octingentēsimus
900th	DCCCC	nōngentēsimus
1000th	M	millēsimus

Declinable -
plural 2-1-2 adjectives:
ducentī, ducentae, ducenta



101 ↓ centum ūnus or centum et ūnus	101 ST ↓ centēsimus prīmus
---	--

Familia tua **quīgentōs** annōs patriam rēgnāvit.
Your family ruled the fatherland for **500th** years.

Trecentēsīmō septuāgēsīmō secundō annō rēx fuistī.
You were king in the **372nd** year.

NUMBERS

MILLE VS. MĪLIA

MILLE:
Indeclinable
Adjective

1000
OBJECTS

mille

noun

↓
indeclinable

↓
follows usual
case rules

Accusative
Direct Object
↓

Mille amīcōs habēs.
You have *1,000* friends.

MĪLIA:
Noun that
takes partitive
genitive

2000, 3000, 4000, 5000...
OBJECTS

*number**

mīlia

noun

↓
follow usual case rules

↓
Partitive
Genitive

(*Number → # of thousands)

Accusative
Direct Object
↓

Tria mīlia amīcōrum habēs.
You have *3,000* friends.

"USUAL CASE RULES"

Subject → Nominative
Direct Object → Accusative
Possession → Genitive
etc.

mille passūs

↓

1,000 paces = 1 mile

duo mīlia passuum

↓

2,000 paces = 2 miles

Dative
Indirect Object
↓

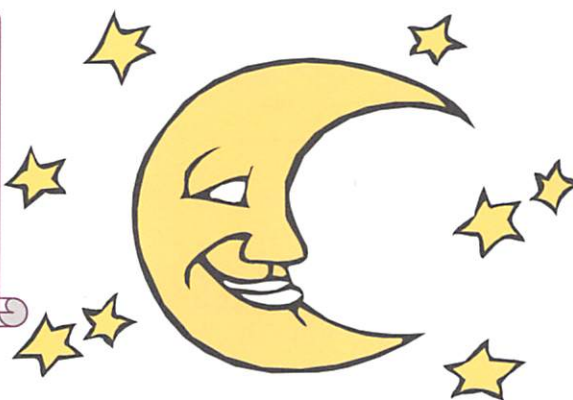
Deī decem mīlibus stēllārum lūcem dant.
The gods give light *to 10,000* stars.

MĪLIA +
Partitive Genitive:
decem mīlia stēllārum
3,000 stars

MĪLIA +
Partitive Ablative:
decem mīlia ē stēllīs
3,000 of the stars

Ablative
object of *cum*
↓

Cum decem mīlibus stēllārum habitō.
I live with *10,000* stars.



SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVES

SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVE

When an adjective has no noun to modify,
it **acts like a noun** itself.

↓
Add “**man**”/“**person**,” “**woman**,” “**thing**”
according to the gender of the adjective.

Masculine Accusative Plural

Multōs videō.

I see ♦many **men/people**♦.

Feminine Accusative Plural

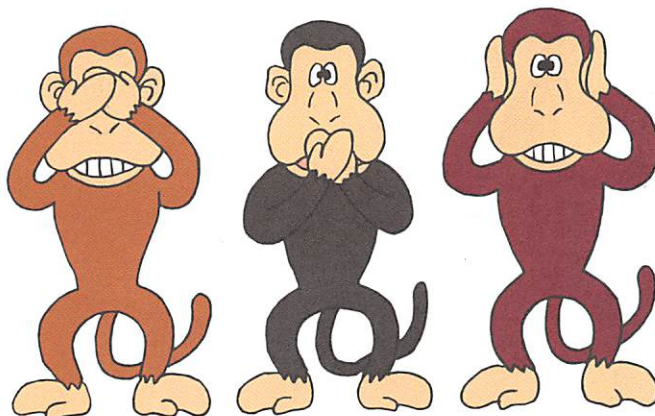
Multās videō.

I see ♦many **women**♦.

Neuter Accusative Plural

Multa videō.

I see ♦many **things**♦.



MAN/PERSON
WOMAN
THING

Hī simiī multīs nōtī sunt.

These monkeys are well known ♦to many **people**♦.

-A
(e.g. multa)

↓
PROBABLY:
neuter nominative/accusative
plural

OTHERWISE:
feminine nominative
singular

Mala effugite, simiī.

Avoid ♦bad **things**♦, monkeys.

Illa nautam salutāvit.

♦That **woman**♦ greeted the sailor.
♦**She**♦ greeted the sailor.

HIC, ILLE, IS

↓
Substantive
usage indicates
“**he**,” “**she**,” “**it**,” “**they**.”
(See p. 129)

OVERVIEW OF ADVERBS

ADVERBS

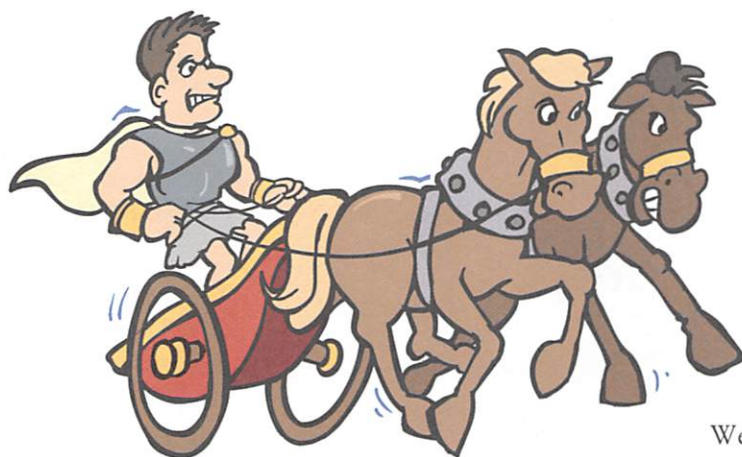
Adverbs describe
verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

Adverbs tell you **when, where, how,**
how often, how much.

"NOT"



Adverb that
expresses
negation.



We will go to the Circus Maximus [♦]today[♦].
(When - modifies the **verb** "we will go")

We will go [♦]there[♦] with our friends.
(Where - modifies the **verb** "we will go")

We will cheer [♦]loudly[♦] for our favorite charioteers.
(How - modifies the **verb** "we will cheer")

ENGLISH ADVERBS

In English, many (but not all)
adverbs are formed by adding
-ly to adjectives:

Quick	→	Quickly
Adjective		Adverb

We [♦]usually[♦] meet people we know at the Circus Maximus.
(How Often - modifies the **verb** "we meet")

We will cheer [♦]very[♦] loudly.
(How Much - modifies the **adverb** "loudly")

We selected horses [♦]not[♦] afraid of the crowd.
(Negation - modifies the **adjective** "afraid")

LATIN ADVERBS

In Latin, adverbs formed
from adjectives end either
in **-Ē** or in **-TER**.

Notice that these adverbs'
stems come from **adjectives**,
but the endings are not
adjective endings.

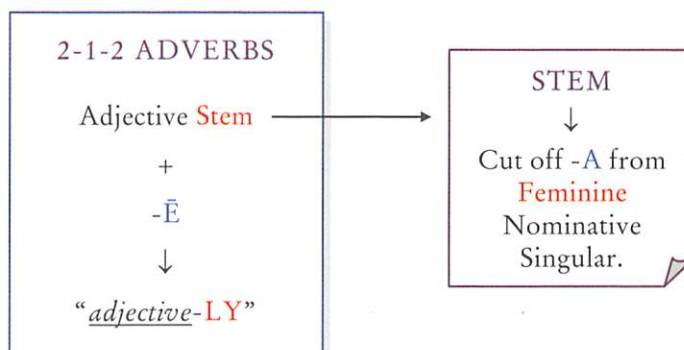
Laetē cum face currit.
He runs [♦]happily[♦] with the torch.

↓
Adverb formed from
laetus, laeta, laetum (happy)

Celeriter cum face currit.
He runs [♦]swiftly[♦] with the torch.

↓
Adverb formed from
celer, celeris, celere (swift)

2-1-2 ADVERBS



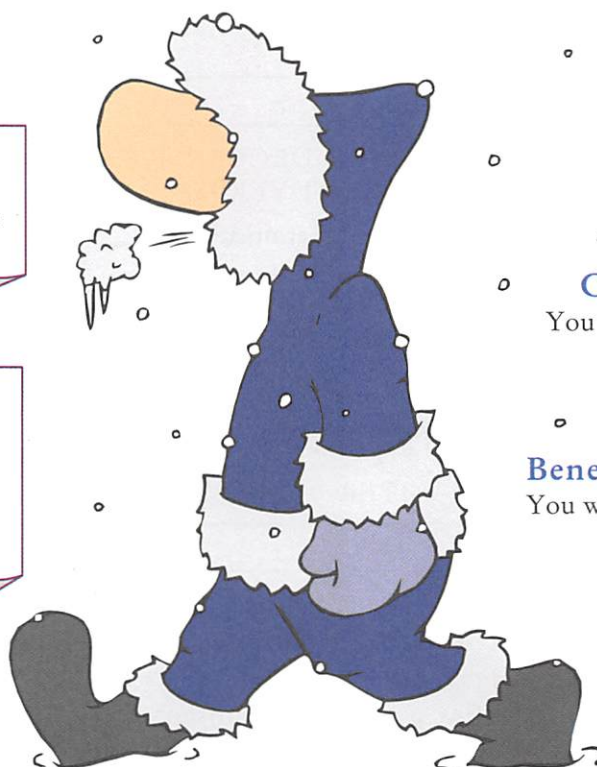
Adjectives in -US	laetus, laeta, laetum (happy)	→	laetē (happily)
Adjectives in -ER (e retained)	miser, misera, miserum (wretched)	→	miserē (wretchedly)
Adjectives in -ER (e dropped)	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (beautiful)	→	pulchrē (beautifully)

NOTE:

longē lātēque → far and wide
longē → far off, by far

IRREGULAR ADVERBS (bonus, malus, magnus)

bene → well
male → badly
magnopere → greatly



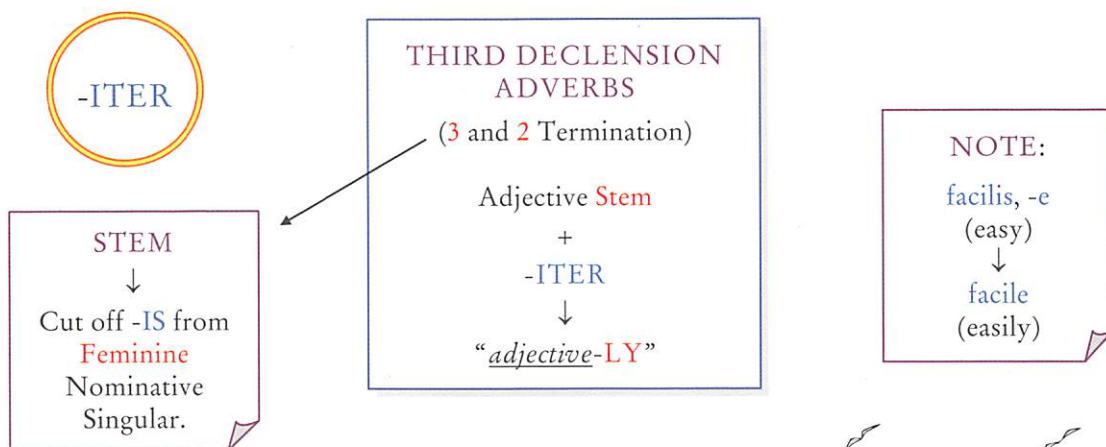
Caecē ambulābās.

You were walking *blindly*.

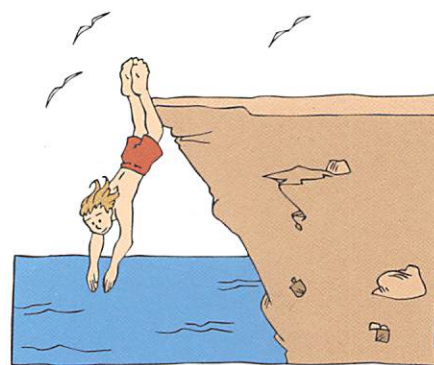
Bene vidēre nōn poterās.

You were not able to see *well*.

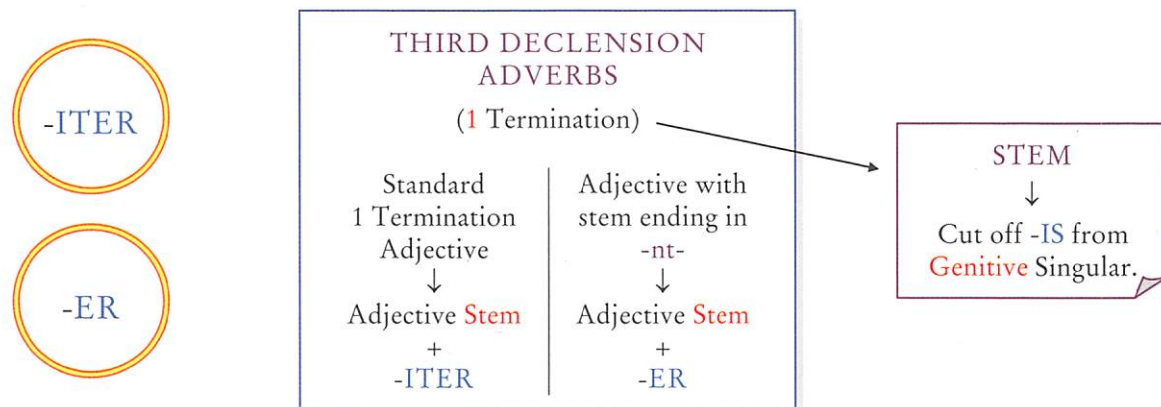
THIRD DECLENSION ADVERBS



3 Termination (e retained)	celer, celeris, celere (swift) → celeriter (swiftly)
3 Termination (e dropped)	ācer, ācris, ācre (fierce) → ācriter (fiercely)
2 Termination	fortis, forte (brave) → fortiter (bravely)



Fortiter saluistī.
You jumped ⁺bravely⁺.



1 Termination (Standard)	par, paris (equal) → pariter (equally)
1 Termination (Stem ending in -nt-)	potēns, potentis (powerful) → potenter (fiercely)

EXCEPTION
audāx, audācis (bold)
↓
audācter (boldly)

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

REGULAR ADJECTIVES

"DEGREE"

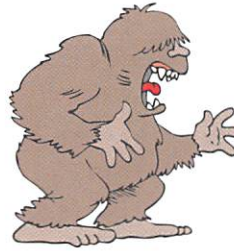
Positive
Comparative
Superlative



"big"

ingēns, ingentis

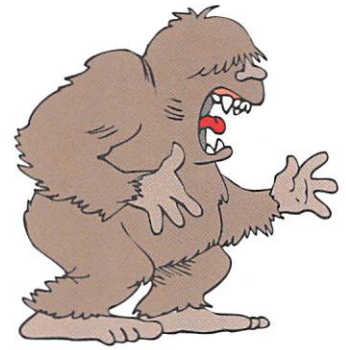
(POSITIVE)



"bigger"

ingentior, ingentius

(COMPARATIVE)



"biggest"

ingentissimus, -a, -um

(SUPERLATIVE)

-IOR
-IUS

COMPARATIVE

Adjective Stem

+

-IOR, -IUS

Masc./Fem.
Nominative
Singular

Neuter
Nominative
Singular

"-ER," "MORE," "RATHER," "TOO"

3rd Declension
Noun Endings

SUPERLATIVE

Adjective Stem

+

-ISSIMUS, -ISSIMA, -ISSIMUM

Masculine
Nominative
Singular

Feminine
Nominative
Singular

Neuter
Nominative
Singular

"-EST," "MOST," "VERY"

2-1-2 Adjective
Endings

-ISSIMUS

See p. 101 on
the formation
of adjective
stems.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE OF ingēns, ingentis

	MASCULINE/FEMININE		NEUTER	
	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
Nom.	ingentior	ingentiōrēs	ingenti ^{us}	ingentiōra
Gen.	ingentiōris	ingentiōrum	ingentiōris	ingentiōrum
Dat.	ingentiōrī	ingentiōribus	ingentiōrī	ingentiōribus
Acc.	ingentiōrem	ingentiōrēs	ingenti ^{us}	ingentiōra
Abl.	ingentiōre	ingentiōribus	ingentiōre	ingentiōribus

DECLINING COMPARATIVES

Comparative Masc./Fem.
Nominative Singular (-ior)
+
Endings

(Note -ius in neuter
nominative/accusative
singular)

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES IN *-ILIS* AND *-ER*

Some adjectives in *-ilis* and *-er* have regular comparative forms but **special superlative** forms.

-LIMUS

ADJECTIVES IN *-ILIS*

SUPERLATIVE



STEM + **-LIMUS**

facillimus, -a, -um

(**only** for certain adjectives)

-RIMUS

ADJECTIVES IN *-ER*

SUPERLATIVE



Masc. Nom. Sing. + **-RIMUS**

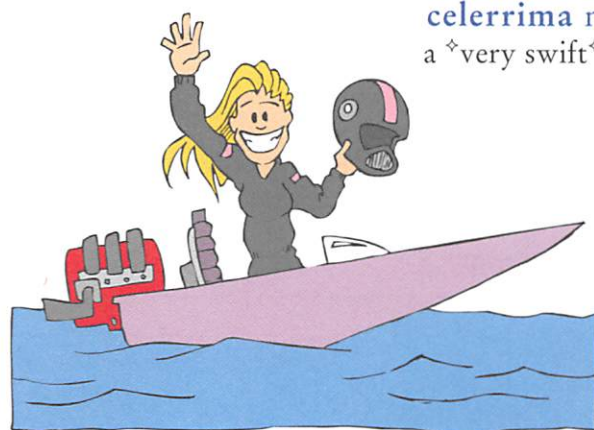
ācerimus, -a, -um

(līber, pulcher, celer, ācer, etc.)

ISSIMUS

facilis, facile (easy)
difficilis, difficile (difficult)
similis, simile (similar)
dissimilis, dissimile (different)
humilis, humile (humble, lowly)

iter **difficillimum**
a **very difficult** journey



celerrima nāvis
a **very swift** ship

ADJECTIVES IN *-EUS* AND *-IUS*

Adjectives in *-eus* and *-ius* have **special comparative and superlative** forms.

MĀGIS

COMPARATIVE



MĀGIS + POSITIVE

magis idōneus, -a, -um
(more suitable)

MAXIMĒ

SUPERLATIVE



MAXIMĒ + POSITIVE

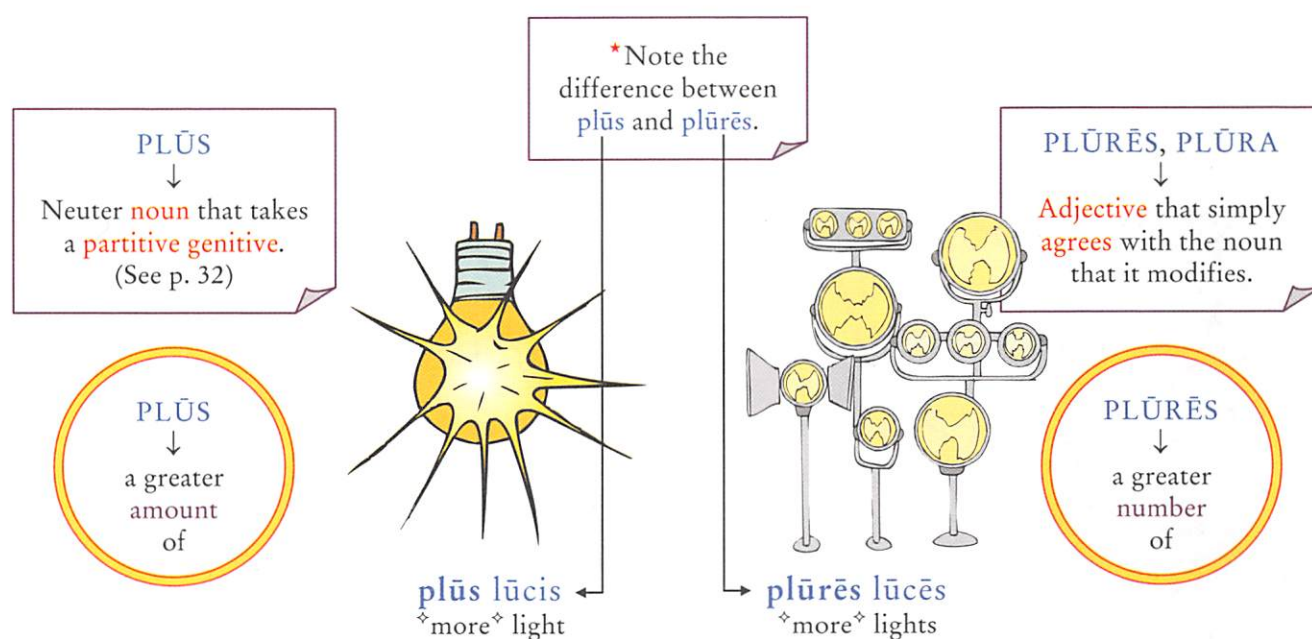
maximē anxius, -a, -um
(most anxious)

maximē idōnea nāvis
a **very suitable** ship

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

COMMON IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um good	melior, melius better	optimus, -a, -um best
malus, -a, -um bad	peior, peius worse	pessimus, -a, -um worst
magnus, -a, -um great	maior, maius greater	maximus, -a, -um greatest
parvus, -a, -um small	minor, minus smaller	minimus, -a, -um smallest
multus, -a, -um much	*plūs + genitive more	plūrimus, -a, -um most
multī, -ae, -a many	*plūrēs, plūra more	plūrimī, -ae, -a most



COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

MORE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES: PART I

propior, propius
(nearer)

proximus, -a, -um
(nearest)

ulterior, ulterius
(farther)

ultimus, -a, -um
(farthest, final)

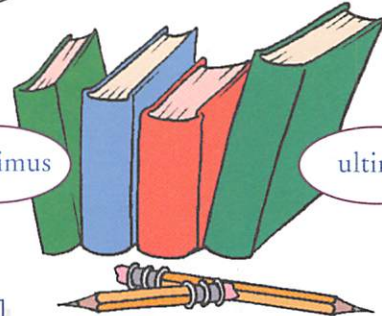
Which book
should I read?



proximus

← propior

→ ulterior



ultimus

Many of the adjectives on the
next two pages are **defective**,
which means they exist only
in **two** degrees.

exterior, exterius
(outer)

extrēmus, -a, -um
(outermost, last,
farthest, end of)

interior, interius
(inner)

intimus, -a, -um
(inmost)

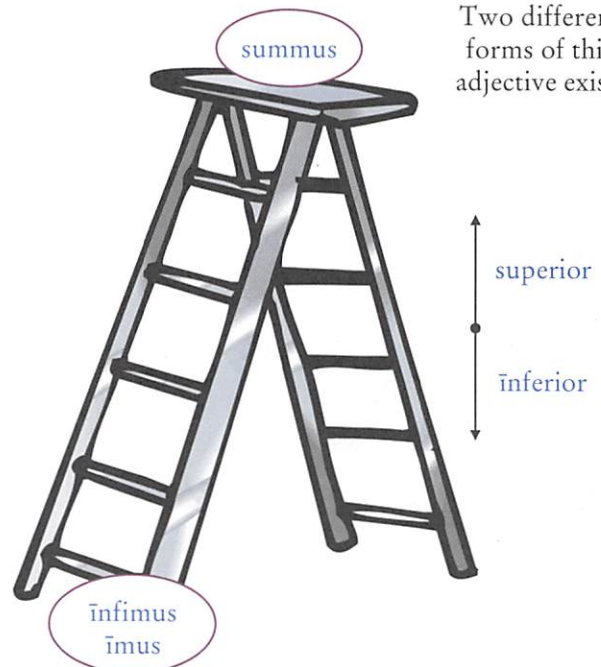
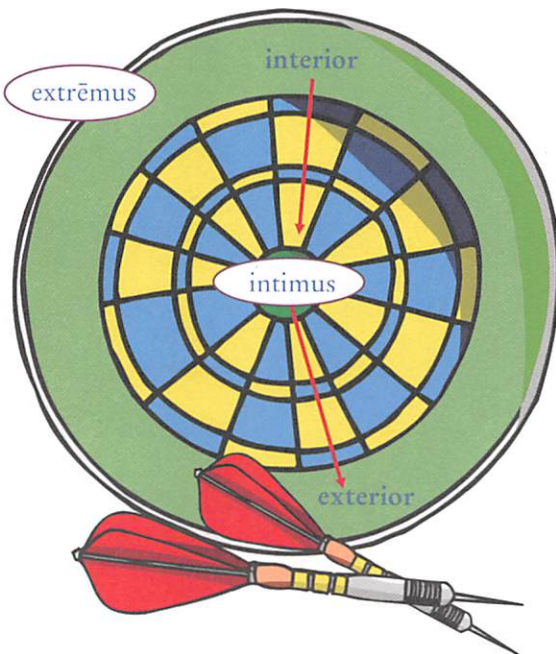
superior, superius
(higher)

summus, -a, -um
(highest, top of)

īnferior, īnferius
(lower)

īnfirmus, -a, -um
īmus, -a, -um }
(lowest, bottom of)

Two different
forms of this
adjective exist.



COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

MORE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES: PART II

-----		posterus, -a, -um (following, next)	
prior, prius (former, earlier)		posterior, posterius (later)	
p̄rimus, -a, -um (first, foremost)		postr̄emus, -a, -um (last)	

← prior ————— posterior →

p̄rimus

<p>iuvenis, iuvene (young)</p> <p>iunior [no neuter] minor nātū (younger)</p> <p>minimus nātū (youngest)</p>		<p>senex, senis (old)</p> <p>senior [no neuter] maior nātū (older)</p> <p>maximus nātū (oldest)</p>
<p>Literally: ← "lesser in respect to birth"</p>		<p>→ Literally: "greater in respect to birth"</p>

minimus nātū



maior nātū



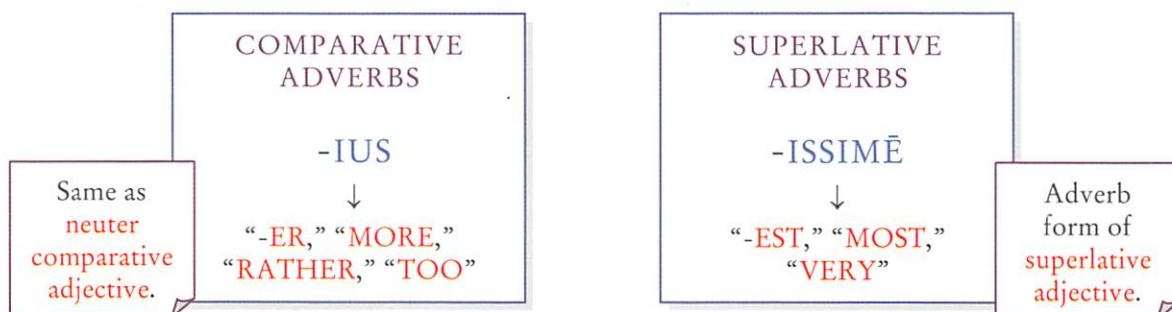
minor nātū

maxima nātū



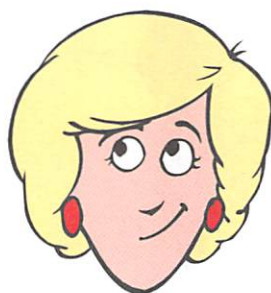
COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

REGULAR ADVERBS



	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Regular	laetē (laetus, laeta, laetum) happily	laetius more/rather/too happily	laetissimē most/very happily
-ER	pulchrē (pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum) beautifully	pulchrius more/rather/too beautifully	pulcherrimē most/very beautifully
	celeriter (celer, celeris, celere) swiftly	celerius more/rather/too swiftly, faster	celerrimē most/very swiftly, fastest
-ILIS	facile (facilis, facile) easily	facilius more/rather/too easily	facillimē most/very easily

Vitam agō...
I live life...



laetē



laetius



laetissimē

Adverbs in -ilis



-LIMĒ

Adverbs in -er



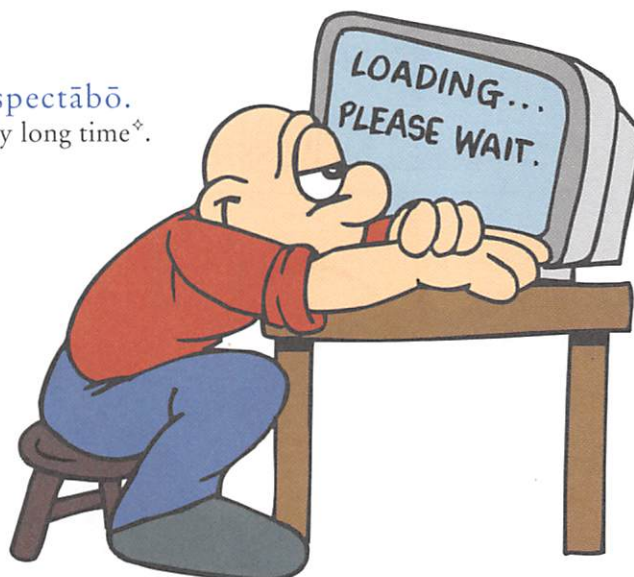
-RIMĒ

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

IRREGULAR ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene (bonus, -a, -um) well	melius better, rather/too well	optimē best, very well
male (malus, -a, -um) badly	peius worse, rather/too badly	pessimē best, very badly
magnopere (magnus, -a, -um) greatly	magis more, more greatly	maximē very greatly, especially
parum little, not much	minus less	minimē least, not at all, by no means
multum (multus, -a, -um) much, a lot	plūs more	plūrimum most, very much
diū for a long time	diūtius longer, for a longer time for a rather/too long time	diūtissimē for the longest time for a very long time
saepe often	saepius more/rather/too often	saepissimē very/most often

Diūtissimē expectābō.
I will wait ✧ for a very long time ✧.



Minimē patiēns sum.
I am ✧ not at all ✧ patient.

QUAM

COMPARATIVE

+

QUAM

↓

“THAN”

Cēna tua **suāvi**or erat **quam** cibus frīctus.
Your dinner was ♦tastier **than** ♦fried food.

Nominative:
Subject

Nominative:
Matches cēna



Noun that comes
after “than” must be
in the **same case** as
the noun to which it
is being compared.

QUAM

+

SUPERLATIVE

↓

“**AS** *positive* **AS POSSIBLE**”

Quam iūstissimās legēs pōnēmus.
We will set up laws ♦as just as possible♦.

Quam iūstissimē regēmus.
We will rule ♦as justly as possible♦.



DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS/ADJECTIVES

INTRODUCTION

DEMONSTRATIVE
ADJECTIVE



“Pointer Adjectives”

“THIS” / “THAT”

HIC



this
(here by
me)

ILLE



that
(not near me)

IS



this/that
(neutral
demonstrative)

Haec capsula
gravis est,
et illa schola
procul abest!

This bag is heavy,
and that school
is far away.



Eā causā
tē iuvāre volō.

For that reason,
I want to help you.

hic, haec, hoc (this, these; the latter)
ille, illa, illud (that, those; the former)
is, ea, id (this/these, that/those)

“The former”
refers to the **first**
of two previously
mentioned things,
and “the latter”
refers to the
second.

Rōma et Carthāgō sunt urbēs clārae. Illa in Italiā est, haec in Āfricā est.

Rome and Carthage are famous cities. The former is in Italy, the latter is in Africa.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS/ADJECTIVES

FORMS OF *HIC*, *ILLE*, *IS*

Note the
long marks
that distinguish
hoc (nom.)
from *hōc* (abl.).

HIC, HAEC, HOC (THIS, THESE)						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD (THAT, THOSE)						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

IS, EA, ID (THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE)						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

Genitive and dative singular resemble the forms of *ūnus*.
(See p. 110)

Similarities to 2-1-2 adjectives appear in the accusative and ablative singular.

Plural forms are just like a 2-1-2 adjective (except for the neuter nominative/accusative form *haec*).

Neuter nominative and accusative plural always look like the feminine nominative singular.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS/ADJECTIVES

THE THIRD PERSON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

When *hic*, *ille*, and *is* stand alone with no noun to modify, they are called demonstrative pronouns.



Add “man”/“person,” “woman,” “thing” as for any other substantive adjective.

or

Treat as 3rd person pronoun: “he,” “she,” “it,” “they.”



Eum laudābimus.
We will praise ♦**him**♦.

Illī sunt ōrātōrēs.
♦**They**♦ are orators.

ANTECEDENTS

When a demonstrative pronoun refers to some **previously mentioned** noun, this noun is called the antecedent.

The pronoun must agree in **gender** and **number** with its antecedent.

Eum laudābimus.
We will praise ♦**that man**♦.

Illī sunt ōrātōrēs.
♦**Those people**♦ are orators.

Haec audīte!
Hear ♦**these things**♦.

Patria magnopere amātur et **eam** semper laudābimus.
The fatherland is loved greatly, and we will always praise ♦**it**♦.

Eam (“it”) is feminine and singular because it refers to the feminine noun **patria**.

NOTE:

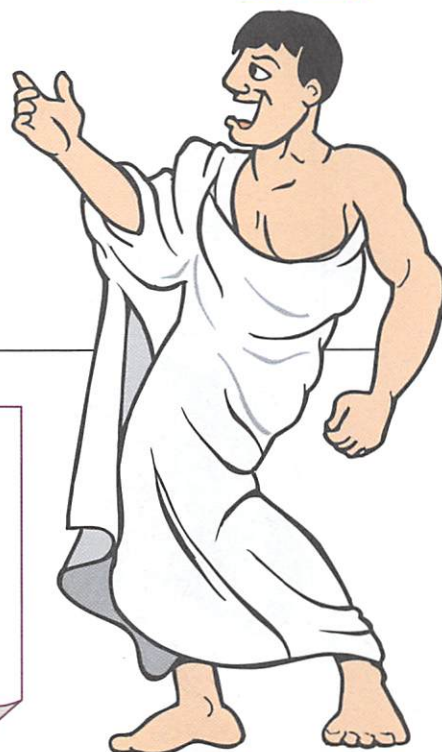
“It” is **not necessarily** represented by a **neuter** pronoun!

GENITIVE PRONOUNS (e.g. *eius*, *eōrum*, *eārum*)

↓
Literally mean “of him/her/it/them” – often can be translated as “**his**,” “**her**,” “**its**,” “**their**.”

(See p. 100)

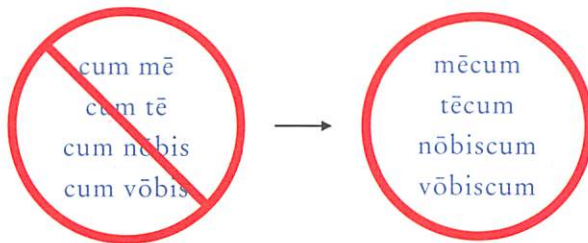
Gāium et sorōrem **eius** vōcō.
I call Gaius and ♦**his**♦ sister.
(. . .the sister ♦of him♦)



PERSONAL PRONOUNS

FIRST AND SECOND PERSON

EGO ↓ "I", "Me"	TŪ ↓ "You"	NŌS ↓ "We", "Us"	VŌS ↓ "You (pl.)"
Nom. ego	Nom. tū	Nom. nōs	Nom. vōs
Gen. meī	Gen. tuī	Gen. *nostrum nostrī	Gen. *vestrum vestrī
Dat. mihi	Dat. tibi	Dat. nōbis	Dat. vōbis
Acc. mē	Acc. tē	Acc. nōs	Acc. vōs
Abl. mē	Abl. tē	Abl. nōbis	Abl. vōbis



NOSTRUM	*	NOSTRĪ
&	vs.	&
VESTRUM	*	VESTRĪ

-UM is used for
partitive genitive

duo **vestrum**
two *of you (pl.)*

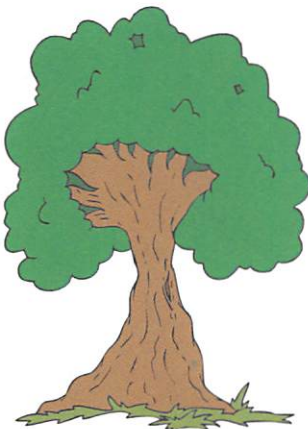
-Ī is used for
objective genitive

timor **vestrī**
fear *of you (pl.)*

HE/SHE/IT/THEY

Latin expresses the
3rd person pronoun
with the demonstratives
hic, ille, and is.

(See p. 129)



USE OF GENITIVE PRONOUNS

Genitive personal pronouns
can be used in **partitive** or
objective constructions,
but are **never possessive**.

The adjectives **meus,**
tuus, noster, and vester
indicate possession.

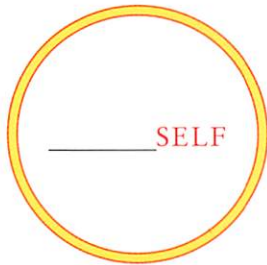
(See p. 99)

Puerī arborem ascendunt, et rāmī eōs sustinent.

The boys climb the tree, and the branches hold *them* up.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

INTRODUCTION



REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS



Genitive, Dative, Accusative,
or Ablative pronoun that
refers to the subject of the sentence.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Myself

Yourself

Himself

Herself

Itself

Ourselves

Yourselves

Themselves

✗ You see *you* in the mirror.
(Sounds strange!)

👉 You see *yourself* in the mirror.

“You”: **accusative** direct object



Reflexive pronoun is used
because this direct object is also
the subject of the sentence.

👉 Marcus sees *you*.

✗ Marcus sees *yourself*.
(Sounds strange!)

“You”: **accusative** direct object



Pronoun should **not** be **reflexive**
because this direct object is *not* also
the subject of the sentence.



REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

FORMS

	MYSELF	OURSELVES	YOURSELF	YOURSELVES	HIM/HER/IT -SELF	THEMSELVES
<i>Nom.</i>	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum nostrī	tuī	vestrum vestrī	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbis	tibi	vōbis	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē	sē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis	sē	sē

1st and 2nd person reflexives look exactly like **personal pronouns**, but **context** and common sense will help you determine whether to translate these identical forms as “I,” “you,” etc. or as “myself,” “yourself,” etc.

Use **context** to determine whether **suī, sibi, sē, sē** means “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” or “themselves.”

USE OF GENITIVE PRONOUNS

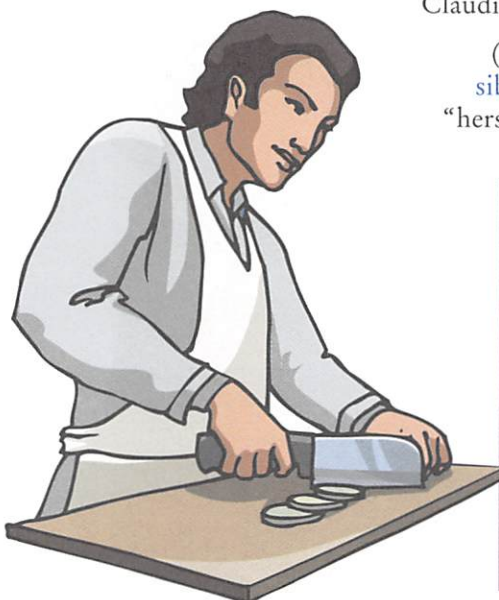
Genitive reflexive pronouns can be used in **partitive** or **objective** constructions, but are **never possessive**.

The adjectives **meus, tuus, noster, vester, and suus** indicate possession.

(See pp. 99-100)

Cūram tuī habēs.

You have concern *for yourself*.
(Objective Genitive)



Claudius cēnam sibi parat.
Claudius prepares dinner *for himself*.

(Common sense tells us that **sibi** must be “himself” and not “herself,” “itself,” or “themselves.”)

NOTE:

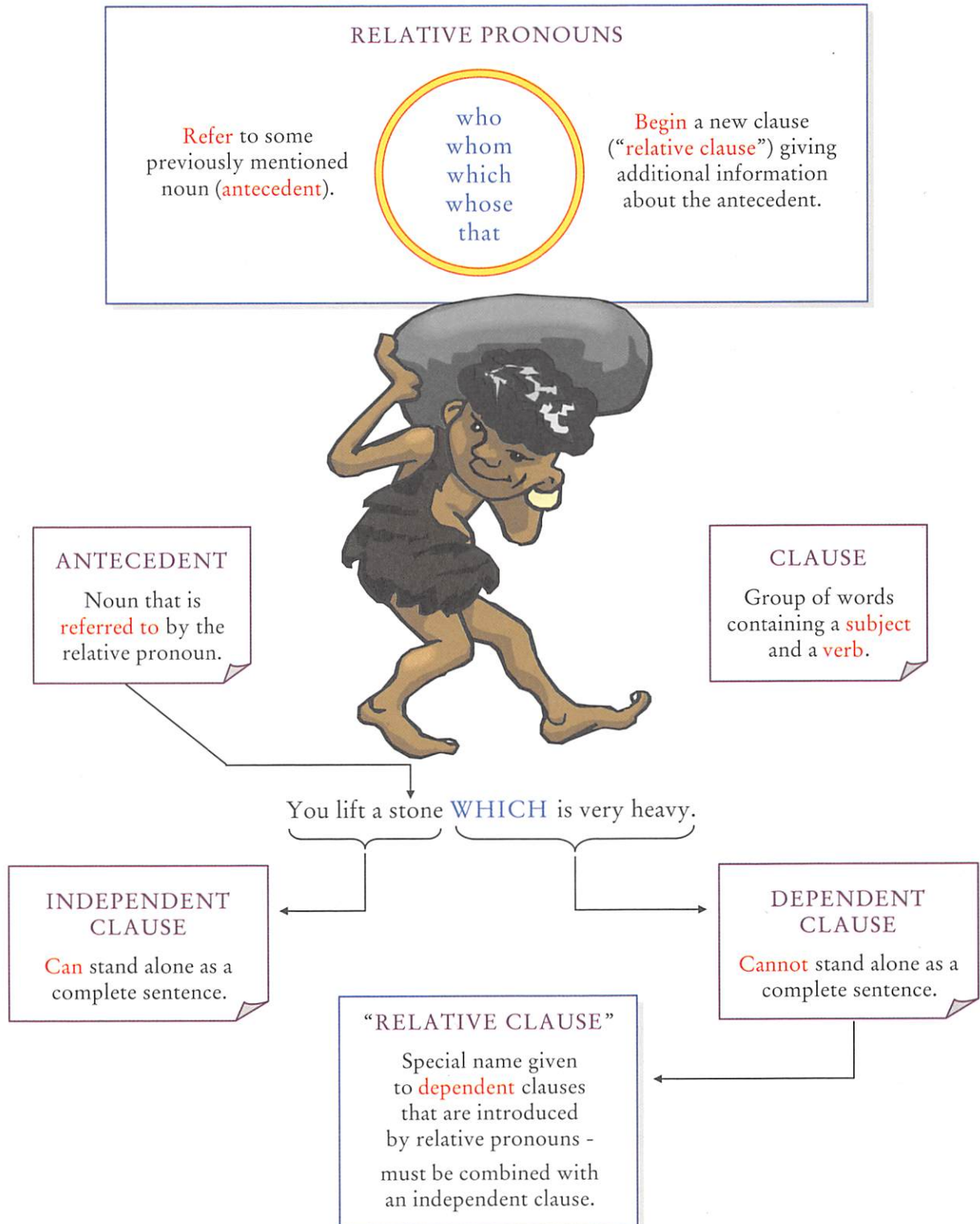
There are no nominative reflexive pronouns because reflexives never act as subjects. It would be nonsense to say: “Myself went to the store.”

It is possible to say “I myself went to the store,” but this does not involve a reflexive.

(See p. 145)

RELATIVE PRONOUN

INTRODUCTION



RELATIVE PRONOUN

FORMS AND TRANSLATION

RELATIVE PRONOUN FORMS						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

TRANSLATING THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

Nominative who*, which, that

Genitive whose, of whom, of which

Dative to/for whom, to/for which

Accusative whom, which, that

Ablative (without preposition) by/with/because of/than/etc. which
(with preposition) preposition whom, which

*“WHO”

↓
Only appropriate
when the pronoun is
nominative.

Cornēlia est puella quae cōmam flāvam habet.

Cornēlia is a girl *who* has blond hair.

Cornēliam, cuius cōma flāva est, salūtō.

I greet Cornelia, *whose* hair is blond.

Cornēliam salūtō cui numquam antea dīxī.

I greet Cornelia, *to whom* I never spoke before.

Cornēlia, quam hōdie salūtāvī, tua soror est.

Cornelia, *whom* I greeted today, is your sister.

Cornēlia, de quā saepe dīcō, mūsicam amat.

Cornelia, about *whom* I speak often, loves music.

Cornēlia mūsicam facit quā dēlectāmur.

Cornelia makes music *by which* we are delighted.



RELATIVE PRONOUN

CASE, NUMBER, GENDER RULE



DECLINING THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

Gender
&
Number

→ Must **match** the antecedent.

Case

→ Must reflect the grammatical **role of the relative pronoun** in its own half of the sentence.



The grammatical role of the **antecedent** is **irrelevant** to the case of the relative pronoun.

DETERMINING THE CASE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

1. Break the sentence into two separate sentences.
2. Identify the role of the word that is inserted when you take out the relative pronoun.
3. Use the case that reflects this grammatical function.

The gender and number of the relative pronoun help us identify the antecedent.

You lift a stone
which is very heavy.

1

You lift a stone.
which **The stone** is very heavy.

You lift a stone.
The stone is very heavy.

2

**SUBJECT
NOMINATIVE**

Saxum tollis **quod** gravissimum est.
You lift a stone *which* is very heavy.

3

Nominative: subject of est
Neuter Singular: agrees with saxum

You called the dogs
whose faces were happy.

1

You called the dogs.
whose **The dogs'** faces were happy.

You called the dogs.
The dogs' faces were happy.

2

**POSSESSIVE
GENITIVE**

Canēs vocāvistī **quōrum** vultūs erant laetī.
You called the dogs *whose* faces were happy.

3

Genitive: possessive
Masculine Plural: agrees with canēs



RELATIVE PRONOUN

IMPLIED DEMONSTRATIVE



IMPLIED DEMONSTRATIVE

QUĪ, QUAE, QUOD

sometimes appears **without an antecedent**.

Supply an imaginary **is, ea, id**.



quī clāmat = [is] quī clāmat

“he who” is shouting. . .



If the antecedent seems to be missing, try
“**HE/SHE WHO**,” “**THAT WHICH**,”
“**THOSE WHO**,” etc.

Quī tē iūvit nunc laudātur.

“He who” helped you is now being praised.
(is quī)

Dedit quod petīverās.

He gave “that which” you had requested.
(id quod)



NOTE:

You can generally assume that the implied demonstrative would be in the **same case** as the relative pronoun.

Quibus auxilium dētur vīta faciliior est.

Life is easier “for those to whom” help is given.
(eis quibus)

RELATIVE PRONOUN

ACTING AS A DEMONSTRATIVE



ACTING AS A DEMONSTRATIVE

QUI, QUAE, QUOD
may sometimes be translated
as if it were the pronoun *is, ea, id*:



Qui nunc in agris laborat.
♦He♦ now works in the fields.



If the antecedent seems to be missing, try:
“HE,” “SHE,” “IT,” “THEY”

In this situation, the
relative pronoun does
not begin a relative
clause. There is no
“who,” “which,”
“that,” etc.

Frāter meus est medicus. Qui in Italiā habitat cum familiā suā.
My brother is a doctor. ♦He♦ lives in Italy with his family.



Māter frātrem meum dēsīderat. Quam quoque dēsīderat ille.
My mother misses my brother. He also misses ♦her♦.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

INTRODUCTION

WHAT
&
WHICH
are
interchangeable.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

what noun ?

which noun ?

Generally appears first in a **question**.

Modifies some noun in the question
(usually, this noun is right **next to**
the interrogative adjective).

Quae hiems erat peior hāc?

✧Which winter✧ was worse than this one?

Quās terrās vexat nix?

✧What lands✧ does the snow harrass?

Cuius deī manus nivem mittit?

✧What god's✧ hand sends the snow?

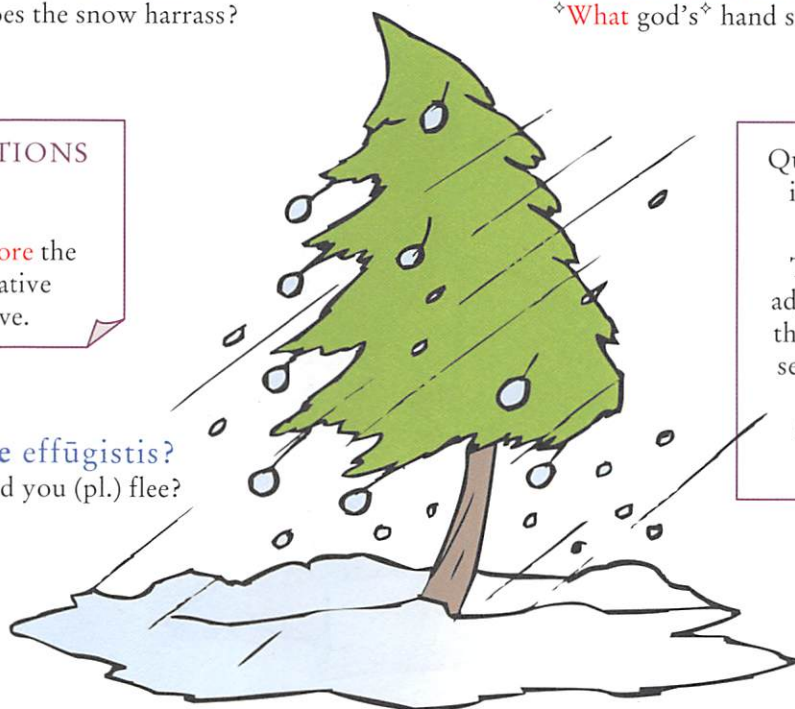
PREPOSITIONS



Placed **before** the
interrogative
adjective.

Ē quā tempestāte effūgistis?

✧From what storm✧ did you (pl.) flee?



Questions may begin
in the **middle of a**
sentence.

The interrogative
adjective may not be
the first word of the
sentence, but it will
generally be the
first word of the
question part.

Mē rogās, “Quibus cīvibus libet per nivem ambulāre?”

You ask me, “✧To which citizens✧ is it pleasing to walk through the snow?”

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

FORMS AND TRANSLATION

	INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE FORMS					
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Exactly the same as the relative pronoun.

RELATIVE PRONOUN

vs.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

Let **context** and your **instincts** guide you in telling these identical forms apart. If you are dealing with a relative, the rest of the sentence will make it very clear that you need to say "who/which/whose/etc."

Suntne animālia **quae** ibi habitant?

Are there creatures **who** live there?
(Relative Pronoun)

Quae animālia ibi habitant?

What creatures live there?
(Interrogative Adjective)

TRANSLATING THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

("which" can be substituted for "what" below)

Nominative what noun?

Genitive what noun's?
of what noun?

Dative to/for what noun?

Accusative what noun?

Ablative (without preposition) by/with/because of/than/etc. what noun?
(with preposition) preposition what noun?



INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

INTRODUCTION

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

who?
whom?
whose?
what?

Generally appears first in a **question**.

Quem in Italiā vīdistī?
✧**Whom**✧ did you see in Italy?

A NOTE ON GENDER

who?/whom? → masc./fem.
what? → neut. only

Quid putābās?
✧**What**✧ were you thinking?

Quis es, cīvis?
✧**Who**✧ are you, citizen?
(SINGULAR)

A NOTE ON NUMBER

who?/whom?/whose?

↓
Can be **singular** or **plural**.

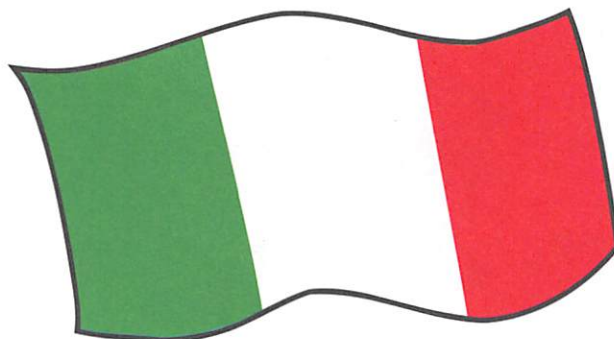
Quī estis, cīvēs?
✧**Who**✧ are you, citizens?
(PLURAL)

Ubi Rōmam veniēs, **cuius** domum visitābis?
When you come to Rome, ✧**whose**✧ home will you visit?

PREPOSITIONS

↓
Placed **before** the
interrogative
pronoun.

Ā quō Rōmam ductus es?
✧By **whom**✧ were you led to Rome?



Questions may begin
in the **middle of a**
sentence.

The interrogative
pronoun may not be
the first word of the
sentence, but it will
generally be the
first word of the
question part.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

FORMS AND TRANSLATION

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN FORMS					
	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	<u>Masc. & Fem.</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

↓
Masculine & Feminine
 are the same.

Plural is exactly like the **relative pronoun**
 and **interrogative adjective**.

Take care not to confuse the
 nominative singular forms of the
 relative and interrogative pronouns:

	<u>Relative</u>	<u>Interrog.</u>
Masc. Nom. Sing.	quī	quis
Fem. Nom. Sing.	quae	quis
Neut. Nom./Acc. Sing.	quod	quid

Quis hanc domum aedificāvit?
 ♦Who♦ built this house?



TRANSLATING THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

Nominative who? *, what?

Genitive whose?, of whom?, of what?

Dative to/for whom?, to/for what?

Accusative whom?, what?

Ablative (without preposition) by/with/because of/than/etc. whom/what?
 (with preposition) preposition whom?/what?

*"WHO"



Only appropriate
 when the pronoun
 is **nominative**.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN VS. ADJECTIVE

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN



Stands **alone**.

who?
whom?
whose?
what?

Who goes there?
Whom did you see?
Whose shoes are those?
What are you doing?

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

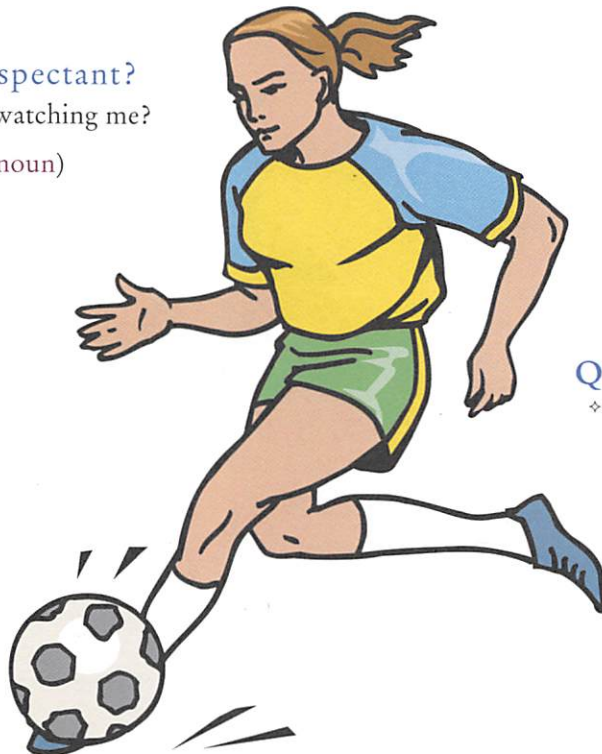


Modifies some nearby **noun**.

what noun?
which noun?

What stranger goes there?
What friend did you see?
What child's shoes are those?
What task are you doing?

Quī mē spectant?
✧Who✧ are watching me?
(Pronoun)



Quī spectātōrēs mē spectant?
✧What spectators✧ are watching me?
(Adjective)

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

Indicate that a **question** is being asked.

Nōnne and **num** indicate that the speaker expects a certain type of response.

NŌNNE

First word
of the question



Indicates that the speaker expects a “**yes**” response.

Nōnne nāvigābis ad Ītaliā?
You will sail to Italy, won't you?

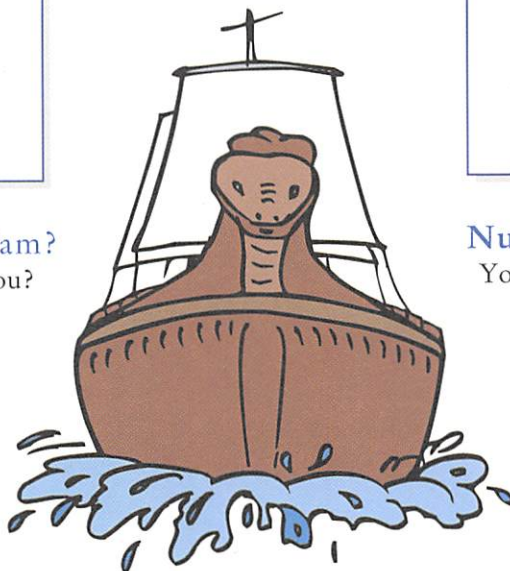
NUM

First word
of the question



Indicates that the speaker expects a “**no**” response.

Num nāvigābis ad Ītaliā?
You won't sail to Italy, will you?



-NE

Attached to the **first word**
of the question.



Speaker anticipates a “**yes**” or “**no**” response,
but has no expectation as to which of these
two possible answers will be given.

Nāvigābisne ad Ītaliā?
Will you sail to Italy?

Enclitic:

Can't stand alone -
must be attached
to another word.

INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

Some questions begin with interrogative adverbs, in which case there is no need for *-ne*, *nōne*, or *num*.

Cūr Quīntus volāre vult?

✧Why✧ does Quintus want to fly?

Unde vēnit Quīntus?

✧Where✧ did Quintus come ✧from✧?

Quandō redībit Quīntus?

✧When✧ will Quintus return?

Quomodō volat Quīntus sine ālīs?

✧How✧ does Quintus fly without wings?

COMMON INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

cūr (why?)

ubi (where [at]?)

unde (where from?)

quō (where [to]?)

quandō (when?)

quomodō (how?)

NOTE:

Be careful to differentiate between **ubi** and **quō**, both of which mean "where?"

Ubi est Līvia?

✧Where✧ is Livia?

↓
(Location)

Quō volat Līvia?

✧Where✧ is Livia flying?

↓
(Destination)



IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM

-SELF
VERY

IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM

“Intensive Pronoun”



Intensifies the **emphasis**
on the noun it modifies.

“-SELF,” “VERY”

Resembles a 2-1-2
adjective except for the
genitive & dative singular,
which resemble *hic* and *ille*.

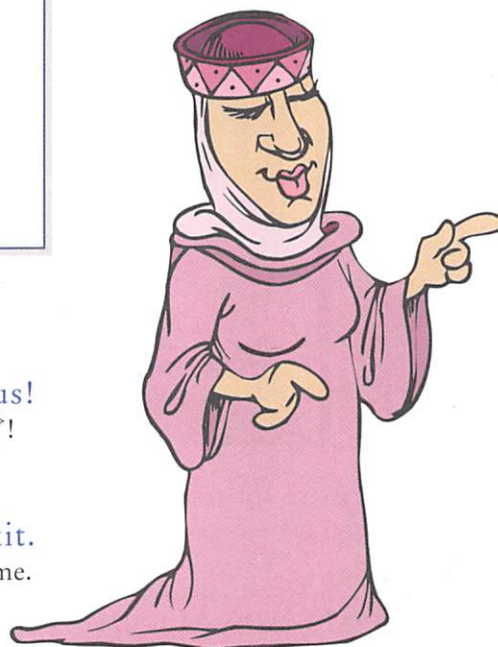
(See p. 128)

Rēgīnam ipsam vīdimus!

We saw the queen *“herself”*!

Illō ipsō tempore, rēgīna mē cōnspēxit.

At that *“very”* time, the queen caught sight of me.



IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM (-SELF, VERY)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Ego ipse hunc deum timeō!

I *“myself”* fear this god!



If “-self” acts as an **adjective**,
you are dealing with the
INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

(“Myself” modifies “I.”)

Be careful not to
confuse *ipse* with the
reflexive pronoun!
Both involve “-self.”
(See pp. 131-132)

Mē contrā deum dēfendō.

I protect *“myself”* against the god.



If “-self” acts like a **noun**,
you are dealing with a
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

(“Myself” is simply the direct object
of “protect.”)

ALIQUIS, ALIQUID



ALIQUIS, ALIQUID

ali-
+
quis, quid
↓
“SOMEONE/THING”
“ANYONE/THING”

Aliquid in hortō amīsisitī.
You lost ♦something♦ in the garden.

After sī, nisi, num, nē
“ali” takes a holiday:
aliquis, aliquid
↓
quis, quid

Aliquemne in hortō conspexistī?
Did you see ♦anyone♦ in the garden?

Num quid in hortō amīsisitī?
You didn’t lose ♦anything♦ in the garden, did you?

ALIQUIS, ALIQUID (SOMEONE, SOMETHING; ANYONE, ANYTHING)					
	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	<u>Masc. & Fem.</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliquae
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliquae
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

aliquī deus
♦some♦ god

ADJECTIVE VERSION

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod
(some, any)

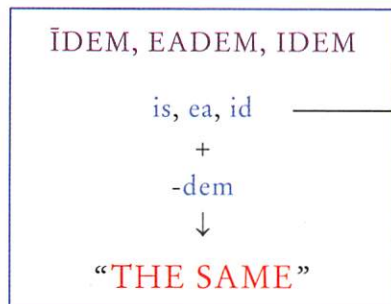
The adjective is somewhat different
from the pronoun.

Feminine Singular: **Neuter Plural:**

aliqua	aliqua
alicuius	aliquōrum
alicui	aliquibus
aliquam	aliqua
aliquā	aliquibus

aliqua dea
♦some♦ goddess

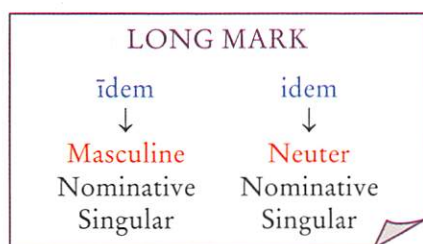
ĪDEM, EADEM, IDEM



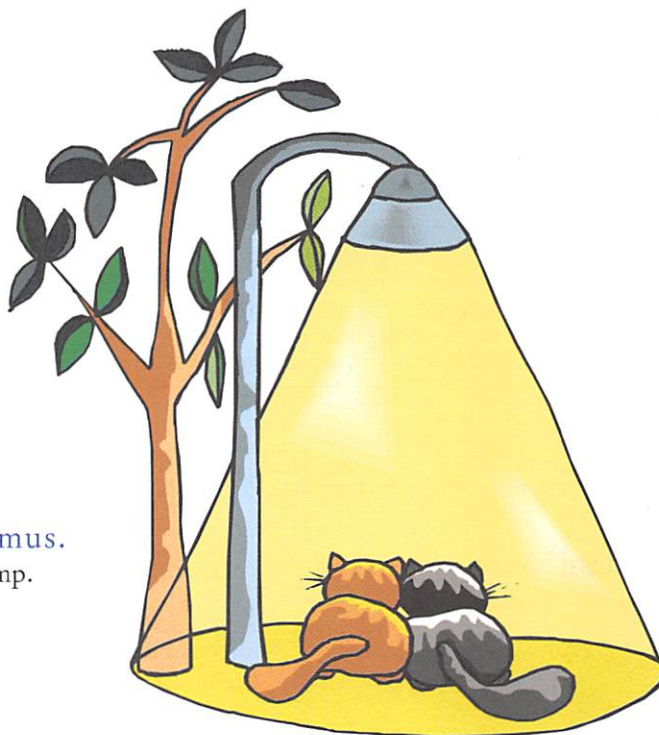
*When the form of is, ea, id ends in -m. . .
-M → -N
before -dem.

eum → eundem
eārum → eārundum

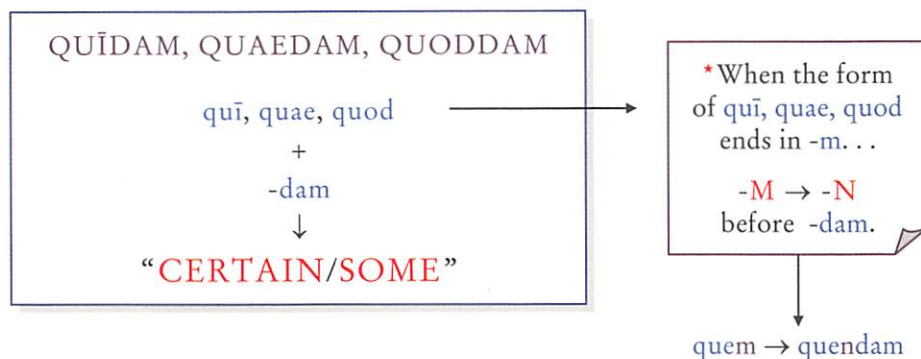
ĪDEM, EADEM, IDEM (THE SAME)						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem*	eārundem*	eōrundem*
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem*	eandem*	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem



Cotīdiē sub eādem lucernā iacēmus.
Every day we lie under *the same* lamp.

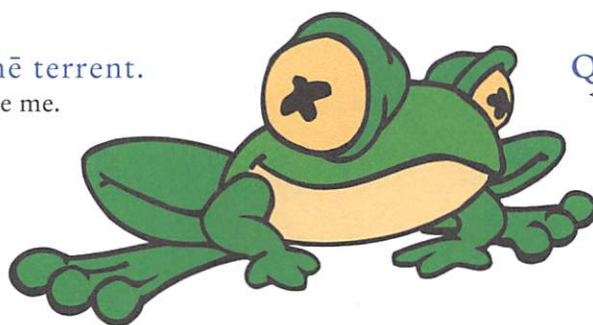


QUĪDAM, QUAEDAM, QUODDAM



Quaedam animālia mē terrent.
Some animals scare me.

Used as
ADJECTIVE



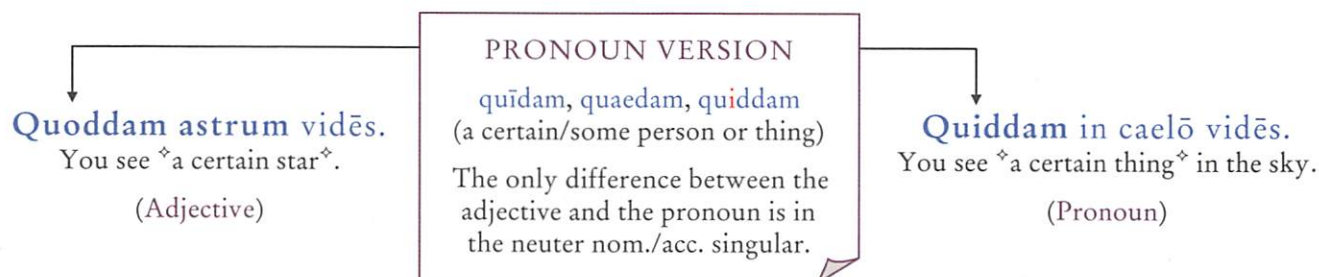
Quīdam rānās timent.
Some people fear frogs.

Used as
PRONOUN

Quandam rānam invēnī.
I found *a certain* frog.

Rāna quibusdam inimīca est.
The frog is hostile *to certain people*.

QUĪDAM, QUAEDAM, QUODDAM (CERTAIN, SOME)						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam*	quārundam*	quōrundam*
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam*	quandam*	quoddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam



VERB TERMINOLOGY

PERSON AND NUMBER

PERSON & NUMBER

Indicate what kind of **subject** is performing the verb.

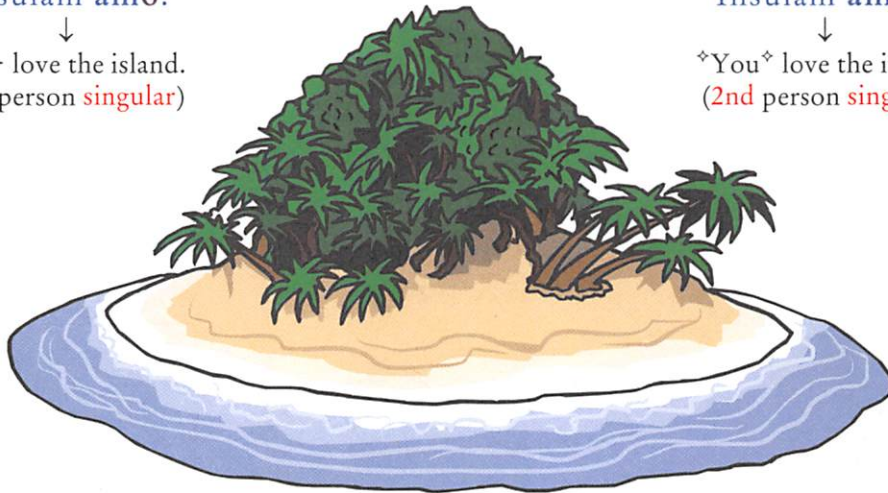
You can tell what kind of subject is performing a Latin verb by examining the **verb ending**.

Īnsulam amō.

↓
✧I✧ love the island.
(1st person **singular**)

Īnsulam amās.

↓
✧You✧ love the island.
(2nd person **singular**)



Subject
↓
You and I rest on the shore.
↓
"you and I" = *we*
↓
1st person plural

SUBJECT of verb	PERSON of verb	NUMBER of verb
I	1st	Singular
You	2nd	Singular
He/She/It	3rd	Singular
We	1st	Plural
You (pl.)	2nd	Plural
They	3rd	Plural

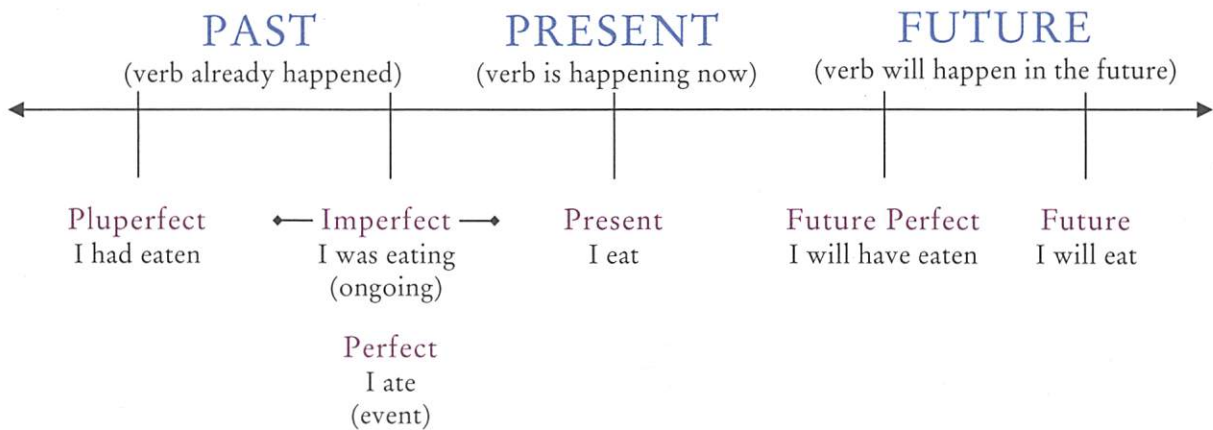
Subject
↓
The raft rests on the shore.
← "the raft" = *it*
↓
3rd person singular

VERB TERMINOLOGY

TENSE

TENSE

Indicates **when**
the verb takes place.



Latin has
SIX tenses

You can determine the
tense of a Latin verb
by examining the
verb ending.



labōrās
you work
↓
(present)

labōrābis
you will work
↓
(future)

labōrābās
you were working
↓
(imperfect)

VERB TERMINOLOGY

VOICE

VOICE

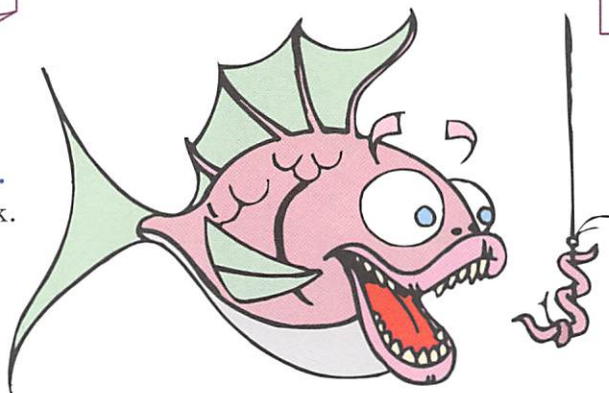
Indicates whether the subject is **acting** or **being acted upon**.

ACTIVE

↓
Subject **acts**.

Piscis hānum capit.
The fish ◊seizes◊ the hook.

Subject is **acting**.



PASSIVE

↓
Subject is **acted upon**.

Piscis capitur.
The fish ◊is seized◊.
Subject is being **acted upon**.

You can tell whether
a verb is active or passive
by examining the
verb ending.

For every tense, Latin has
a set of active endings and
a set of passive endings.

amat

↓
active
“he/she/it loves”

amābit

↓
active
“he/she/it will love”

amātur

↓
passive
“he/she/it is loved”

amābitur

↓
passive
“he/she/it will be loved”

VERB TERMINOLOGY

MOOD

MOOD

Verbs can refer to factual action with a specific subject (**indicative mood**), generalized action without a specific subject (**infinitive mood**), commanded action (**imperative mood**), and more.

The mood of a verb indicates which of these functions is intended.

INDICATIVE



"Subject hurries"
"Does subject hurry?"

INFINITIVE



"to hurry"

IMPERATIVE



"hurry!"

PARTICIPLE



"hurrying"

SUBJUNCTIVE



(See pp. 226–250, 252)



Different moods use
different **endings**.

festinat
he hurries
↓
(Indicative)

festināre
to hurry
↓
(Infinitive)

festinā
hurry!
↓
(Imperative)

festināns
hurrying
↓
(Participle)

festinet

↓
(Subjunctive)

VERB TERMINOLOGY

CONJUGATION

CONJUGATION

“Conjugation” is simply a word that means “**Verb Type**.”

There are **4** main types of verbs in the Latin language, and there are slight differences between the endings that each one uses.

IDENTIFYING A VERB'S CONJUGATION

Every conjugation has an **infinitive** form that is different from the infinitive forms of other conjugations.

Look at a verb's **dictionary entry** to find its infinitive form.

Typical Verb
Dictionary Entries

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus (to ask)
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (to hear)

INFINITIVE ENDINGS

-āre → 1st Conjugation
-ēre → 2nd Conjugation
-ere → 3rd Conjugation
-īre → 4th Conjugation

CONJUGATION MATTERS!

It will be difficult to interpret verb **endings** correctly if you do not know the verb's conjugation.

docēs:
2nd Conjugation
↓
Present

mittēs:
3rd Conjugation
↓
Future

SECOND CONJUGATION

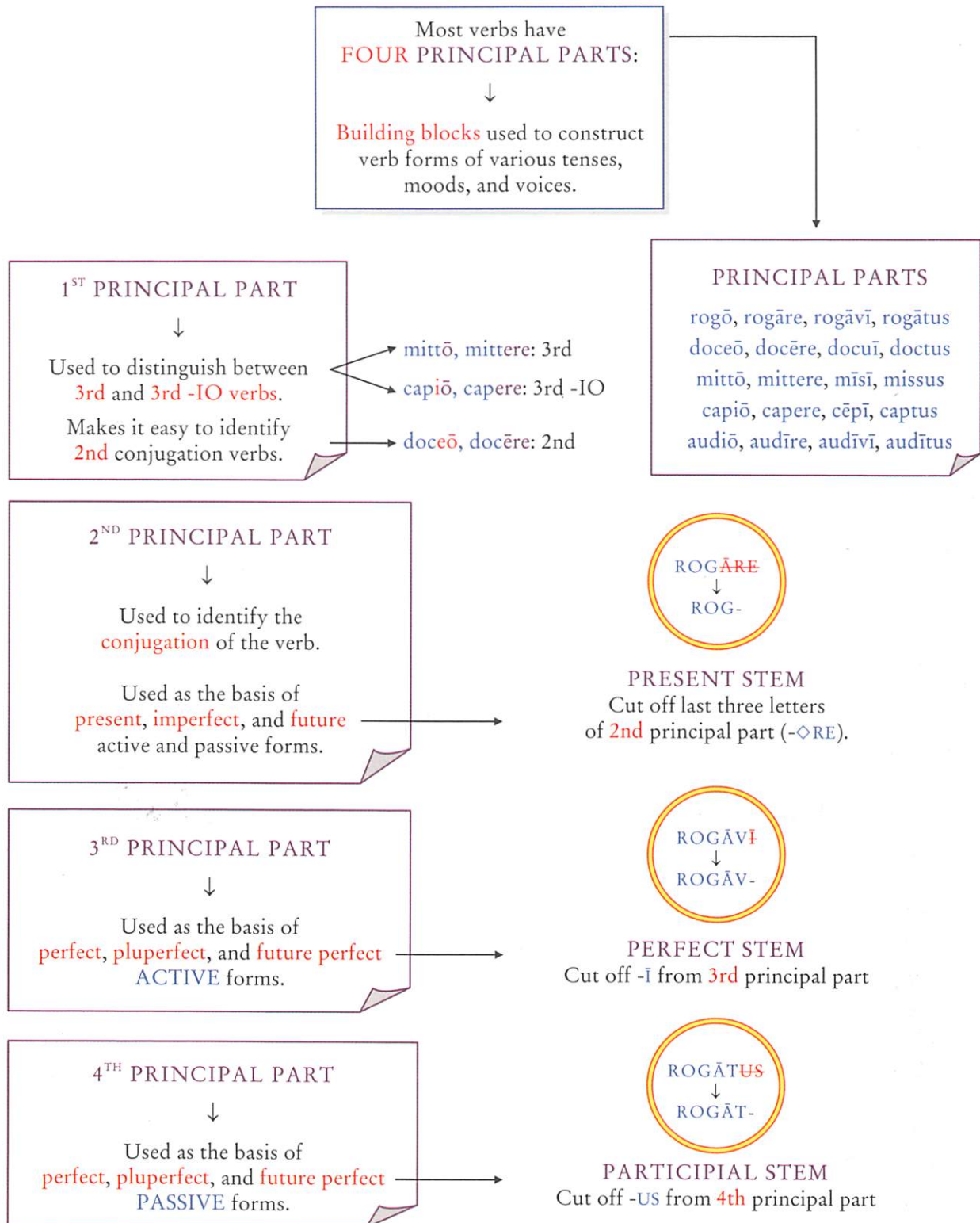
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>
doceō	docēbam	docēbō
docēs	docēbās	docēbis
docet	docēbat	docēbit
docēmus	docēbāmus	docēbimus
docētis	docēbātis	docēbitis
docent	docēbant	docēbunt

THIRD CONJUGATION

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>
mittō	mittēbam	mittam
mittis	mittēbās	mittēs
mittit	mittēbat	mittet
mittimus	mittēbāmus	mittēmus
mittitis	mittēbātis	mittētis
mittunt	mittēbant	mittent

VERB TERMINOLOGY

DICTIONARY ENTRY AND STEMS



VERB TERMINOLOGY

SUMMARY

PERSON & NUMBER	Indicates who is doing the verb.	1st, 2nd, 3rd person singular or plural
TENSE	Indicates when the verb occurs.	Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect
VOICE	Indicates whether the subject is acting or is being acted upon .	Active or Passive
MOOD	Indicates whether verb is expression of fact, generalized action, command, etc.	Indicative, Imperative, Infinitive, Participle, Subjunctive
CONJUGATION	Verb type – different conjugations use slightly different endings .	1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th
STEM	Basic foundation of verb: various tenses, moods, and voices are formed by adding endings to stems.	Present Stem Perfect Stem Participial Stem
DICTIONARY ENTRY	Reveals verb conjugation and stems .	e.g. -ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

PERSONAL ENDINGS

ACTIVE

Remember that the **subject** of an **active** verb **performs** some action.

ACTIVE PERSONAL ENDINGS

You can determine the **subject** of the verb by examining the verb **ending**.

1st person singular
(I)

2nd person singular
(You)

3rd person singular
(He/She/It)

-Ō/-M

-S

-T

-MUS

-TIS

-NT

amāmus



Ending tells you that "we" is performing the verb and that the verb is **active**.

1st person plural
(We)

2nd person plural
(You [pl.])

3rd person plural
(They)

NOTE:

"Tullia" = "she"

"Tullia and I" = "we"

"You and Tullia" = "you (pl.)"

Marcus lūdere amāt.

Marcus ♡ loves ♡ to play.

Marcum spectāmus.

We ♡ watch ♡ Marcus.

Marcus et Gāius lūdere amant.

Marcus and Gaius ♡ love ♡ to play.



PERSONAL ENDINGS

PASSIVE

Remember that the **subject** of a **passive** verb **receives** some action.

PASSIVE PERSONAL ENDINGS

You can determine the **subject** of the verb by examining the verb **ending**.

1st person singular
(I)

-R

2nd person singular
(You)

-RIS

3rd person singular
(He/She/It)

-TUR

-MUR

1st person plural
(We)

-MINĪ

2nd person plural
(You [pl.])

-NTUR

3rd person plural
(They)

NOTE:

"Tullia" = "she"

"Tullia and I" = "we"

"You and Tullia" = "you (pl.)"

amāmur



Ending tells you that
"we" is performing
the verb and that
the verb is **passive**.

Librō dēlector.

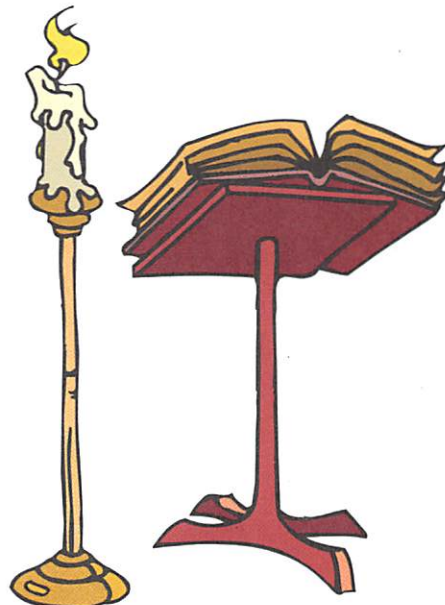
✧I am delighted✧ by the book.

Ego et Lūcius librō docēmur.

Lucius and I ✧are taught✧ by the book.

Librō terrēminī.

✧You (pl.) are frightened✧ by the book.



CONNECTOR VOWELS

1 ST conjugation	2 ND conjugation
3 RD / 3 RD -IO conjugation	4 TH conjugation

CONNECTOR VOWELS

(Also called stem vowels)



Vowels attached to the **stems** of verbs before adding endings.

Different conjugations use different connector vowels, as shown by the charts below.

3RD / 3RD -IO

() → something extra appears in 3rd -IO in addition to what appears in 3rd conjugation.

These charts are meant to convey dominant patterns, but some verb endings do deviate from them (e.g. no "i" appears in the 3rd conjugation present form *regunt*).

It is important to examine all verb forms carefully, and exceptions to these charts are pointed out on the relevant pages.

PRESENT CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1 2	
3 4	
i	i

IMPERFECT CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1 2	
3 4	
(i)e	ie

3rd → "e"
3rd -IO → "ie"

FUTURE CONNECTOR & ENDINGS

ābō	ēbō
1 2	
3 4	
(i)am	iam

3rd → "am, ēs, et. . ."
3rd -IO → "iam, iēs, iet. . ."

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

āre	ēre
1 2	
3 4	
ere	īre

PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

ārī	ērī
1 2	
3 4	
ī	īrī

PRESENT PARTICIPLE CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1 2	
3 4	
(i)e	ie

GERUND(IVE) CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1 2	
3 4	
(i)e	ie

ACTIVE IMPERATIVE ENDINGS

ā	ē
1 2	
3 4	
āte	ēte
e	ī
ite	īte

PASSIVE IMPERATIVE ENDINGS

āre	ēre
1 2	
3 4	
āminī	ēminī
ere	īre
iminī	īminī

VOICE

ACTIVE VS. PASSIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

Role of the Subject:



Performs action.

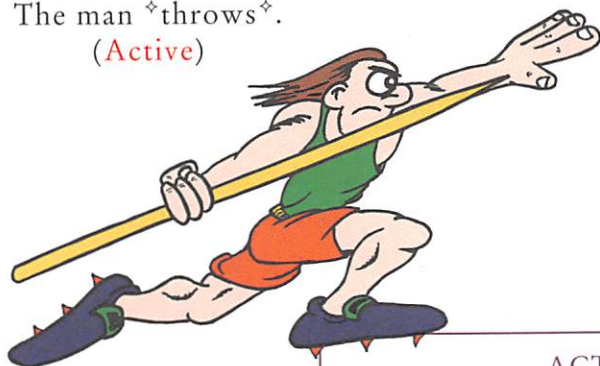
ENDINGS:

-o, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt

Vir iacit.

The man [♦]throws[♦].

(Active)



PASSIVE VOICE

Role of the Subject:



Receives action.

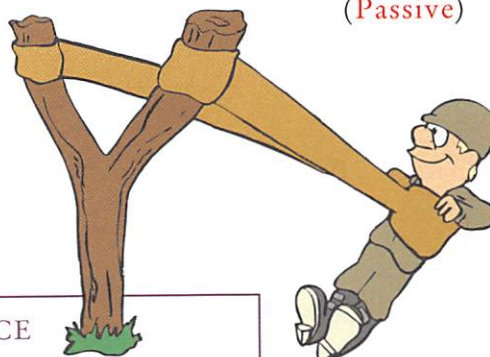
ENDINGS:

-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur

Vir iacitur.

The man [♦]is thrown[♦].

(Passive)



ACTIVE VOICE

Present: I verb, am verbing, do verb

Imperfect: I was verbing, kept verbing, used to verb

Future: I will verb

Perfect: I verbed, have verbed, did verb

Pluperfect: I had verbed

Future Perfect: I will have verbed

PASSIVE VOICE

Present: I am verbed, am being verbed

Imperfect: I was being verbed, kept being verbed, used to be verbed

Future: I will be verbed

Perfect: I was verbed, have been verbed

Pluperfect: I had been verbed

Future Perfect: I will have been verbed



SYSTEMS OF TENSES: MEANINGS



PRESENT SYSTEM

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Action happens **now**,
in the present time.

ACTIVE

rogat



"asks"

"**AM/IS/ARE** asking"
"**DO/DOES** ask"

Strēnuē lūdīmus.
✧We play✧ energetically.

SHE IS PREPARING



No extra "helping" verb is
needed in Latin!

parat

~~EST
parat~~



PASSIVE

rogātur



"**AM/IS/ARE** asked"
"**AM/IS/ARE**
being asked"

Ā vōbis laudāmur.
✧We are praised✧ by you (pl.).

ACTIVE

rogābat



"**WAS/WERE** asking"
"**USED TO** ask"
"**KEPT** asking"

Celeriter currēbam.
✧I **was** running✧ quickly.
(Ongoing)

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

Action happened in the **past**
and was **ongoing** or **repeated**.



PASSIVE

rogābātur



"**WAS/WERE** being asked"
"**USED TO** be asked"
"**KEPT** being asked"

Nōmen meum clāmābātur.
My name ✧**kept** being shouted✧.
(Repeated/Ongoing)

ACTIVE

rogābit



"**WILL** ask"

superābō / vincam
✧I will win✧
(1st & 3rd Conjugation)

FUTURE INDICATIVE

Action will happen
in the **future**.

2 SETS OF ENDINGS

1st & 2nd Conj.

bō, bis, bit. . .

3rd & 4th Conj.

am, ēs, et. . .

PASSIVE

rogābitur



"**WILL** be asked"

superābor / vincar
✧I will be conquered✧
(1st & 3rd Conjugation)



SYSTEMS OF TENSES: MEANINGS



PERFECT SYSTEM

ACTIVE
rogāvit
↓
“askED”
“HAS/HAVE asked”
“DID ask”

PERFECT INDICATIVE
Action happened in the **past**,
and is seen as **completed**.

Herī māchinam Stēllam appellāvī.
Yesterday *I named* my machine Stella.

PASSIVE
rogātus est
↓
“WAS/WERE asked”
“HAS/HAVE been asked”

Action was completed (not ongoing as in the imperfect).

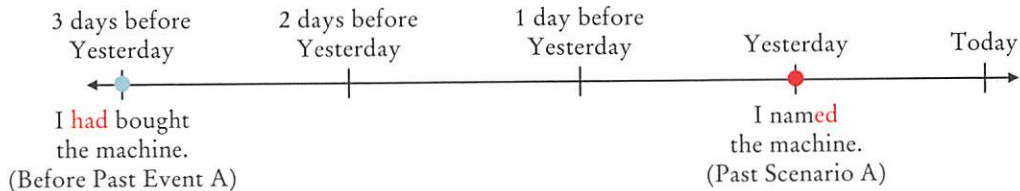
PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

Action happened in the **past**
before some other past scenario.

ACTIVE
rogāverat
↓
“HAD asked”

Māchinam tribus ante diēbus ēmeram.
I had bought the machine three days earlier.

PASSIVE
rogātus erat
↓
“HAD been asked”



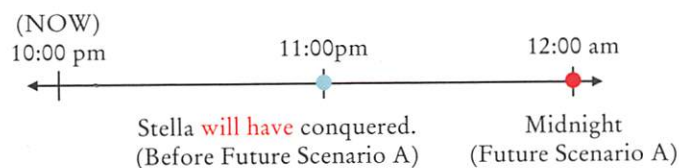
FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

Action will be completed in the **future**
before some other future scenario.

ACTIVE
rogāverit
↓
“WILL HAVE asked”

Stēlla ante mediam noctem mē vicerit.
Stella *will have conquered* me before midnight.

PASSIVE
rogātus erit
↓
“WILL HAVE been asked”



PRESENT TENSE

ACTIVE
(2nd)

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

-Ō
-S
-T
-MUS
-TIS
-NT

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

↓
Present Stem
+
Connector Vowel
+
Endings

↓
“*verbs*”
“*is verb*ing”
“*does verb*”

verbs,
is *verb*ing,
does *verb*

PRESENT CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1	2
3	4
i	i

Note exceptions to
vowel pattern
in chart below.

Note that the 1st & 3rd
conjugations do not have a
connector vowel before -ō
in the 1st person singular.

Note other important
vowel behavior highlighted
in red below.



Fulmina parās.

“You prepare” thunderbolts.

PRESENT STEM

Use
2nd principal part.
↓
Cut off -ŌRE.

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.	Translation
rogō	doceō	mittō	capiō	audiō	I <i>verb</i> , am <i>verb</i> ing, do <i>verb</i>
rogās	docēs	mittis	capis	audīs	You <i>verb</i> , are <i>verb</i> ing, do <i>verb</i>
rogat	docet	mittit	capit	audit	He/She/It <i>verbs</i> , is <i>verb</i> ing, does <i>verb</i>
rogāmus	docēmus	mittimus	capimus	audīmus	We <i>verb</i> , are <i>verb</i> ing, do <i>verb</i>
rogātis	docētis	mittitis	capitis	audītis	You (pl.) <i>verb</i> , are <i>verb</i> ing, do <i>verb</i>
rogant	docent	mittunt	capiunt	audiunt	They <i>verb</i> , are <i>verb</i> ing do <i>verb</i>

PRESENT TENSE

PASSIVE
(2nd)

PRESENT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

-OR
-RIS
-TUR
-MUR
-MINĪ
-NTUR

PRESENT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

↓
Present Stem
+
Connector Vowel
+
Endings
“is verbed”
“is being verbed”

is verbed,
is being
verbed

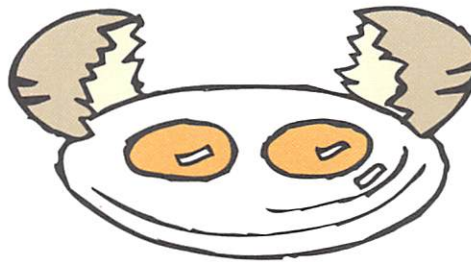
PRESENT CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1	2
3	4
i	i

Note exceptions to
vowel pattern
in chart below.

Note that the 1st & 3rd
conjugations do not have a
connector vowel before -or
in the 1st person singular.

Note other important
vowel behavior highlighted
in red below.



Ientāculum parātur.
Breakfast *is being prepared*.

PRESENT STEM

Use
2nd principal part.
↓
Cut off -◇RE.

PRESENT PASSIVE INDICATIVE					
1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.	Translation
rogor	doceor	mittor	capior	audior	I am <u>verbed</u> I am being <u>verbed</u>
rogāris	docēris	mitteris	caperis	audīris	You are <u>verbed</u> You are being <u>verbed</u>
rogātur	docētur	mittitur	capitur	audītur	He/She/It is <u>verbed</u> He/She/It is being <u>verbed</u>
rogāmur	docēmur	mittimur	capimur	audīmur	We are <u>verbed</u> We are being <u>verbed</u>
rogāminī	docēminī	mittiminī	capiminī	audīminī	You (pl.) are <u>verbed</u> You (pl.) are being <u>verbed</u>
rogantur	docentur	mittuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur	They are <u>verbed</u> They are being <u>verbed</u>

IMPERFECT TENSE

ACTIVE
(2nd)

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

-BAM
-BĀS
-BAT
-BĀMUS
-BĀTIS
-BANT

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

↓
Present Stem
+
Connector Vowel
+
Endings

"was verbing"
"used to verb"
"kept verbing"

was verbing,
used to verb,
kept verbing

IMPERFECT CONNECTOR VOWELS

a		e
	1 2	
(i)e	3 4	ie

In sellā **sedēbat**.
*She **was sitting** in the chair.



PRESENT STEM

Use
2nd principal part.
↓
Cut off -◇RE.

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.	Translation
rogābam	docēbam	mittēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam	I was/kept <u>verb</u> ing I used to <u>verb</u>
rogābās	docēbās	mittēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās	You were/kept <u>verb</u> ing You used to <u>verb</u>
rogābat	docēbat	mittēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat	He/She/It was/kept <u>verb</u> ing He/She/It used to <u>verb</u>
rogābāmus	docēbāmus	mittēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus	We were/kept <u>verb</u> ing We used to <u>verb</u>
rogābātis	docēbātis	mittēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis	You (pl.) were/kept <u>verb</u> ing You (pl.) used to <u>verb</u>
rogābant	docēbant	mittēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant	They were/kept <u>verb</u> ing They used to <u>verb</u>

IMPERFECT TENSE

PASSIVE
(2nd)

IMPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

-BAR
-BĀRIS
-BĀTUR
-BĀMUR
-BĀMINĪ
-BANTUR

IMPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

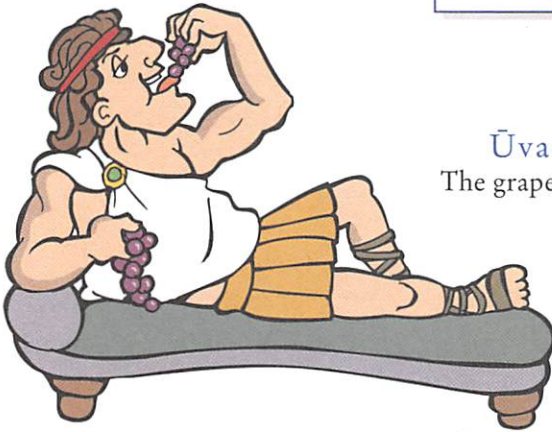
↓
Present Stem
+
Connector Vowel
+
Endings

“was being verbed”
“used to be verbed”
“kept being verbed”

was being,
used to be,
kept being
verbed

IMPERFECT CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1	2
3	4
(i)e	ie



Ūvae dēvorābantur.
The grapes [◊]were being devoured[◊].

PRESENT STEM

Use
2nd principal part.
↓
Cut off -◊RE.

IMPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.	Translation
rogābar	docēbar	mittēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar	I was/kept being <u>verbed</u> I used to be <u>verbed</u>
rogābāris	docēbāris	mittēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris	You were/kept being <u>verbed</u> You used to be <u>verbed</u>
rogābātur	docēbātur	mittēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur	He/She/It was/kept being <u>verbed</u> He/She/It used to be <u>verbed</u>
rogābāmur	docēbāmur	mittēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur	We were/kept being <u>verbed</u> We used to be <u>verbed</u>
rogābāminī	docēbāminī	mittēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī	You (pl.) were/kept being <u>verbed</u> You (pl.) used to be <u>verbed</u>
rogābantur	docēbantur	mittēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur	They were/kept being <u>verbed</u> They used to be <u>verbed</u>

FUTURE TENSE

ACTIVE
(2nd)

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

1 ST & 2 ND	3 RD & 4 TH
-BŌ	-AM
-BIS	-ĒS
-BIT	-ET
-BIMUS	-ĒMUS
-BITIS	-ĒTIS
-BUNT	-ENT



Cēnābis bene!
*You **will** dine* well!

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

↓
Present Stem
+
Connector Vowel
+
Endings
“will verb”

will verb

FUTURE CONNECTOR & ENDINGS

ābō	ēbō
1 2	1 2
3 4	3 4
(i)am	iam

PRESENT STEM

Use
2nd principal part.
↓
Cut off -◇RE.



Canis cibum **quaeret**.
The dog *will seek* food.

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.	Translation
rogābō	docēbō	mittam	capiam	audiam	I shall (will) <u>verb</u>
rogābis	docēbis	mittēs	capiēs	audiēs	You will <u>verb</u>
rogābit	docēbit	mittet	capiet	audiet	He/She/It will <u>verb</u>
rogābimus	docēbimus	mittēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus	We shall (will) <u>verb</u>
rogābitis	docēbitis	mittētis	capiētis	audiētis	You (pl.) will <u>verb</u>
rogābunt	docēbunt	mittent	capient	audient	They will <u>verb</u>

FUTURE TENSE

PASSIVE
(2nd)

FUTURE PASSIVE INDICATIVE

1 ST & 2 ND	3 RD & 4 TH
-BOR	-AR
-BERIS	-ĒRIS
-BITUR	-ĒTUR
-BIMUR	-ĒMUR
-BIMINĪ	-ĒMINĪ
-BUNTUR	-ENTUR

~~IRIS
INT~~



FUTURE PASSIVE INDICATIVE

↓
Present Stem
+
Connector Vowel
+
Endings
“will be verbed”

will
be verbed

FUTURE CONNECTOR & ENDINGS

ābor	ēbor
1 2	1 2
3 4	3 4
(i)ar	iar

Ā multīs spectābitur.
He will be watched by many.

PRESENT STEM

Use
2nd principal part.
↓
Cut off -◇RE.

Notable 3rd Conj.
Long Marks:

mitteris	mittēris
↓	↓
present	future

Ā tē nōn cōspiciētur.
He will not be seen by you.

FUTURE PASSIVE INDICATIVE

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.	Translation
rogābor	docēbor	mittar	capiar	audiar	I shall (will) be <u>verbed</u>
rogāberis	docēberis	mittēris	capiēris	audiēris	You will be <u>verbed</u>
rogābitur	docēbitur	mittētur	capiētur	audiētur	He/She/It will be <u>verbed</u>
rogābimur	docēbimur	mittēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur	We shall (will) be <u>verbed</u>
rogābiminī	docēbiminī	mittēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī	You (pl.) will be <u>verbed</u>
rogābuntur	docēbuntur	mittentur	capientur	audientur	They will be <u>verbed</u>

PERFECT TENSE

ACTIVE
(3rd)

PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

-Ī
-ISTĪ
-IT
-IMUS
-ISTIS
-ĒRUNT

PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

Perfect Stem

+

Endings

↓

"verbed"
"has verbed"
"did verb"

verbed,
has verbed,
did verb

PERFECT STEM

Use

3rd principal part.

↓

Cut off -Ī.

Deī ālās Pēgasō dedērunt.
The gods ♦grant♦ wings to Pegasus.



PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE		
1st Sing.	rogāvī	I asked, have asked, did ask
2nd Sing.	rogāvistī	You asked, have asked, did ask
3rd Sing.	rogāvit	He/She/It asked, has asked, did ask
1st Pl.	rogāvimus	We asked, have asked, did ask
2nd Pl.	rogāvistis	You (pl.) asked, have asked, did ask
3rd Pl.	rogāvērunt	They asked, have asked, did ask

PERFECT TENSE

PASSIVE
(4th)

PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

... + SUM
... + ES
... + EST
... + SUMUS
... + ESTIS
... + SUNT

PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

4th Principal Part
with

Nominative Ending

+

Present of sum

↓

"was verbed"
"has been verbed"

was verbed,
has been
verbed

Nominative ending
agrees with subject.

	M.	F.	N.
Sing.	-us	-a	-um
Pl.	-ī	-ae	-a

When sum, es, est, etc.
stand **alone**, they are the
present forms of sum.

↓
sum = I **am**

When sum, es, est, etc. are
attached to a 4th principal part,
they form the perfect passive
of the verb to which they are joined.

↓
rogātus sum = I **was** asked

Librī scriptī sunt.

Books **were** written.
(Masculine plural subject)

Epistolae scriptae sunt.

Letters **were** written.
(Feminine plural subject)

Verba scripta sunt.

Words **were** written.
(Neuter plural subject)



PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE			
1st Sing.	rogātus sum	I was asked, have been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum sum]
2nd Sing.	rogātus es	You were asked, have been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum es]
3rd Sing.	rogātus est	He/She/It was asked, has been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum est]
1st Pl.	rogātī sumus	We were asked, have been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta sumus]
2nd Pl.	rogātī estis	You (pl.) were asked, have been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta estis]
3rd Pl.	rogātī sunt	They were asked, have been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta sunt]

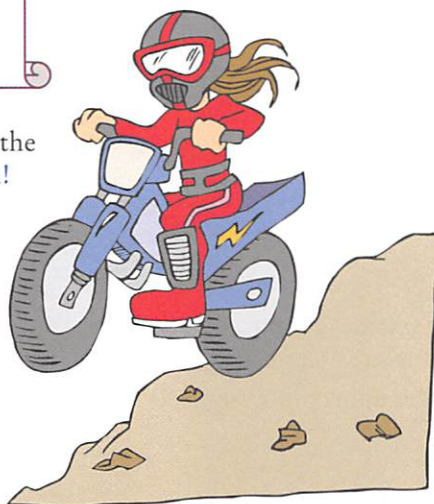
PLUPERFECT TENSE

ACTIVE
(3rd)

PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

-ERAM
-ERĀS
-ERAT
-ERĀMUS
-ERĀTIS
-ERANT

Looks exactly like the
imperfect of sum!



Ad urbem properāvī, sed iam discesserās.
I hurried to the city, but *you had left* already.

PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

Perfect Stem

+

Endings

↓

"had verbed"

had
verbed

PERFECT STEM

Use

3rd principal part.

↓

Cut off -Ī.

When eram, erās, erat, etc.
stand **alone**, they are the
imperfect forms of sum.

↓

eram = I was

When eram, erās, erat, etc. are
attached to a 3rd principal part,
they form the pluperfect active
of the verb to which they are joined.

↓

rogāveram = I **had** asked

PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

1st Sing.	rogā veram	I had asked
2nd Sing.	rogā verās	You had asked
3rd Sing.	rogā verat	He/She/It had asked
1st Pl.	rogā verāmus	We had asked
2nd Pl.	rogā verātis	You (pl.) had asked
3rd Pl.	rogā verant	They had asked

PLUPERFECT TENSE

PASSIVE
(4th)

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

... + ERAM
... + ERĀS
... + ERAT
... + ERĀMUS
... + ERĀTIS
... + ERANT

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

4th Principal Part
+
Nominative Ending
+
Imperfect of sum
↓
"had been verbed"

had been
verbed

Nominative ending
agrees with subject.

	M.	F.	N.
Sing.	-us	-a	-um
Pl.	-ī	-ae	-a

When *eram*, *erās*, *erat*, etc.
stand **alone**, they are the
imperfect forms of *sum*.

eram = I **was**

When *eram*, *erās*, *erat*, etc. are
attached to a 4th principal part,
they form the pluperfect passive
of the verb to which they are joined.

rogātus eram = I **had been** asked

Mīles victus erat.

The soldier **had been** conquered.
(Masculine singular subject)

Patria victa erat.

The fatherland **had been** conquered.
(Feminine singular subject)

Oppidum victum erat.

The town **had been** conquered.
(Neuter singular subject)



PLUPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

1st Sing.	rogātus eram	I had been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum eram]
2nd Sing.	rogātus erās	You had been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum erās]
3rd Sing.	rogātus erat	He/She/It had been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum erat]
1st Pl.	rogātī erāmus	We had been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta erāmus]
2nd Pl.	rogātī erātis	You (pl.) had been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta erātis]
3rd Pl.	rogātī erant	They had been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta erant]

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

ACTIVE
(3rd)

FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

-ERŌ
-ERIS
-ERIT
-ERIMUS
-ERITIS
-ERINT

Almost like the **future** of **sum**!
(Future of **sum** has **erunt**).



Castra ante noctem **mūnīverimus**.
*We **will have** fortified* our camp before night.

FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

Perfect Stem

+

Endings

↓

"will have **verbed**"

will have
verbed

PERFECT STEM

Use

3rd principal part.

↓

Cut off -Ī.

When **erō**, **eris**, **erit**, etc.
stand **alone**, they are the
future forms of **sum**.

↓

erō = I **will be**

When **erō**, **eris**, **erit**, etc. are
attached to a 3rd principal part,
they form the future perfect active
of the verb to which they are joined.

↓

rogāverō = I **will have** asked

FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

1st Sing.	rogāverō	I shall (will) have asked
2nd Sing.	rogāveris	You will have asked
3rd Sing.	rogāverit	He/She/It will have asked
1st Pl.	rogāverimus	We shall (will) have asked
2nd Pl.	rogāveritis	You (pl.) will have asked
3rd Pl.	rogāverint	They will have asked

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

PASSIVE
(4th)

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

... + ERŌ
... + ERIS
... + ERIT
... + ERIMUS
... + ERITIS
... + ERUNT

Active uses -erint.
Passive uses -erunt.

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

4th Principal Part

+

Nominative Ending

+

Future of sum

↓

"will have been verbed"

will have
verbed

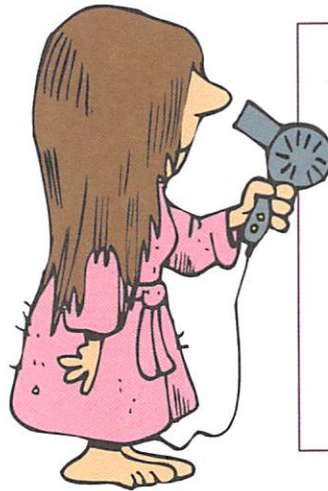
Nominative ending
agrees with subject.

	M.	F.	N.
Sing.	-us	-a	-um
Pl.	-ī	-ae	-a

Vestēs indūtae erunt.
Clothes *will have been put on*.
(Feminine plural subject)

Coma composita erit.
Her hair *will have been arranged*.
(Feminine singular subject)

Multa facta erunt.
Many things *will have been done*.
(Neuter plural subject)



When erō, eris, erit, etc.
stand **alone**, they are the
future forms of sum.

↓
erō = I **will be**

When erō, eris, erit, etc. are
attached to a 4th principal part,
they form the future perfect passive
of the verb to which they are joined.

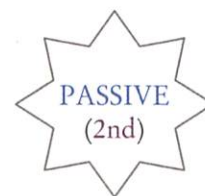
↓
rogātus erō = I **will have been** asked

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

1st Sing.	rogātus erō	I shall (will) have been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum erō]
2nd Sing.	rogātus eris	You will have been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum eris]
3rd Sing.	rogātus erit	He/She/It will have been asked	[rogātus/rogāta/rogātum erit]
1st Pl.	rogātī erimus	We shall (will) have been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta erimus]
2nd Pl.	rogātī eritis	You (pl.) will have been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta eritis]
3rd Pl.	rogātī erunt	They will have been asked	[rogātī/rogātae/rogāta erunt]



SYSTEMS OF TENSES: FORMS



PRESENT SYSTEM



PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES

Present Stem
+
Connector Vowel
+
Endings

PRESENT STEM

ROGĀRE

↓
rog-

CONNECTOR VOWELS

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
a e	a e	ābō ēbō
1 2	1 2	1 2
3 4	3 4	3 4
i i	(i)e ie	(i)am iam

PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES (ACTIVE/PASSIVE) (3rd person singular form for each conjugation)

	Present		Imperfect		Future	
1st	rogat	rogātur	rogābat	rogābātur	rogābit	rogābitur
2nd	docet	docētur	docēbat	docēbātur	docēbit	docēbitur
3rd	mittit	mittitur	mittēbat	mittēbātur	mittet	mittētur
3rd -IO	capit	capitur	capiēbat	capiēbātur	capiet	capiētur
4th	audit	audītur	audiēbat	audiēbātur	audiet	audiētur

PRESENT (All Verbs)

Active	Passive
-ō	-r
-s	-ris
-t	-tur
-mus	-mur
-tis	-minī
-nt	-ntur

IMPERFECT (All Verbs)

Active	Passive
-bam	-bar
-bās	-bāris
-bat	-bātur
-bāmus	-bāmur
-bātis	-bāminī
-bant	-bantur

FUTURE (1st & 2nd Conj.)

Active	Passive
-bō	-bor
-bis	-beris
-bit	-bitur
-bimus	-bimur
-bitis	-biminī
-bunt	-buntur

FUTURE (3rd & 4th Conj.)

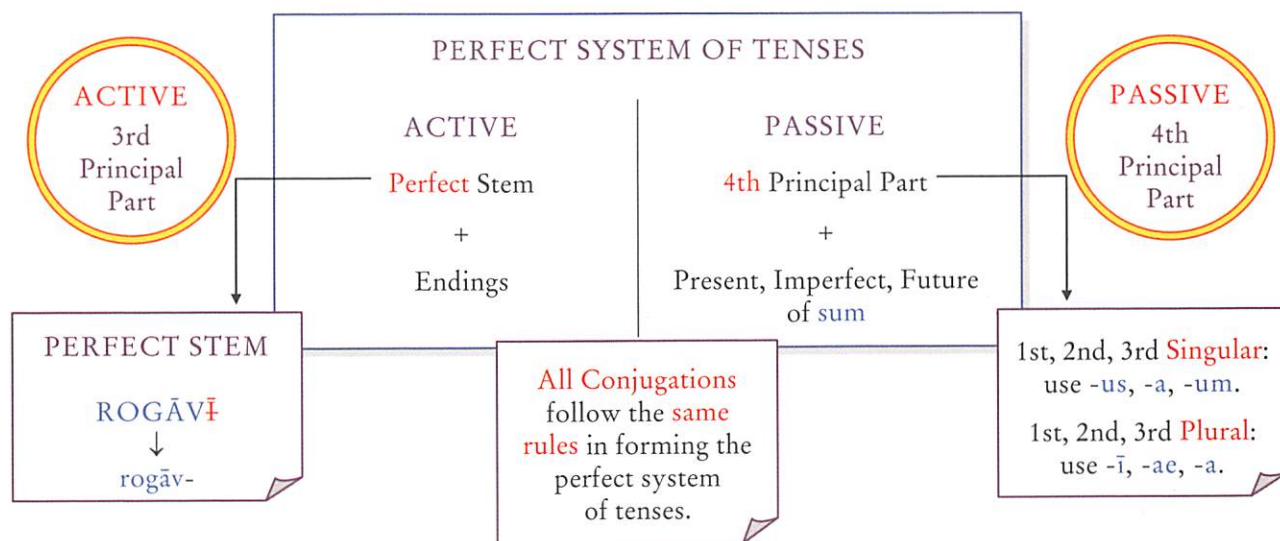
Active	Passive
-am	-ar
-ēs	-ēris
-et	-ētur
-ēmus	-ēmur
-ētis	-ēminī
-ent	-entur



SYSTEMS OF TENSES: FORMS



PERFECT SYSTEM



PERFECT SYSTEM OF TENSES (ACTIVE/PASSIVE)					
Perfect		Pluperfect		Future Perfect	
rogāvī	rogātus sum	rogāveram	rogātus eram	rogāverō	rogātus erō
rogāvistī	rogātus es	rogāverās	rogātus erās	rogāveris	rogātus eris
rogāvit	rogātus est	rogāverat	rogātus erat	rogāverit	rogātus erit
rogāvimus	rogātī sumus	rogāverāmus	rogātī erāmus	rogāverimus	rogātī erimus
rogāvistis	rogātī estis	rogāverātis	rogātī erātis	rogāveritis	rogātī eritis
rogāvērunt	rogātī sunt	rogāverant	rogātī erant	rogāverint	rogātī erunt

PERFECT (All Verbs)	
Active	Passive
-ī	... sum
-istī	... es
-it	... est
-imus	... sumus
-istis	... estis
-ērunt	... sunt

PLUPERFECT (All Verbs)	
Active	Passive
-eram	... eram
-erās	... erās
-erat	... erat
-erāmus	... erāmus
-erātis	... erātis
-erant	... erant

FUTURE PERFECT (All Verbs)	
Active	Passive
-erō	... erō
-eris	... eris
-erit	... erit
-erimus	... erimus
-eritis	... eritis
-erint	... erunt

FIRST CONJUGATION

-ĀRE

-Ō
-ĀRE
-ĀVI
-ĀTUS

PRESENT STEM

2nd Principal Part,
cut off -ĀRE.

FIRST CONJUGATION

Typical Principal Parts:

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus (to ask)

Some important unusual verbs exist:

dō, dare, dedī, datus (to give)

stō, stāre, stetī, stātus (to stand)

Present System:

Present Stem + Connector Vowel + Endings

Perfect System:

Active: Perfect Stem + Endings

Passive: 4th Principal Part + Endings



Dōnum dabis.

✧You will give✧ a gift.

PERFECT STEM

3rd Principal Part,
cut off -Ī.

PRESENT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

PRESENT ↓ -A-	IMPERFECT ↓ -A- + BA	FUTURE ↓ -A- + BI	INFINITIVE rogāre IMPERATIVE rogā rogāte
rogō	rogābam	rogābō	
rogās	rogābās	rogābis	
rogat	rogābat	rogābit	
rogāmus	rogābāmus	rogābimus	
rogātis	rogābātis	rogābitis	
rogant	rogābant	rogābunt	

Dominant
Vowel:

A

PRESENT PASSIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

PRESENT ↓ -A-	IMPERFECT ↓ -A- + BA	FUTURE ↓ -A- + BI	INFINITIVE rogārī IMPERATIVE rogāre rogāminī
rogor	rogābar	rogābor	
rogāris	rogābāris	rogāberis	
rogātur	rogābātur	rogābitur	
rogāmur	rogābāmur	rogābimur	
rogāminī	rogābāminī	rogābiminī	
rogantur	rogābantur	rogābuntur	

SECOND CONJUGATION

-ĒRE

-EŌ
-ĒRE
-UĪ
-TUS/-ITUS

SECOND CONJUGATION

Typical Principal Parts:

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus (to teach)
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (to have)

Some important unusual verbs exist:

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus (to stay)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (to see)

Present System:

Present Stem + Connector Vowel + Endings

Perfect System:

Active: Perfect Stem + Endings
Passive: 4th Principal Part + Endings



Multās artēs habēs.

✧You have✧ many skills.

PRESENT STEM

2nd Principal Part,
cut off -ĒRE.

PERFECT STEM

3rd Principal Part,
cut off -Ī.

PRESENT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

PRESENT ↓ -E-	IMPERFECT ↓ -E- + BA	FUTURE ↓ -E- + BI	INFINITIVE docēre
doceō	docēbam	docēbō	
docēs	docēbās	docēbis	IMPERATIVE docē docēte
docet	docēbat	docēbit	
docēmus	docēbāmus	docēbimus	
docētis	docēbātis	docēbitis	
docent	docēbant	docēbunt	

Dominant
Vowel:
E

PRESENT PASSIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

PRESENT ↓ -E-	IMPERFECT ↓ -E- + BA	FUTURE ↓ -E- + BI	INFINITIVE docērī
doceor	docēbar	docēbor	
docēris	docēbāris	docēberis	IMPERATIVE docēre docēminī
docētur	docēbātur	docēbitur	
docēmur	docēbāmur	docēbimur	
docēminī	docēbāminī	docēbiminī	
docentur	docēbantur	docēbuntur	

THIRD CONJUGATION

-ERE

-Ō
-ERE

THIRD CONJUGATION

No "Typical" Verbs!
Memorize all principal parts carefully.
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (to lead)
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus (to send)
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (to believe)

Present System:

Present Stem + Connector Vowel + Endings

Perfect System:

Active: Perfect Stem + Endings

Passive: 4th Principal Part + Endings



Fulmen mittis.

✧You send✧ a thunderbolt.

PRESENT STEM

2nd Principal Part,
cut off -ERE.

PERFECT STEM

3rd Principal Part,
cut off -Ī.

PRESENT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

Dominant
Vowel:
I/E

INT
↓
UNT

PRESENT ↓ -I-	IMPERFECT ↓ -E- + BA	FUTURE ↓ AM, ĒS, ET	
mittō	mittēbam	mittam	INFINITIVE mittere
mittis	mittēbās	mittēs	
mittit	mittēbat	mittet	IMPERATIVE mitte mittite
mittimus	mittēbāmus	mittēmus	
mittitis	mittēbātis	mittētis	
mittunt	mittēbant	mittent	

BO
BIS
BIT

PRESENT PASSIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

IRIS
↓
ERIS

INT
↓
UNT

PRESENT ↓ -I-	IMPERFECT ↓ -E- + BA	FUTURE ↓ AR, ĒRIS, ĒTUR	
mittor	mittēbar	mittar	INFINITIVE mittī
mitteris	mittēbāris	mittēris	
mittitur	mittēbātur	mittētur	IMPERATIVE mittere mittiminī
mittimur	mittēbāmur	mittēmur	
mittiminī	mittēbāminī	mittēminī	
mittuntur	mittēbantur	mittentur	

THIRD CONJUGATION

-ERE

SIMILAR-LOOKING THIRD CONJUGATION FORMS

PRESENT VS. FUTURE

Present: I + endings

Future: E + endings

mittit

He/She/It sends

mittet

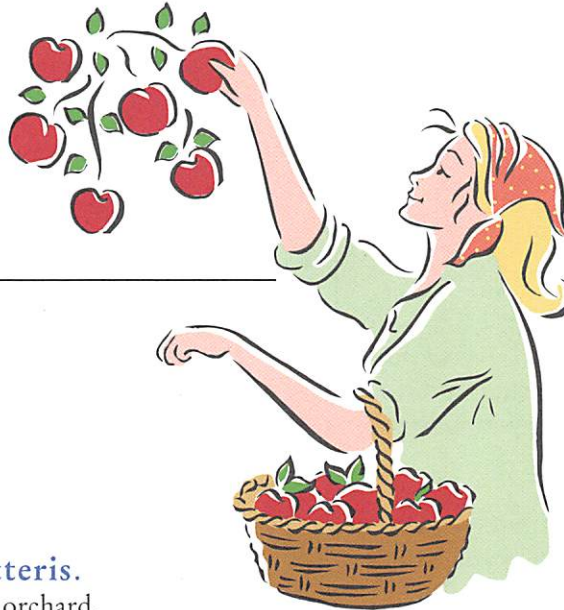
He/She/It will send

Fīliam in pōmārium mittit.

✧She **sends**✧ her daughter into the orchard.

Fīliam in pōmārium mittet.

✧She **will send**✧ her daughter into the orchard.



In pōmārium mitteris.

✧You **are sent**✧ into the orchard.

In pōmārium mittēris.

✧You **will be sent**✧ into the orchard.

PRESENT VS. FUTURE PASSIVE

The usual "i" changes to an "e" in the 2nd person singular present passive, making it similar to the future tense:

Present: -ERIS

Future: -ĒRIS

mitteris

You are sent

mittēris

You will be sent

THIRD CONJUGATION



SECOND CONJUGATION VS. THIRD CONJUGATION

INFINITIVES

The 2nd and 3rd conjugations have very similar infinitives:

2nd Conjugation

docēre

long mark

3rd Conjugation

mittere

no long mark

TENSE FORMS WITH "E"

Both 2nd and 3rd conjugation have tenses that use e + ending:

2nd Conjugation

docēs
"you teach"

-e-

↓
PRESENT tense
(Future is docēbit.)

3rd Conjugation

mittēs
"you will send"

-e-

↓
FUTURE tense
(Present is mittit.)

WHAT TENSE IS INDICATED BY
-ĒS, -ET, -ĒMUS, etc.?

↓
What conjugation is the verb?

2nd Principal
Part: -ēre

↓
2nd Conjugation

↓
E indicates
Present Tense.

2nd Principal
Part: -ere

↓
3rd Conjugation

↓
E indicates
Future Tense.

Flōrēs in manibus **tenēs**.

✧You **hold**✧ flowers in your hands.
(teneō, **tenēre**, tenuī, tentus)

Flōrēs ex terrā **crēscent**.

Flowers ✧**will grow**✧ out of the ground.
(crēscō, **crēscere**, crēvī, crētus)

Flōrēs in crīnibus **geris**.

✧You **wear**✧ flowers in your hair.
(gerō, **gerere**, gessī, gestus)



THIRD -IO CONJUGATION

-IŌ,
-ERE

-IŌ,
-ERE

THIRD -IO CONJUGATION

No "Typical" Verbs!
Memorize all principal parts carefully.
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (to take, seize)
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus (to flee, flee from)

Present System:

Present Stem + Connector Vowel + Endings

Perfect System:

Active: Perfect Stem + Endings
Passive: 4th Principal Part + Endings

3rd -IO endings have some **extra** i's that do not appear in the 3rd Conjugation.



Ab Sextō fugiēmus.

✧ We will flee ✧ from Sextus.

PRESENT STEM

2nd Principal Part,
cut off -ERE.

PERFECT STEM

3rd Principal Part,
cut off -Ī.

PRESENT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

Dominant
Vowel:
I/IE

PRESENT ↓ -I-	IMPERFECT ↓ -IE- + BA	FUTURE ↓ -I- + AM, ĒS, ET	
capiō	capiēbam	capiam	INFINITIVE capere*
capis	capiēbās	capies	
capit	capiēbat	capiet	IMPERATIVE cape* capite
capimus	capiēbāmus	capiemus	
capitis	capiēbātis	capietis	
capiunt	capiēbant	capient	

**BO
BIS
BIT**

INT
↓
IUNT

PRESENT PASSIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

IRIS
↓
ERIS

PRESENT ↓ -I-	IMPERFECT ↓ -IE- + BA	FUTURE ↓ -I- + AR, ĒRIS, ĒTUR	
capior	capiēbar	capiar	INFINITIVE capī
caperis*	capiēbāris	capieris	
capitur	capiēbātur	capietur	IMPERATIVE capere* capiminī
capimur	capiēbāmur	capiemur	
capiminī	capiēbāminī	capieminī	
capiuntur	capiēbantur	capientur	

* There are only four 3rd -IO forms that do **not** add an "i" to the present stem.

INT
↓
IUNT

FOURTH CONJUGATION

-IRE

-IŌ
-IRE
-IVI
-ITUS

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Typical Principal Parts:
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (to hear)

Some important unusual verbs exist:
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus (to come)

Present System:

Present Stem + Connector Vowel + Endings

Perfect System:

Active: Perfect Stem + Endings
Passive: 4th Principal Part + Endings



Audīte, omnēs.

✧Listen,✧ everyone!

PRESENT STEM

2nd Principal Part,
cut off -IRE.

PERFECT STEM

3rd Principal Part,
cut off -I.

PRESENT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

PRESENT ↓ -I-	IMPERFECT ↓ -IE- + BA	FUTURE ↓ -I- + AM, ĒS, ET	
audiō	audiēbam	audiam	INFINITIVE audīre
audīs	audiēbās	audiēs	
audit	audiēbat	audiet	IMPERATIVE audī audīte
audīmus	audiēbāmus	audiēmus	
audītis	audiēbātis	audiētis	
audiunt	audiēbant	audient	

Dominant
Vowel:
I/IE

~~BO
BIS
BIT~~

INT
↓
IUNT

PRESENT PASSIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

PRESENT ↓ -I-	IMPERFECT ↓ -IE- + BA	FUTURE ↓ -I- + AR, ĒRIS, ÊTUR	
audior	audiēbar	audiar	INFINITIVE audīrī
audīris	audiēbāris	audiēris	
audītur	audiēbātur	audiētur	IMPERATIVE audīre audīminī
audīmur	audiēbāmur	audiēmur	
audīminī	audiēbāminī	audiēminī	
audiuntur	audiēbantur	audientur	

ĪRIS
is ok
here

INT
↓
IUNT

4th Conjugation
indicative forms
very closely resemble
3rd -IO forms.
Note the 2nd person
singular passive -īris
(3rd -IO has -eris).

INTRODUCTION TO IRREGULAR VERBS

PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES

In the **present**, **imperfect**, and **future** tenses, irregular verbs conjugate differently from regular verbs.

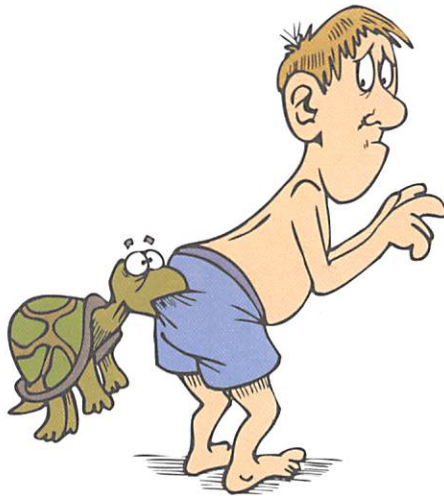
Aqua periculōsa est.
The water *is* dangerous.
(Present)

Hoc animal in aquā erat.
This animal *was* in the water.
(Imperfect)

Hoc animal erit magnum.
This animal *will be* big.
(Future)

Irregular verbs have **unusual principal parts** which must be memorized carefully!

e.g.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (to be)
volō, velle, voluī (to wish)



You can conjugate regular verbs by manipulating the 2nd principal part (e.g. portāre → portābat), but irregular verbs do not function in the same way (e.g. esse vs. erat).

PERFECT SYSTEM OF TENSES

The **perfect**, **pluperfect**, and **future perfect** tenses are formed following the same rules that apply to regular verbs.

ACTIVE

3rd Principal Part
+
Endings

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS
(to bring, bear, endure)

Sometimes the principal parts hardly resemble each other!

PASSIVE

4th Principal Part
+
Endings

Animālia multās hiemēs tulerant.
The animals *had endured* many winters.
(Pluperfect Active)

Ad hunc locum tempestāte lātī erant.
They *had been carried* to this place by a storm.
(Pluperfect Passive)

SUM, ESSE, FUĪ, FUTŪRUS

(TO BE)

ACTIVE INFINITIVE

esse
(to be)

SUM, ESSE, FUĪ, FUTURUS



Present: "am," "is," "are"

Imperfect: "was," "were"

Future: "will be"

ACTIVE IMPERATIVE

es
este
(be!)

SUM, ESSE, FUĪ, FUTŪRUS PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES

Present	Imperfect	Future
sum	eram	erō
es	erās	eris
est	erat	erit
sumus	erāmus	erimus
estis	erātis	eritis
sunt	erant	erunt

SUM, ESSE, FUĪ, FUTŪRUS PERFECT SYSTEM OF TENSES

Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
fuī	fueram	fuerō
fuistī	fuerās	fueris
fuit	fuerat	fuerit
fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus
fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
fuērunt	fuerant	fuerint

Sum cannot be conjugated simply by manipulating the 2nd principal part!

Imperfect & future endings are similar to
-bam, -bās, -bat. . .
&
-bō, -bis, -bit. . .

These forms are **regular**. They use the perfect stem (fu-) and add endings.

Sentences with **sum** often contain **predicate nominatives**.
(See p. 27)

Liberī sunt laetī.
The children are ♦happy♦.



3rd person forms can often be translated as "there is" or "there are," especially when the verb comes before the subject.

Erat rīsus in vultū tuō.
♦There was♦ a smile on your face.

SUM, ESSE, FUĪ, FUTŪRUS

(TO BE)

ALONE AND AS PART OF OTHER VERB FORMS

sum es est sumus estis sunt	→	Alone (est)	3rd Principal Part (not applicable)	4th Principal Part (amātus est)
		Present Active Indicative am, is, are	-----	Perfect Passive Indicative was/has been <u>verbed</u>

eram erās erat erāmus erātis erant	→	Alone (erat)	3rd Principal Part (amāverat)	4th Principal Part (amātus erat)
		Imperfect Active Indicative was, were	Pluperfect Active Indicative had <u>verbed</u>	Pluperfect Passive Indicative had been <u>verbed</u>

erō eris erit erimus eritis erunt	→	Alone (erit)	3rd Principal Part (amāverit)	4th Principal Part (amātus erit)
		Future Active Indicative will be	Future Perfect Active Indicative will have <u>verbed</u> (-erint)	Future Perfect Passive Indicative will have been <u>verbed</u>

sim sīs sit sīmus sītis sint	→	Alone (sit)	3rd Principal Part (not applicable)	4th Principal Part (amātus sit)
		Present Active Subjunctive	-----	Perfect Passive Subjunctive

essem essēs esset essēmus essētis essent	→	Alone (esset)	3rd Principal Part (not applicable)	4th Principal Part (amātus esset)
		Imperfect Active Subjunctive	-----	Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

POSSUM, POSSE, POTUĪ

(TO BE ABLE)

ACTIVE
INFINITIVE

posse
(to be able)

POSSUM, POSSE, POTUĪ



Present: "am/is/are able"
Imperfect: "was/were able"
Future: "will be able"

ACTIVE
IMPERATIVE

-NONE-

POSSUM, POSSE, POTUĪ PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES

Present	Imperfect	Future
possum	poteram	poterō
potes	poterās	poteris
potest	poterat	poterit
possumus	poterāmus	poterimus
potestis	poterātis	poteritis
possunt	poterant	poterunt

POSSUM, POSSE, POTUĪ PERFECT SYSTEM OF TENSES

Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
potuī	potueram	potuerō
potuistī	potuerās	potueris
potuit	potuerat	potuerit
potuimus	potuerāmus	potuerimus
potuistis	potuerātis	potueritis
potuerunt	potuerant	potuerint

The forms of **possum** are based on the forms of **sum**:

Add **pos** when the form of **sum** starts with an "s."

Add **pot** when the form of **sum** starts with an "e."

sum
↓
possum

es
↓
potes



Note the difference between some very similar forms:

Imperfect	Pluperfect
poteram	potueram
Future	Fut. Perfect
poterō	potuerō

Sentences with **possum** usually include **infinitives**.

Saltāre possumus.
We are able ♦to dance♦.

VOLO, NOLO, MALO

(TO WANT, TO NOT WANT, TO PREFER)

ACTIVE INFINITIVE

velle
nolle
malle

VOLO, VELLE, VOLUI
(to wish, want)

NOLO, NOLLE, NOLUI
(to not wish, not want, refuse)
[Combination of **nōn** & volo]

MALO, MALLE, MALUI
(to prefer)
[Combination of **magis** & volo]

ACTIVE IMPERATIVE

noli
nolite
(none for
volo & malo)

NOTE:

"You," "he/she/it,"
and "you (pl.)"
forms are unusual
for all three verbs.

Nolo and malo use
modified versions
of the unusual
volo forms.

VOLO, NOLO, MALO PRESENT TENSE

volō	nolō	mālō
vīs*	nōn vīs*	māvīs*
vult*	nōn vult*	māvult*
volumus	nolumus	mālumus
vultis*	nōn vultis*	māvultis*
volunt	nolunt	mālunt

Imperative of nolo

+
Present **Infinitive**

↓
Do not verb!

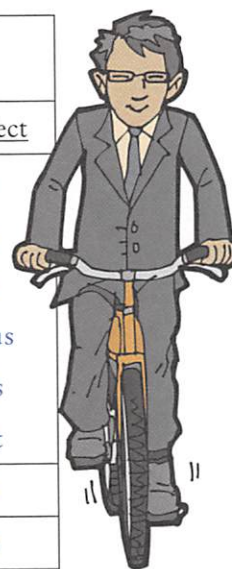
(See p. 198)

Noli desistere.

⚡Do not stop⚡!

VOLO, NOLO, MALO PRESENT & PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
volō	volēbam	volam	voluī	volueram	voluerō
vīs	volēbās	volēs	voluistī	voluerās	volueris
vult	volēbat	volet	voluit	voluerat	voluerit
volumus	volēbāmus	volēmus	voluimus	voluerāmus	voluerimus
vultis	volēbātis	volētis	voluistis	voluerātis	volueritis
volunt	volēbant	volent	voluērunt	voluerant	voluerint
nolō	nolēbam	nolam	noluī	nolueram	noluerō
mālō	mālēbam	mālam	māluī	mālueram	māluerō



EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ OR ĪĪ, ITUS (TO GO)

ACTIVE INFINITIVE

īre
(to go)

EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ OR ĪĪ, ITUS

Present System of Tenses:
Note that all forms start with an "i" except eō and eunt.

Perfect System of Tenses:
Either īvī or īī can be used for the perfect stem.

ACTIVE IMPERATIVE

ī
īte
(go!)

EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ OR ĪĪ, ITUS PRESENT ACTIVE SYSTEM		
Present	Imperfect	Future
eō	ībam	ībō
īs	ībās	ībīs
it	ībat	ībit
īmus	ībāmus	ībimus
ītis	ībātis	ībītis
eunt	ībant	ībunt



Cochlea tertia celeriter **ībat**.
The third snail ♦was going♦ quickly.

EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ OR ĪĪ, ITUS PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM					
Perfect		Pluperfect		Future Perfect	
īvī	īī	īveram	ieram	īverō	ierō
īvistī	īstī*	īverās	ierās	īverīs	ierīs
īvit	īit	īverat	ierat	īverit	ierit
īvimus	īimus	īverāmus	ierāmus	īverimus	ierimus
īvistis	īstis*	īverātis	ierātis	īveritis	ieritis
īvērunt	īērunt	īverant	ierant	īverint	ierint

NOTE:

If īī is used for the perfect stem, forms that start with iis- are condensed to īs-.

īistī → īstī
īistis → īstis

EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ OR ĪĪ, ITUS

(TO GO)

PASSIVE OF EŌ COMPOUNDS

PASSIVE INFINITIVE

īrī

COMPOUNDS OF EŌ

There are a number of **compound** verbs based on **eŌ** that use **passive** forms.

PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

īre
īminī

EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ OR ĪĪ, ITUS PASSIVE VOICE*

Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
eor	ībar	ībor	itus sum	itus eram	itus erō
īris	ībāris	īberis	itus es	itus erās	itus eris
ītur	ībātur	ībitur	itus est	itus erat	itus erit
īmur	ībāmur	ībimur	itī sumus	itī erāmus	itī erimus
īminī	ībāminī	ībiminī	itī estis	itī erātis	itī eritis
euntur	ībantur	ībuntur	itī sunt	itī erant	itī erunt

*Third person forms (such as *ītur*) may appear as impersonal passives (see. p. 265), but passive forms of *eŌ* are generally restricted to compound verbs (e.g. *adīmur*).

SOME EŌ COMPOUNDS THAT MAY APPEAR IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

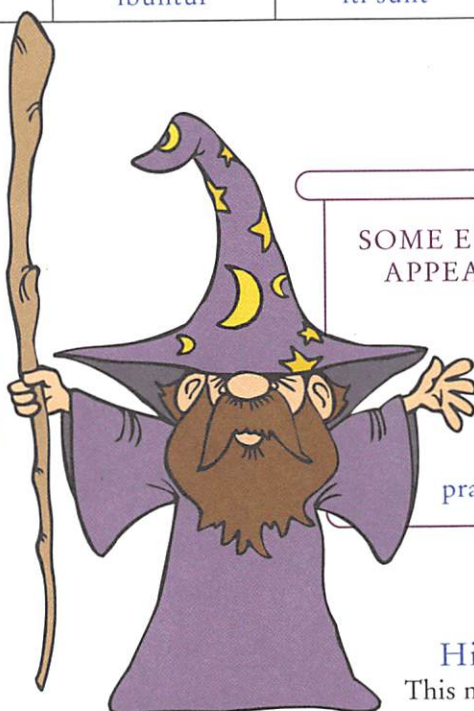
adeŌ - to approach

anteeŌ - to surpass

circumeŌ - to surround

ineŌ - to begin, start

praetereŌ - to leave out, neglect



Hic magus ā nūllō anteībitur.

This magician *will be surpassed* by no one.

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS

(TO BRING, BEAR, ENDURE)

ACTIVE VOICE

ACTIVE INFINITIVE

ferre
(to bring)

ACTIVE VOICE

Ferō looks much like a
3rd conjugation verb.

Present



*Some missing
connector vowels

Imperfect & Future



Same as
3rd Conjugation

ACTIVE IMPERATIVE

fer
ferte
(bring!)

~~FERITE~~

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS PRESENT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

Present	Imperfect	Future
ferō	ferēbam	feram
fers*	ferēbās	ferēs
fert*	ferēbat	feret
ferimus	ferēbāmus	ferēmus
fertis*	ferēbātis	ferētis
ferunt	ferēbant	ferent



Orbem in umerīs tuīs fers.

You bear the world on your shoulders.



Capsulam ad lūdum tulerās.

You had brought your bag to school.

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
tulī	tuleram	tulerō
tulistī	tulerās	tuleris
tulit	tulerat	tulerit
tulimus	tulerāmus	tulerimus
tulistis	tulerātis	tuleritis
tulērunt	tulerant	tulerint

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS

(TO BRING, BEAR, ENDURE)

PASSIVE VOICE

PASSIVE INFINITIVE

ferrī
(to be brought)

PASSIVE VOICE

Ferō looks much like
a 3rd conjugation verb.

Present



*Some missing
connector vowels

Imperfect & Future



Same as
3rd Conjugation

PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

ferre
feriminī
(be brought!)

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS PRESENT PASSIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

Present	Imperfect	Future
feror	ferēbar	ferar
ferris*	ferēbāris	ferēris
fertur*	ferēbātur	ferētur
ferimur	ferēbāmur	ferēmur
feriminī	ferēbāminī	ferēminī
feruntur	ferēbantur	ferentur

NOTE:

Active	Passive
fer-s	fer-ris
fer-t	fer-tur
fer-tis	fer-i-minī



Rānā ā puerō ad lūdum ferētur.
A frog *will be brought* to school by the boy.



Impetus ā tē lātus est.
The attack *was endured* by you.

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM OF TENSES

Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
lātus sum	lātus eram	lātus erō
lātus es	lātus erās	lātus eris
lātus est	lātus erat	lātus erit
lātī sumus	lātī erāmus	lātī erimus
lātī estis	lātī erātis	lātī eritis
lātī sunt	lātī erant	lātī erunt

FĪŌ, FIERĪ, FACTUS SUM

(TO BECOME, BE MADE, HAPPEN)

INFINITIVE

fieri
(to become)

FĪŌ, FIERĪ, FACTUS SUM

FĪŌ is used as the **passive** of faciō.

This verb has active forms in the present system of tenses, but its meaning always expresses the passive of faciō.

Forms resemble a 3rd -IO verb.

IMPERATIVE

fī
fīte
(become!)

Imperative forms of fīŌ are very rare.

FĪŌ, FIERĪ, FACTUS SUM PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES		
Present	Imperfect	Future
fīŌ	fīēbam	fīam
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs
fit	fīēbat	fīet
fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus
fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis
fīunt	fīēbant	fīent

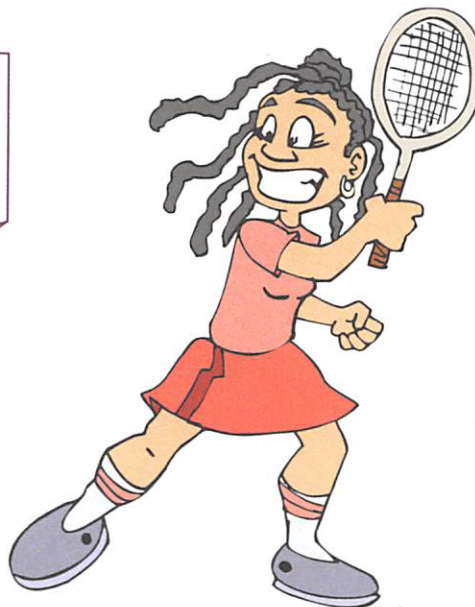
FĪŌ, FIERĪ, FACTUS SUM PERFECT SYSTEM OF TENSES		
Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
factus sum	factus eram	factus erō
factus es	factus erās	factus eris
factus est	factus erat	factus erit
factī sumus	factī erāmus	factī erimus
factī estis	factī erātis	factī eritis
factī sunt	factī erant	factī erunt

PRESENT SYSTEM

Looks completely unlike faciō.

NOTE:
FĪŌ can act as a linking verb and trigger a **predicate nominative**

Soror mea **pernōta** facta est.
My sister became *famous*.



PERFECT SYSTEM

Is the logical passive of faciō.

Fietne aliquid malī?
Will something bad *happen*?

Dux nostra **fit**.
She is made our leader.

DEPONENT VERBS

Fratrem meum hortābar.

✧I was encouraging✧ my brother.

↓
Imperfect Passive Indicative
translated actively

DEPONENT VERBS



Forms:

Passive

Meaning:

Active

Mē sequēminī.

You (pl.) ✧will follow✧ me.

↓
Future Passive Indicative
translated actively



PRINCIPAL PARTS OF DEPONENT VERBS

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum (to urge)

vereor, verērī, veritus sum (to fear)

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (to follow)

patior, patī, passus sum (to allow)

orior, orīrī, ortus sum (to rise)

2ND PRINCIPAL PART

Note that the 2nd
principal part is simply
the **passive infinitive**.
(See p. 200)

PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

ārī	ērī
1	2
3	4
ī	īrī

PRINCIPAL PARTS

	amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
REGULAR VERB	1st person singular present active indicative	present active infinitive	1st person singular perfect active indicative	Perfect Passive Participle
DEPONENT VERB	hortor 1st person singular present passive indicative	hortārī present passive infinitive		hortātus sum Perfect Passive Participle + sum

IMPERATIVES
(p. 197)

orīre
rise!

orīminī
rise (pl.)!

INFINITIVES
(pp. 200–203)

orīrī
to rise

ortus esse
to have risen

ortūrus esse*
to be about to rise

PARTICIPLES
(p. 216)

oriēns, orientis*
rising

ortus, -a, -um
having risen

ortūrus, -a, -um*
about to rise

SOME ACTIVE FORMS

Deponent verbs do use
some active forms:

Present
Participle: -ns, -ntis (p. 216)

Future
Participle: -ūrus (p. 216)

Future
Infinitive: -ūrus esse (p. 202)

SEMIDEPONENT VERBS

SEMIDEPONENT VERBS	
↓	
PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES:	
Forms:	Meaning:
Active	Active
PERFECT SYSTEM OF TENSES:	
Forms:	Meaning:
Passive	Active

Contra pāpiliōnēs saevissimōs pugnāre ausus es.

†You dared† to fight against the very ferocious butterflies.

(Perfect Passive Indicative translated actively)

PRINCIPAL PARTS

1st & 2nd → standard form

3rd → resembles deponent

SEMIDEPONENT VERBS

audeō, audēre, ausus sum
(to dare)

soleō, solēre, solitus sum
(to be accustomed)

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum
(to rejoice, be happy)



Effugere ausus, pāpiliō gladium tuum rīsīt.

†Having dared† to flee, the butterfly laughed at your sword.

(Perfect Passive Participle translated actively)

(See p. 216)

INDICATIVE SUMMARY

INDICATIVE MOOD

Indicates that someone
(I, you, he/she/it, we, you [pl.], they)
is doing some action.

PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES (ACTIVE & PASSIVE: 2ND PRINCIPAL PART)

<u>Present</u>		<u>Imperfect</u>		<u>Future</u>			
ō	or	bam	bar	bō	bor	am	ar
s	ris	bās	bāris	bis	beris	ēs	ēris
t	tur	bat	bātur	bit	bitur	et	ētur
mus	mur	bāmus	bāmur	bimus	bimur	ēmus	ēmur
tis	minī	bātis	bāminī	bitis	biminī	ētis	ēminī
nt	ntur	bant	bantur	bunt	buntur	ent	entur

labōrat
he works



labōrās
you work

PERFECT SYSTEM OF TENSES (ACTIVE: 3RD PRINCIPAL PART - PASSIVE: 4TH PRINCIPAL PART)

<u>Perfect</u>		<u>Pluperfect</u>		<u>Future Perfect</u>	
ī	... sum	eram	... eram	erō	... erō
istī	... es	erās	... erās	eris	... eris
it	... est	erat	... erat	erit	... erit
imus	... sumus	erāmus	... erāmus	erimus	... erimus
istis	... estis	erātis	... erātis	eritis	... eritis
ērunt	... sunt	erant	... erant	erint	... erunt

IMPERATIVE FORMS

PRESENT ACTIVE



Present imperatives are **2nd person** verb forms.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Expresses **commands**.
Commands can be directed toward **one** noun or **more than one** noun.

↓
Present Stem

+
Endings
↓

"VERB!"

PRESENT STEM

Use
2nd principal part.
↓
Cut off -**RE**.

ACTIVE IMPERATIVE ENDINGS

ā	ē
āte	ēte
1	2
3	4
e	ī
ite	īte

PRESENT **ACTIVE** IMPERATIVE

	1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.	Translation
<i>Sing.</i>	rogā	docē	mitte	cape	audī	<u>VERB</u>!
<i>Pl.</i>	rogāte	docēte	mittite	capite	audīte	

Respondē, discipule!

✧Answer✧, student!

Respondēte, discipulī!

✧Answer✧, students!



IRREGULAR IMPERATIVES (faciō, ferō, dūcō, dīcō)

dīc - say!
dūc - lead!
fac - do/make!
fer - bring!

PLURALS

facite, **fer**te, dūcite, dīcite

HELPFUL RHYME

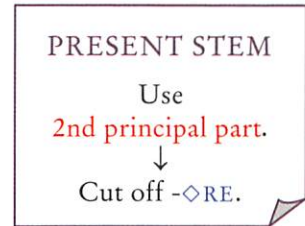
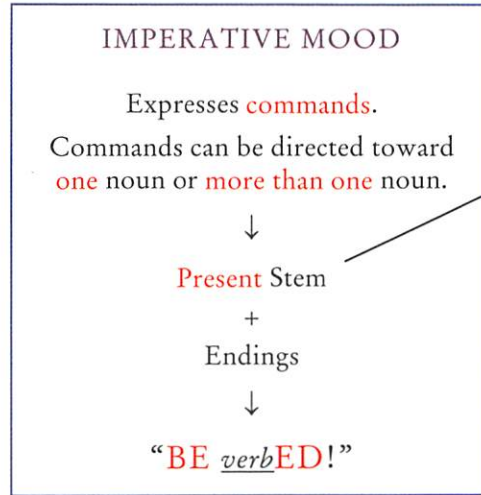
Dīc, dūc, fac, fer:
they should have an **e**,
but it isn't there!

IMPERATIVE FORMS

PRESENT PASSIVE



Present imperatives are **2nd person** verb forms.



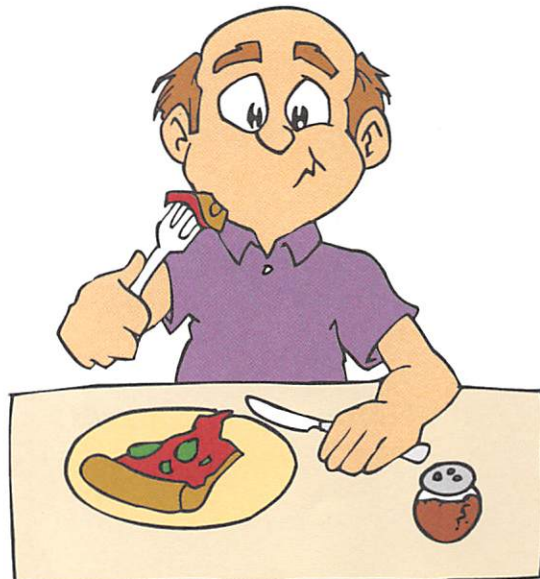
PASSIVE IMPERATIVE ENDINGS

āre	ēre
āminī	ēminī
1	2
3	4
ere	īre
iminī	iminī

PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE						
	1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.	Translation
<i>Sing.</i>	rogāre	docēre	mittere	capere	audire	BE <u>VERBED</u>!
<i>Pl.</i>	rogāminī	docēminī	mittiminī	capiminī	audiminī	

Cibō cōfirmāre, Brūte!
 ♦Be strengthened♦ by food, Brutus!

Cibō cōfirmāminī, Brūte et Marce!
 ♦Be strengthened♦ by food, Brutus and Marcus!



IMPERATIVE FORMS

NEGATIVE

NŌLĪ / NŌLĪTE	
+	
Active Infinitive	Passive Infinitive
↓	↓
DO NOT <i>verb!</i>	DO NOT BE <i>verb</i> ED!

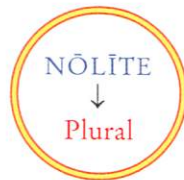


Nŏlĭ effugere, puer!

✧Do not flee✧, boy! (sing.)

Nŏlĭ ab hostibus superārĭ, puer!

✧Do not be surpassed✧ by the enemy, boy! (sing.)



Nŏlĭte timĕre, puerĭ!

✧Do not fear✧, boys! (pl.)

Nŏlĭte superārĭ, puerĭ!

✧Do not be surpassed✧, boys! (pl.)



IMPERATIVE FORMS

FUTURE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

FUTURE IMPERATIVES

Rare forms - 2nd and 3rd person:
translated just like the **present** imperative
or the **hortatory** subjunctive.

(See p. 226)



“**VERB!**”, “**LET**...*verb*”

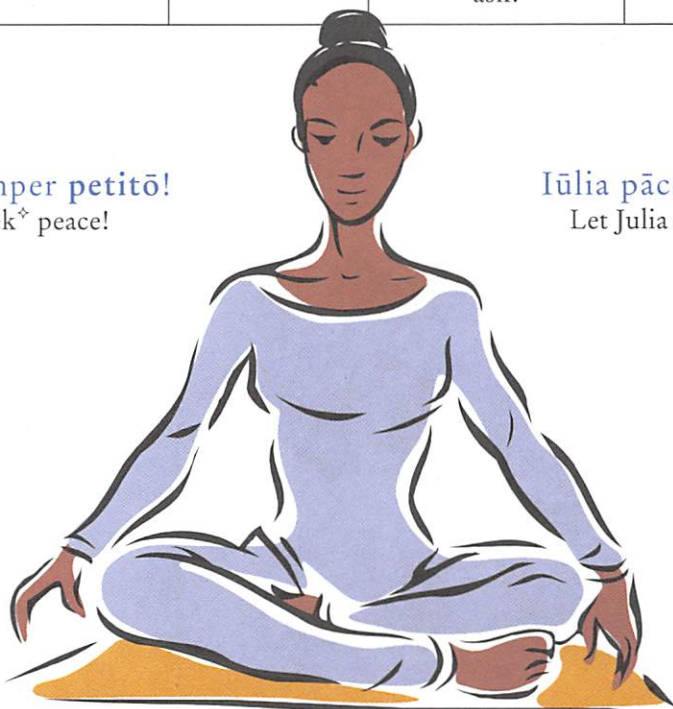
FUTURE IMPERATIVE CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1	2
3	4
i	i

FUTURE IMPERATIVE FORMS				
	2 ND PERSON		3 RD PERSON	
	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Sing.</i>	rogātō	rogātor	rogātō	rogātor
<i>Pl.</i>	rogātōte	---	rogantō	rogantor
	ask!	be asked!	let him/them ask!	let him/them be asked!

Tū pācem semper petitō!
Always ✧seek✧ peace!

Iūlia pācem semper petitō!
Let Julia always ✧seek✧ peace!



INFINITIVE FORMS

PRESENT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

TO *verb*
TO BE *verb*ED



Based on
present
stem.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Conjugation	-ĀRE rogāre (to ask)	-ĀRĪ rogārī (to be asked)
2nd Conjugation	-ĒRE docēre (to teach)	-ĒRĪ docērī (to be taught)
3rd Conjugation	-ERE mittere (to send)	-Ī mittī (to be sent)
3rd -IO Conjugation	-ERE capere (to seize)	-Ī capī (to be seized)
4th Conjugation	-ĪRE audīre (to hear)	-ĪRĪ audīrī (to be heard)

fugārē
to chase

fugārī
to be chased



THIRD & THIRD -IO CONJUGATION

Passive infinitive may look very similar to the 3rd principal part, since both end in -ī. Pay close attention to the stem!

ī

Based on 2nd principal part (present stem).

passive infinitive

Based on 3rd principal part (perfect stem).

perfect indicative

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (to lead)

dūcī - passive infinitive
dūxī - perfect indicative

INFINITIVE FORMS

PERFECT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

TO HAVE *verb*ED
TO HAVE BEEN *verb*ED



	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
ALL Conjugations	PERFECT STEM + -ISSE rogāvisse (to have asked)	PERFECT PARTICIPLE + ESSE rogātus esse (to have been asked)

PERFECT STEM
3rd Principal Part,
cut off the -Ī.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE
4th Principal Part
(-us, -a, -um)

momordisse
to have bitten

morsus esse
to have been bitten



PERFECT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

When an infinitive is formed by combining a **participle** and **esse**, it is possible to decline the participle with 2-1-2 endings.

The full form of the infinitive is:
rogātus, -a, -um esse.

Multī virī hāc herbā **morsī esse** dīcuntur.
Many men are said ♦to have been bitten♦ by this plant.

morsī is nominative plural masculine because "to have been bitten" describes virī ("the men").

INFINITIVE FORMS

FUTURE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

TO BE ABOUT TO verb
TO BE ABOUT TO BE verbED



	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
ALL Conjugations	FUTURE PARTICIPLE + ESSE rogātūrus esse (to be about to ask)	ACCUSATIVE SUPINE + ĪRĪ rogātum ĭrī (to be about to be asked)

cultūrus esse
to be about to
cultivate

cultum ĭrī
to be about to
be cultivated



FUTURE PARTICIPLE
4th Principal Part
↓
-ūrus, -a, -um

ACCUSATIVE SUPINE
4th Principal Part
↓
-um
(See p. 263)

FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

When an infinitive is formed by combining a **participle** and **esse**, it is possible to decline the participle with 2-1-2 endings.

The full form of the infinitive is: rogātūrus, -a, -um esse.

Note that rogātum ĭrī cannot be declined.

Pluvia casūra esse dicta est.
Rain was said *to be about to fall*.

casūra is nominative singular feminine because "to be about to fall" describes pluvia ("rain").

INFINITIVE FORMS

SUMMARY

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

āre	ēre
1	2
3	4
ere	īre

Based on
present
stem.

to
verb

amāre

PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

ārī	
1	2
3	4
ī	īrī

to
be verbed

amārī

PERFECT ACTIVE

Perfect Stem
+
-ISSE

to have
verbed

amāvisse

PERFECT PASSIVE

4th Principal Part
+
ESSE

Perfect
Participle
+
esse

to have been
verbed

amātus, -a, -um esse

Future
Participle
+
esse

FUTURE ACTIVE

4th Principal Part
↓
-ŪRUS ESSE

to be
about to
verb

amātūrus, -a, -um esse

FUTURE PASSIVE

4th Principal Part
↓
-UM ĪRĪ

Accusative
Supine
+
īrī

to be
about to be
verbed

amātum īrī

INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

COMPLEMENTARY

The “trigger verb”
(I am able) would
not make any sense
without an infinitive
to accompany it.

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

There are some verbs
that make sense only
if they are combined
with an infinitive:

e.g. “I am able **TO** verb”

Natāre possumus.
We are able ♦to swim♦.

Infinitives may be
associated with
**adverbs, objects,
prepositional
phrases, etc.**

In marī natāre audēmus.
We dare ♦to swim in the sea♦.

Piscem tangere dubitāmus.
We hesitate ♦to touch the fish♦.

Direct Object
of tangere



COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE “TRIGGERS”

dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus (to owe, ought)

possum, posse, potuī (to be able)

soleō, solēre, solitus sum (to be accustomed)

dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus (to hesitate)

“Ought” triggers
an infinitive, but
“owe” does not.

Natāre dēbēmus.
We ought ♦to swim♦.

Pecūniam dēbēmus.
We owe money.

soleō + infinitive

↓
to be accustomed
to verbing

Natāre solēmus.
We are accustomed
♦to swimming♦.

INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

OBJECTIVE



OBJECTIVE INFINITIVE

Infinitive can act as the **direct object** of a verb.



“**TO** verb,” “verb**ING**”

Rēx pugnāre amāt.

The king loves ♦to fight♦.
The king loves ♦fighting♦.

Infinitive may be associated with **adverbs, objects, prepositional phrases, etc.**



Rēx cum equite pugnāre parat.
The king prepares ♦to fight with the knight♦.

Rēx equitem vincere cupit.
The king wants ♦to beat the knight♦.

Direct Object
of cupit

Direct Object
of vincere

Volāre possum.

I am able ♦to fly♦.



Complementary:
“I am able” makes sense only
when followed by an infinitive.

OBJECTIVE VS. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVES

Both are examples of a situation
where a verb triggers an infinitive,
but a “**complementary** infinitive”
is a special situation when the
trigger verb can be satisfied **only**
by the presence of an **infinitive**.

Volāre cupiō.

I want ♦to fly♦.



Objective:
“I want” makes sense when
followed by an infinitive, but it
could also be followed simply by a
noun (“I want bread.”).

INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

SUBJECTIVE



SUBJECTIVE INFINITIVE

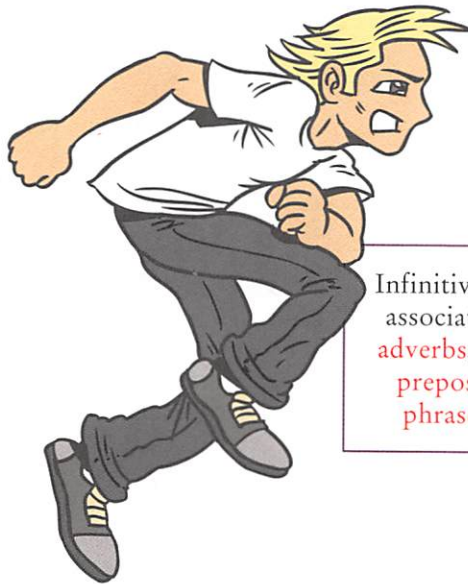
Infinitive can act as a
nominative singular noun.



Subject of
3rd person singular verb (-t):



"TO verb," "verbING"



Currere Marcum dēfatīgat.

✧To run✧ tires Marcus.
It tires Marcus ✧to run✧.
✧Running✧ tires Marcus.

Infinitive may be
associated with
**adverbs, objects,
prepositional
phrases, etc.**

Celeriter currere Marcum dēfatīgat.

✧Running quickly✧ tires Marcus.

Marcum vidēre mē dēfatīgat.

✧Seeing Marcus✧ tires me.

Direct Object
of vidēre

Modifies "to run"
↓
Nominative Singular Neuter
↓

Bonum est cum amīcīs currere.

✧To run✧ with friends is good.
It is good ✧to run✧ with friends.
✧Running✧ with friends is good.

It is possible to join
a subject infinitive with
a predicate adjective. For
the purposes of adjective
agreement, the infinitive
is considered **neuter**.

Modifies "to run"
↓
Nominative Singular Neuter
↓

Sub sōle currere difficile est.

✧To run✧ under the sun is difficult.
It is difficult ✧to run✧ under the sun.
✧Running✧ under the sun is difficult.

INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS

INFINITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS

Many impersonal verbs can trigger an infinitive.



"It is _____ **TO** *verb*."

COMMON IMPERSONAL VERBS

libet, libēre, libuit (it is pleasing)

licet, licēre, licuit (it is allowed)

necesse est, esse, fuit (it is necessary)

oportet, oportēre, oportuit (it is necessary)

decet, decēre, decuit (it is fitting)

Necesse erat lūdere.

It was necessary ♦to have fun♦.

Impersonal verbs can be conjugated in various tenses just like any other verb:

libēbat



it was pleasing

Infinitive may be associated with **adverbs, objects, prepositional phrases**, etc.

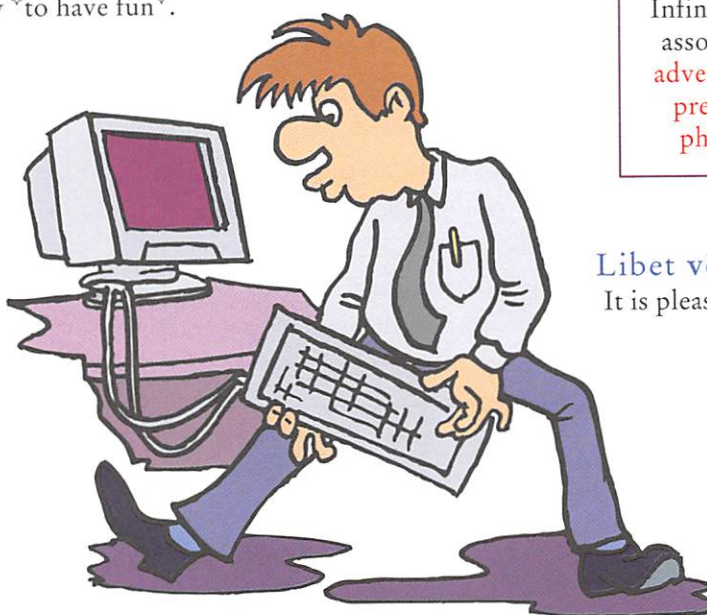


Libet vērītātem effugere.

It is pleasing ♦to escape reality♦.



Direct object of **effugere**



INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE – TRANSLATING WITH “TO”

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

There are several verbs that trigger an
Accusative + Infinitive phrase.

You will see that the accusative noun is
doing the action expressed by the infinitive;
therefore the construction is called:

“Infinitive with **Subject** Accusative”

Vermiculus avem dēsistere vult.

The worm wants *the bird to stop*.

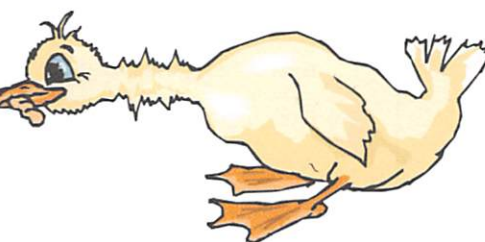


Who is doing
the stopping?

↓
The bird
avem (accusative)

Avis vermiculum effugere nōn sinit.

The bird does not allow *the worm to flee*.



Who is doing
the fleeing?

↓
The worm
vermiculum (accusative)

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE “TRIGGERS”

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus (to order)
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus (to forbid)
sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs (to allow)
volō, velle, voluī (to want)
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (to not want)
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus (to force)
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus (to teach)

Accusatives may function as the
subject or the **direct object** of an
infinitive. Use context to decide
on the correct interpretation.

Tē vincere cupimus.

We want *you to conquer*.
(*Tē* is the subject
of *vincere*.)

We want *to conquer you*.
(*Tē* is the object
of *vincere*.)

INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE – TRANSLATING WITH “THAT”

THAT

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

Sometimes it is impossible to translate an accusative + infinitive phrase with the traditional infinitive translation “to verb.”

An alternative is:

Accusative + Infinitive



“**THAT** *accusative verb*”

Tē tacēre opus est.

It is necessary ♦**that** you be quiet♦.

Tē clāmāre mē terret.

♦**That** you are shouting♦ scares me.
It scares me ♦**that** you are shouting♦.

Tē tam magnum esse malum est.

It is bad ♦**that** you are♦ so big.



Livia



Brutus

TWO ACCUSATIVES

When a sentence contains two accusatives and an infinitive, the **first** accusative is usually the **subject** of the infinitive, and the **second** is usually the direct **object**.

Subject of
terruiſſe

Direct Object of
terruiſſe

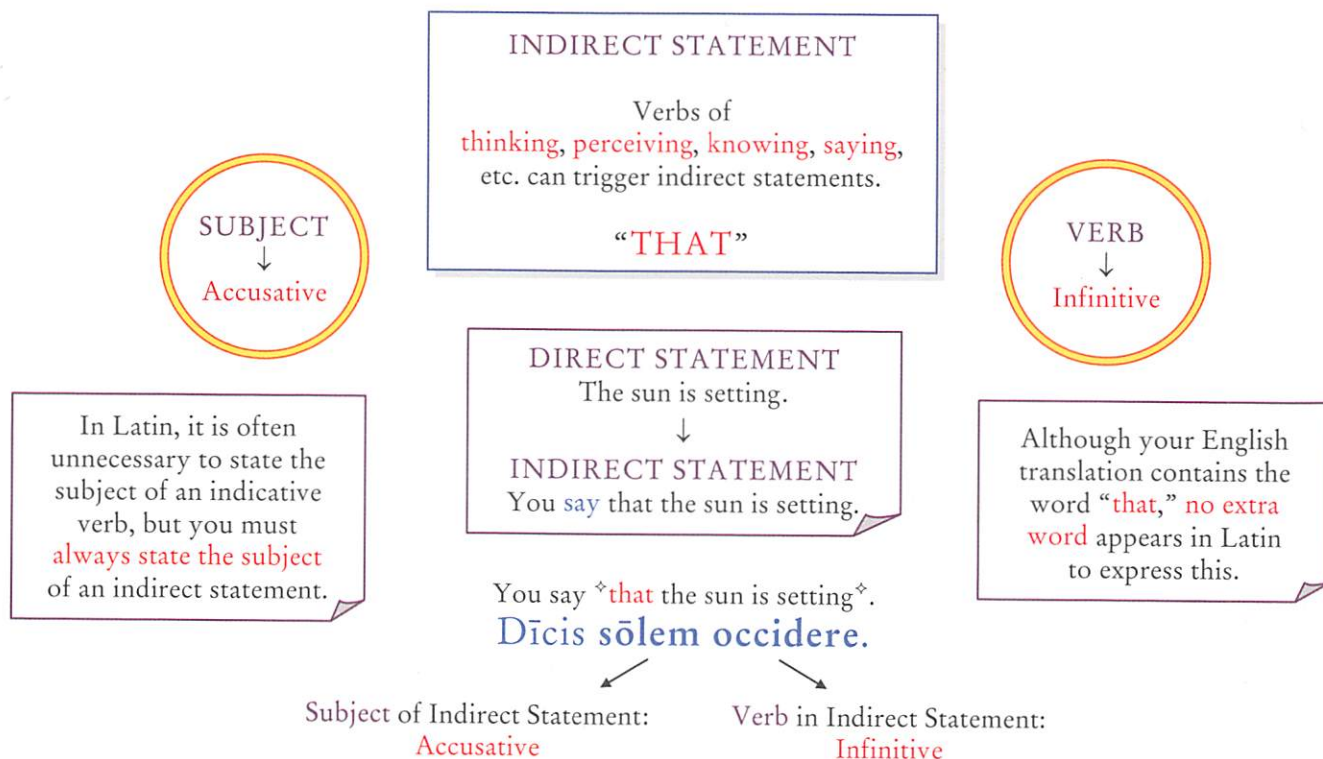
Perfect
Infinitive

Līviam Brūtum terruiſſe malum est.

It is bad ♦**that** Livia scared♦ Brutus.

INFINITIVE IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT

OVERVIEW



INDIRECT STATEMENT “TRIGGERS”

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum (to think)
exīstimō, exīstimāre, exīstimāvī, exīstimātus (to think)
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus (to think)

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (to hear)
sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (to feel, realize)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (to see)

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (to find out, learn)
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellectus (to understand)
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus (to not know)
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus (to know)

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (to say)
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum (to confess)
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus (to deny, say...not)
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (to report)

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (to believe)
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus (to hope)

INFINITIVE IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT

TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE

TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE



Indicates that the action in the indirect statement takes place **before**, at the **same time** as, or **after** the verb that triggers the indirect statement.

In indirect statements, the infinitive is translated with an **indicative** phrasing rather than with “to.”

PRESENT



**SAME
TIME**

Dīcis sōlem occidere.

You say *that the sun **is setting**.*

PERFECT



BEFORE

Dīcis sōlem iam occidisce.

You say *that the sun **set** already.*

FUTURE



AFTER

Dīcis sōlem occāsūrum esse.

You say *that the sun **will set**.*



Putābam vōs vocātōs esse.

I thought that you (pl.) *had been called*.

Accusative: accusative is required in indirect statement.

Plural: “you (pl.)” is plural.

Masculine: this “you (pl.)” happens to be a group of men.

Sciēbam mātrem ventūram esse.

I knew that mother *would come*.

Accusative: accusative is required in indirect statement.

Singular: **mātrem** is singular.

Feminine: **mātrem** is feminine.

PERFECT PASSIVE

Infinitive
(**amātus esse**)

&

FUTURE ACTIVE

Infinitive
(**amātūrus esse**)



Must **agree** with the accusative **subject** of the indirect statement.

INFINITIVE IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT

TRANSLATING THE INFINITIVE

1° (PRIMARY) SEQUENCE

Main verb is present, future, or future perfect.
(See p. 231)

2° (SECONDARY) SEQUENCE

Main verb is imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect.
(See p. 231)

ACTIVE INFINITIVES

Sequence	PRESENT Infinitive	PERFECT Infinitive	FUTURE Infinitive
1°	" <u>verbs</u> "	" <u>verbed</u> "	" <u>will verb</u> "
2°	" <u>was verbing</u> "	" <u>had verbed</u> "	" <u>would verb</u> "

PASSIVE INFINITIVES

Sequence	PRESENT Infinitive	PERFECT Infinitive	FUTURE Infinitive
1°	" <u>is verbed</u> "	" <u>was verbed</u> "	" <u>will be verbed</u> "
2°	" <u>was being verbed</u> "	" <u>had been verbed</u> "	" <u>would be verbed</u> "



NOTE:

The **future passive** infinitive **rarely** appears.

FUTURE

1°: "will"

2°: "would"

MISSING "ESSE"

The **future active** and **perfect passive** infinitives sometimes appear without **esse**.

Spērō tē tūtum in itinere **futūrum**.
I hope that you [♦]will be[♦] safe on your journey.
(Spērō tē tūtum in itinere **futūrum esse**.)

REVIEW OF INFINITIVE FORMS

	<u>Present</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Future</u>
<i>Active</i>	amāre	amāvisse	amātūrus esse
<i>Passive</i>	amārī	amātus esse	amātum īrī

INFINITIVE IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT

LIST OF INFINITIVE TRANSLATIONS

ACTIVE INFINITIVES			
SEQUENCE	TENSE OF INFINITIVE	TRANSLATION OF INFINITIVE	EXAMPLE
1°	present	<u>verbs</u> , <u>is verbing</u> , <u>does verb</u>	<i>crēdō tē audīre</i> I believe that you [♦] are hearing [♦] .
1°	perfect	<u>verbed</u> , <u>was verbing</u> , <u>did verb</u> , <u>has verbed</u>	<i>crēdō tē audīvisse</i> I believe that you [♦] heard [♦] .
1°	future	<u>will verb</u>	<i>crēdō tē auditūrum esse</i> I believe that you [♦] will hear [♦] .
2°	present	<u>was verbing</u>	<i>crēdidī tē audīre</i> I believed that you [♦] were hearing [♦] .
2°	perfect	<u>had verbed</u>	<i>crēdidī tē audīvisse</i> I believed that you [♦] had heard [♦] .
2°	future	<u>would verb</u>	<i>crēdidī tē auditūrum esse</i> I believed that you [♦] would hear [♦] .

PASSIVE INFINITIVES			
SEQUENCE	TENSE OF INFINITIVE	TRANSLATION OF INFINITIVE	EXAMPLE
1°	present	<u>is verbed</u> , <u>is being verbed</u>	<i>crēdō tē audīrī</i> I believe that you [♦] are being heard [♦] .
1°	perfect	<u>was verbed</u> , <u>was being verbed</u> , <u>has been verbed</u>	<i>crēdō tē audītum esse</i> I believe that you [♦] were heard [♦] .
1°	future	<u>will be verbed</u>	<i>crēdō tē audītum īrī</i> I believe that you [♦] will be heard [♦] .
2°	present	<u>was being verbed</u>	<i>crēdidī tē audīrī</i> I believed that you [♦] were being heard [♦] .
2°	perfect	<u>had been verbed</u>	<i>crēdidī tē audītum esse</i> I believed that you [♦] had been heard [♦] .
2°	future	<u>would be verbed</u>	<i>crēdidī tē audītum īrī</i> I believed that you [♦] would be heard [♦] .

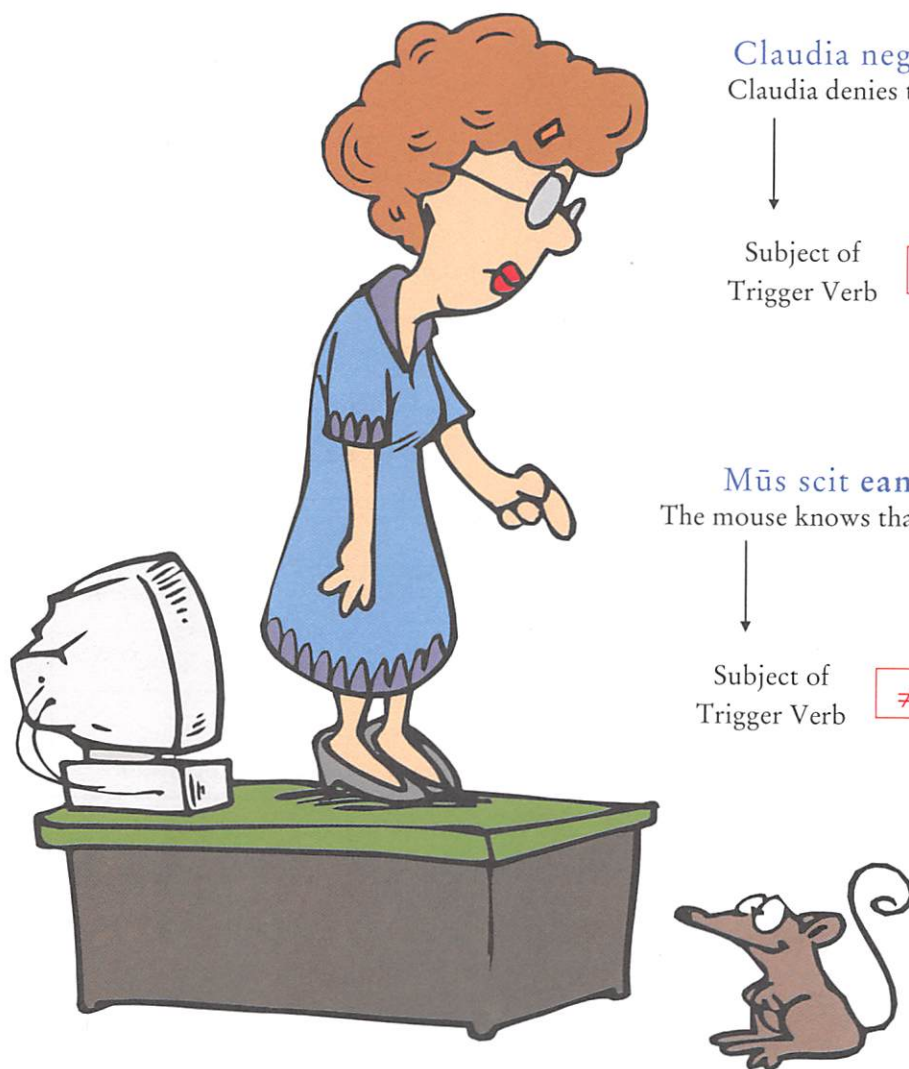
INFINITIVE IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT

HE/SHE/IT/THEY SUBJECTS

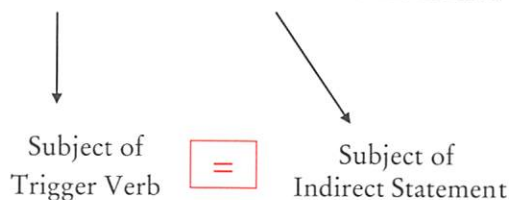
REFLEXIVE VS. DEMONSTRATIVE

If the subject of the indirect statement is “he,” “she,” “it,” or “they” and refers back to the **subject** of the trigger verb, use the reflexive *sē* as the subject accusative.

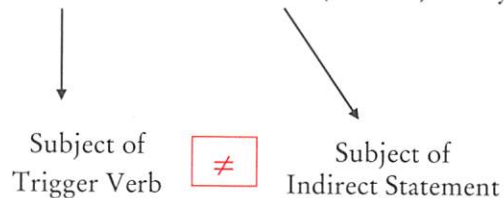
Otherwise, use *is*, *ea*, *id* in the accusative with the appropriate number and gender.



Claudia negat sē mūrem timēre.
Claudia denies that “she” fears the mouse.

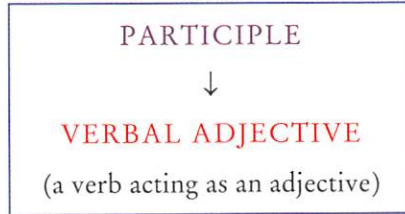


Mūs scit eam magnopere timēre.
The mouse knows that “she” (Claudia) is very afraid.



PARTICIPLES

INTRODUCTION

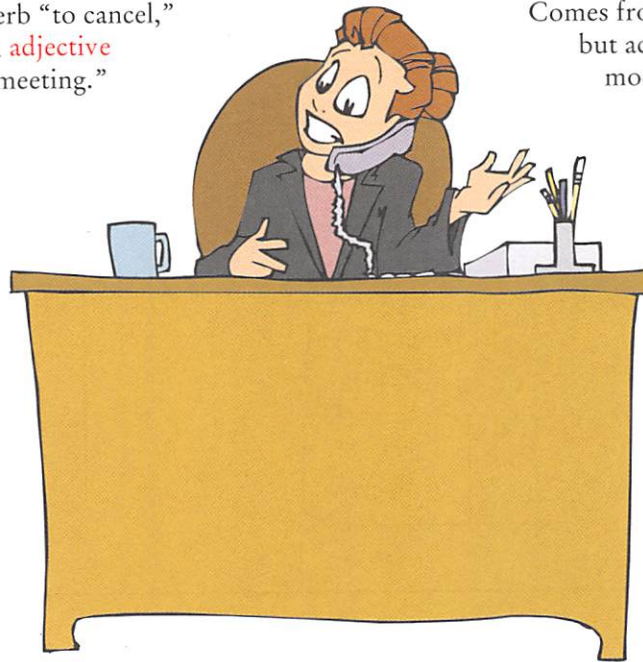


Brendan calls Sara about the **canceled** meeting.

Comes from the verb “to cancel,”
but acts as an **adjective**
modifying “meeting.”

Miriam hears Sara **talking**.

Comes from the verb “to talk,”
but acts as an **adjective**
modifying “Sara.”



NOTE:

Experiment with English **word order**. The participle can be placed before or after the noun it modifies.

We see the **smiling** woman.

We see the woman **smiling**.

PARTICIPLES

FORMS



audiēns
“listening”

1 Termination
Third Declension
Adjective with
I-Stem Endings

-NS, -NTIS

↓
verbing

ABLATIVE
SINGULAR

May end in
-ī or -e.
(See p. 82)

*verb***ING**

PRESENT ACTIVE
PARTICIPLE

↓

(1st) *rogāns, rogantis*

(2nd) *docēns, docentis*

(3rd) *mittēns, mittentis*

(3rd -IO) *capiēns, capientis*

(4th) *audiēns, audientis*



institūta
“[having been] trained”

4TH

Principal Part

↓

[having been]
verbed

2-1-2

Adjective

[HAVING BEEN] *verb***ED**

PERFECT PASSIVE
PARTICIPLE

↓

4th Principal Part

(*rogātus, -a, -um*)



spectātūrus
“about/intending/going to look”

-ŪRUS

↓

about to/
intending to/
going to
verb

2-1-2

Adjective

ABOUT TO *verb*
INTENDING TO *verb*
GOING TO *verb*

FUTURE ACTIVE
PARTICIPLE

↓

4th Principal Part with -ūrus

(*rogātūrus, -a, -um*)

PARTICIPLES

PARTICIPLE SYNTAX

VERBAL ADJECTIVES

Participles are adjectives, so they must **agree with the noun** they modify in case, number, and gender.

Since participles are formed from verbs, they can be combined with **objects, prepositional phrases, adverbs**, etc.

Umbra fēlem persequēns gaudet.

The ghost ♡pursuing the cat♡ rejoices.

Direct Object
of persequēns

Nominative Singular
Feminine in agreement
with umbra

TRANSLATING PARTICIPLES AS CLAUSES

PARTICIPLES AS CLAUSES

You can often translate participles by converting them into clauses by adding the words below:

- who/which/that** (Relative Clause)
- when/once/while** (Temporal Clause)
- since** (Causal Clause)
- although** (Concessive Clause)



Umbra fēlem persequēns gaudet.

The ghost ♡[who is] pursuing♡ the cat rejoices.

Fēlēs dormiēns petīta est.

The cat was attacked ♡[while she was] sleeping♡.

Fēlem petītā iuvābimus.

We will help the cat ♡[since she has been] attacked♡.

Fēlēs effugitūra tamen timēbat.

♡[Although she was] about to escape♡, the cat was still afraid.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE
Same time as the main action.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE
Before the main action.

FUTURE PARTICIPLE
About to happen
after the main action.

PARTICIPLES

INDICATIVE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC

ABOUT
TO VERB

INDICATIVE
ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC

Future Participle
(-ūrus, -a, -um)

+
SUM, ES, EST...

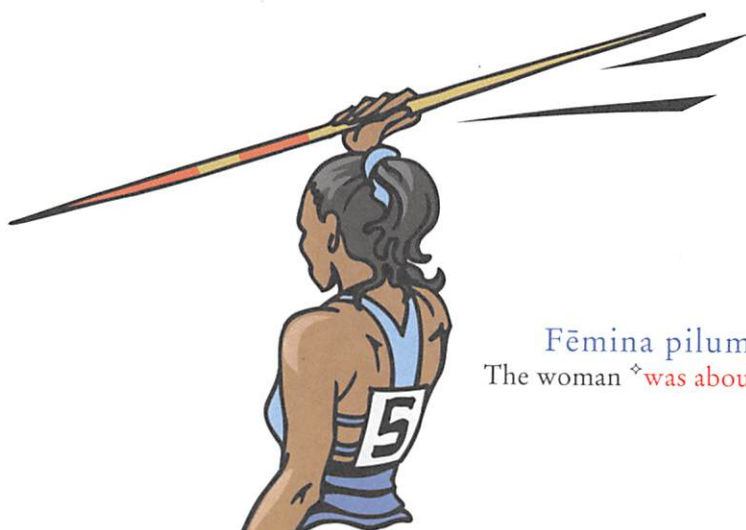


"*subject* is ABOUT TO *verb*"

"*subject* is GOING TO *verb*"

GOING
TO VERB

Must be
nominative,
must **agree**
with the subject
of the verb.



Fēmina pilum iactūra erat.

The woman [✧]was about to throw[✧] the javelin.

Nominative singular feminine in
agreement with *fēmina*

sum, es, est...



is about to verb

eram, erās, erat...



was about to verb

erō, eris, erit...



will be about to verb

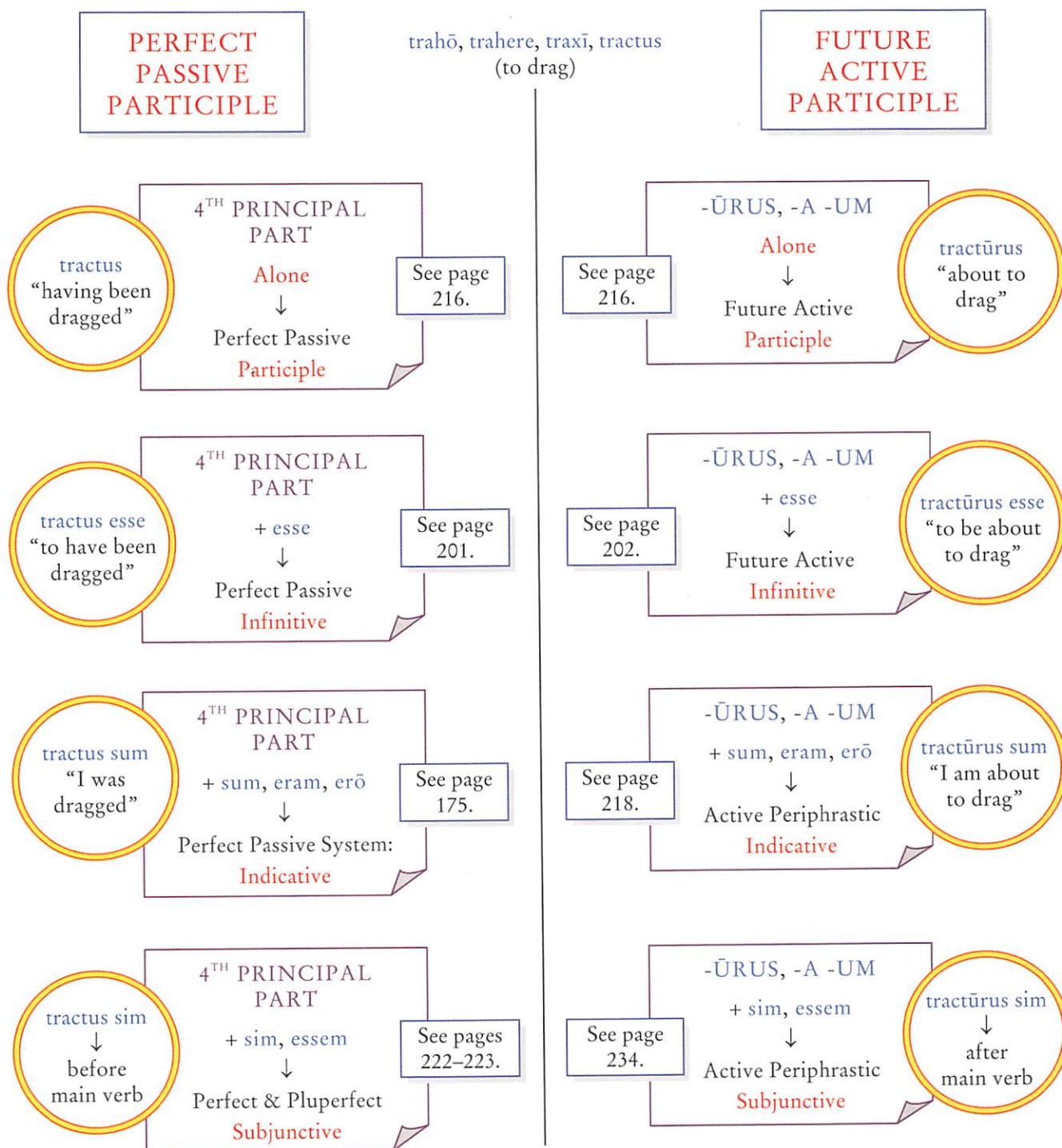
Hanc fēminam laudāturū sum.

[✧]I am going to praise[✧] this woman.

Nominative singular
in agreement with the implied *ego*.
Since the ending is masculine,
this "I" must be male.

PARTICIPLES

ALONE AND AS PART OF OTHER VERB FORMS



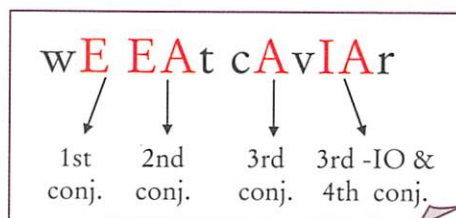
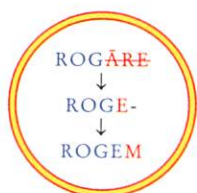
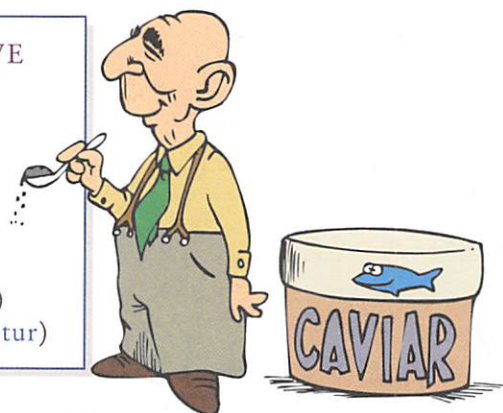
SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

PRESENT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

Indicative	Subjunctive
rogāmus	rogēmus
docēmus	doceāmus
mittimus	mittāmus
capimus	capiāmus
audimus	audiāmus

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Stem
+
wE EA t cAvI Ar vowel
+
Endings
(-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt)
(-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur)



PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.
rogem	doceam	mittam	capiam	audiam
rogēs	doceās	mittās	capiās	audiās
roget	doceat	mittat	capiat	audiat
rogēmus	doceāmus	mittāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
rogētis	doceātis	mittātis	capiātis	audiātis
rogent	doceant	mittant	capiant	audiant

PRESENT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.
roger	docear	mittar	capiar	audiar
rogēris	doceāris	mittāris	capiāris	audiāris
rogētur	doceātur	mittātur	capiātur	audiātur
rogēmur	doceāmur	mittāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
rogēminī	doceāminī	mittāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
rogentur	doceantur	mittantur	capiantur	audiantur

SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

IMPERFECT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE



IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Active Infinitive

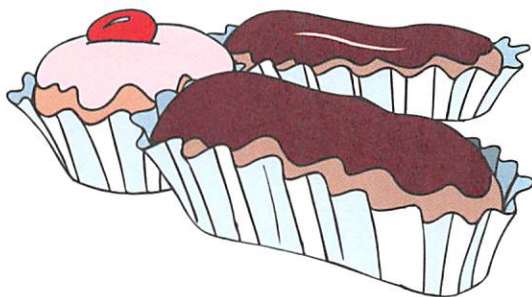
(2nd principal part)

+

Endings

(-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt)

(-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur)



Rogāvī quid ederēs.

I asked what [✧]you were eating[✧].

IMPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE				
1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.
rogārem	docērem	mitterem	caperem	audīrem
rogārēs	docērēs	mitterēs	caperēs	audīrēs
rogāret	docēret	mitteret	caperet	audīret
rogārēmus	docērēmus	mitterēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
rogārētis	docērētis	mitterētis	caperētis	audīrētis
rogārent	docērent	mitterent	caperent	audīrent
IMPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE				
1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	3rd -IO Conj.	4th Conj.
rogārer	docērer	mitterer	caperer	audīrer
rogārēris	docērēris	mitterēris	caperēris	audīrēris
rogārētur	docērētur	mitterētur	caperētur	audīrētur
rogārēmur	docērēmur	mitterēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
rogārēminī	docērēminī	mitterēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
rogārentur	docērentur	mitterentur	caperentur	audīrentur

SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

PERFECT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

PERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect Stem
(3rd principal part, cut off -ī)

+

Endings

↓

-erim -erīmus
-erīs -erītis
-erit -erint

PERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect Passive Participle
(4th principal part)

+

Present Subjunctive
of sum, esse

↓

sim sīmus
sīs sītis
sit sint

Endings resemble
the Future Perfect
Indicative except for
the 1st person singular.

PERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE	PERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE
All conjugations follow the same formula	
rogāverim	rogātus sim
rogāverīs	rogātus sīs
rogāverit	rogātus sit
rogāverīmus	rogātī sīmus
rogāverītis	rogātī sītis
rogāverint	rogātī sint

ROGĀVĪ
↓
ROGĀVERIM

ROGĀTUS
↓
ROGĀTUS
SIM



Nominative Plural
Feminine in agreement
with corōnae

↓

Quaeris cūr corōnae illīs dātāe sint.
You ask why garlands *were given* to those people.

The 4th principal part must
take on **masculine**, **feminine**,
or **neuter** characteristics
to match the subject!

rogātus, -a, -um
sim, sīs, sit

&

rogātī, -ae, -a
sīmus, sītis, sint

SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

PLUPERFECT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

PLUPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect Stem
(3rd principal part, cut off -ī)

+
ISSE

+
-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt

↓
-issem -issēmus
-issēs -issētis
-isset -issent

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect Passive Participle
(4th principal part)

+

Imperfect Subjunctive
of sum, esse

↓

essem essēmus
essēs essētis
esset essent

Note that the 3rd principal part + isse is simply the perfect active infinitive.

PLUPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

All conjugations follow the same formula

rogāvissem
rogāvissēs
rogāvisset
rogāvissēmus
rogāvissētis
rogāvissent

rogātus essem
rogātus essēs
rogātus esset
rogātī essēmus
rogātī essētis
rogātī essent

Note that the imperfect subjunctive of sum is formed according to the rules on p. 221 (present active infinitive + endings).

ROGĀVĪ
↓
ROGĀVISSE
↓
ROGĀVISSEM

ROGĀTUS
↓
ROGĀTUS
ESSEM



Nominative Singular
Neuter in agreement
with oppidum

Quaesivī quandō oppidum conditum esset.
I asked when the town *had been founded*.

The 4th principal part must take on masculine, feminine, or neuter characteristics to match the subject!

rogātus, -a, -um
essem, essēs, esset

&

rogātī, -ae, -a
essēmus, essētis, essent

SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

SUMMARY OF FORMS

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Stem + wE EA t cAv IA r +

-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt
-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Active Infinitive +

-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt
-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Active: Perfect Stem + -erim, -erīs, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint

Passive: 4th Principal Part + sim, sīs, sit, sīmus, sītis, sint

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Active: Perfect Stem + -issem, -issēs, -isset, -issēmus, -issētis, -issent

Passive: 4th Principal Part + essem, essēs, esset, essēmus, essētis, essent

SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS OF PORTŌ, PORTĀRE, PORTĀVĪ, PORTĀTUS (TO CARRY)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
Active:	portet	portāret*	portāverit	portāvisset*
Passive:	portētur	portārētur	portātus sit	portātus esset



NOTE:

Imperfect Subjunctive =
Present Infinitive + Endings

Pluperfect Subjunctive =
Perfect Infinitive + Endings

~~FUTURE
Subjunctive~~

~~FUTURE
PERFECT
Subjunctive~~

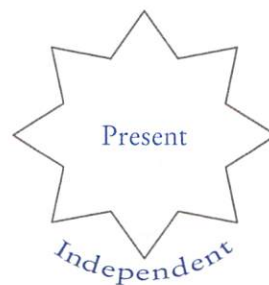
SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

IRREGULAR VERBS

	SUM	POSSUM	VOLO	NŌLO	MĀLO	EŌ	FERŌ	FĪŌ
PRESENT	sīm	possim	velim	nōlim	mālim	eam	feram	fiam
	sīs	possīs	velis	nōlis	mālis	eās	ferās	fīās
	sit	possit	velit	nōlit	mālit	eat	ferat	fīat
	sīmus	possīmus	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus	eāmus	ferāmus	fīāmus
	sītis	possītis	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis	eātis	ferātis	fīātis
	sint	possint	velint	nōlint	mālint	eant	ferant	fīant
IMPERFECT	essem	possem	vellem	nōllem	māllem	īrem	ferrem	fierem
	essēs	possēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs	īrēs	ferrēs	fierēs
	esset	posset	vellet	nōllet	māllet	īret	ferret	fieret
	essēmus	possēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus	īrēmus	ferrēmus	fierēmus
	essētis	possētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis	īrētis	ferrētis	fierētis
	essent	possent	vellent	nōllent	māllent	īrent	ferrent	fierent
PERFECT	fuerim	potuerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	īverim / ierim	tulerim	factus sīm
	fuerīs	potuerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs	īverīs / ierīs	tulerīs	factus sīs
	fuerit	potuerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit	īverit / ierit	tulerit	factus sit
	fuerīmus	potuerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus	etc.	etc.	factī sīmus
	fuerītis	potuerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis	itus sim	lātus sim	factī sītis
	fuerint	potuerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint	itus sīs	lātus sīs	factī sint
PLUPERFECT	fuissem	potuissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	īvissem / īssem	tulisse	factus essem
	fuissēs	potuissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs	īvissēs / īssēs	tulissēs	factus essēs
	fuisset	potuisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset	īvisset / īsset	tulisset	factus esset
	fuissēmus	potuissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus	etc.	etc.	factī essēmus
	fuissētis	potuissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis	itus essem	lātus essem	factī essētis
	fuissent	potuissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent	itus essēs	lātus essēs	factī essent
PLUPERFECT	fuissem	potuissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	īvissem / īssem	tulisse	factus essem
	fuissēs	potuissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs	īvissēs / īssēs	tulissēs	factus essēs
	fuisset	potuisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset	īvisset / īsset	tulisset	factus esset
	fuissēmus	potuissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus	etc.	etc.	factī essēmus
	fuissētis	potuissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis	itus essem	lātus essem	factī essētis
	fuissent	potuissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent	itus essēs	lātus essēs	factī essent

Present Subjunctive forms are **irregular**, but the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect are formed just as for any other verb.

INDEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



HORTATORY/JUSSIVE/VOLITIVE

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE
(Also called “jussive” or
“volitive” subjunctive)

Conveys an **exhortation/command**.



Present Subjunctive

LET

VERB!

Ad urbem **ambulēmus**.

✧**Let** us walk✧ to the city!

Marcus ā nōbis **servētur**.

✧**Let** Marcus be saved✧ by us!

TRANSLATION

1ST AND 3RD PERSON:

“**LET** *subject verb*”

2ND PERSON:

“**VERB!**”

Patriam tuam **dēfendās**.

✧**Defend**✧ your fatherland!

Cīvēs bonī **sītis**.

✧**Be**✧ good citizens!

**LET...
NOT**

**NEGATIVE
HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE**

nē

+

Present Subjunctive

**DO
NOT
VERB!**

Nē Marcus in aquam **pellātur**.

✧**Let**✧ Marcus ✧**not** be pushed✧ into the water!

Nē volāre **temptēs**, phoenicoptere.

✧**Do not** try✧ to fly, flamingo.

**PERFECT
SUBJUNCTIVE**

Often, the **perfect**
subjunctive appears in
negative hortatory
expressions.

Nē dīcere **temptāverint**.

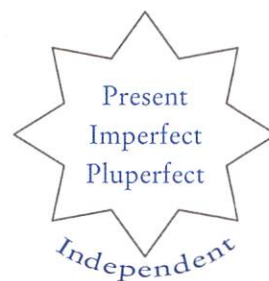
✧**Let** them **not** try✧ to speak!

Nē mē **timuerīs**.

✧**Do not** fear✧ me!



INDEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



OPTATIVE

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

UTINAM

+

Present, Imperfect, Pluperfect
Subjunctive

↓

“IF ONLY,” “WOULD THAT”

UTINAM NĒ

↓

“would that...not”

MAY

PRESENT
SUBJUNCTIVE

“would that I **may** *verb*”

(Possible wish for the
present/future)

Utinam brevis **sit** hic labor.

Would that this task **may** be brief.

Brevis **sit** hic labor.

May this task be brief.

Utinam may be **omitted**
with the **present** subjunctive,
but not with other tenses.

Take care to avoid
confusing optative (wish)
and hortatory (command).

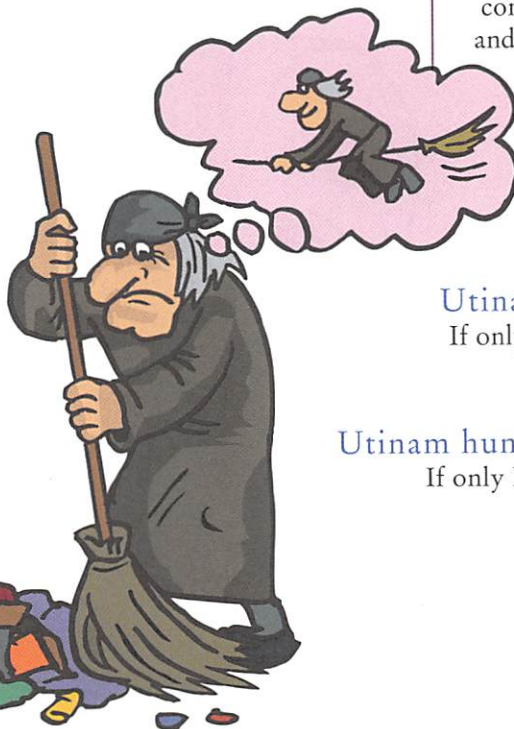
(See pp. 226, 228)

WERE

IMPERFECT
SUBJUNCTIVE

“would that I **were** *verbing*”
“would that I **were** *verbed*”

(Unfulfilled longing
pertaining to the **present**)



Utinam nunc **volārem**.

If only I **were** flying now.

Utinam hunc labōrem **amārem**.

If only I **liked** this task.

HAD

PLUPERFECT
SUBJUNCTIVE

“would that I **had** *verbed*”

(Unfulfilled longing
pertaining to the **past**)

Utinam nē tantam illuviem **fēcissem**.

Would that I **had** not made such a great mess.

INDEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES

HORTATORY VS. OPTATIVE

OPTATIVE VS. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

If *utinam* is omitted before a **present tense** optative subjunctive, the optative may easily be mistaken for a hortatory construction.

Take careful note of the difference between the two, and use context to decide which is intended:



Hortatory: command, exhortation

Optative: wish, hope

Epistulam ad tē mittāmus.

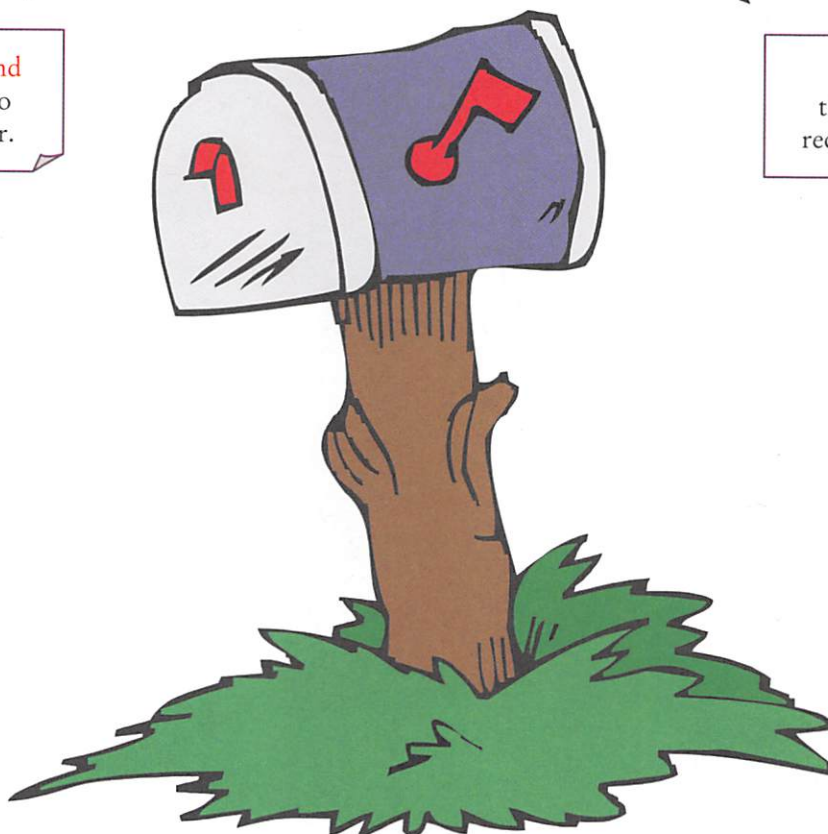
✧Let us send✧ a letter to you.

We **command** ourselves to send a letter.

Epistulam hodiē accipiāmus.

✧May we receive✧ a letter today!

We **wish** that we will receive a letter.



INDEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



DELIBERATIVE

DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Appears in **questions**.

“**SHOULD** I *verb*? / **AM** I **TO** *verb*?”
(Present Subjunctive)

“**SHOULD** I **HAVE** *verbed*? / **WAS** I **TO** *verb*?”
(Imperfect Subjunctive)

Brūtus sōlus **temptet** hunc labōrem ferre?
♦Should♦ Brutus ♦try♦ to bear this task alone?

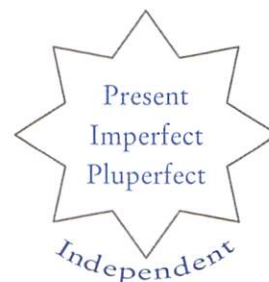
Quem amīcum **vocet** Brūtus?
What friend ♦is♦ Brutus ♦to♦ call?

Quid **faceret** Brūtus?
What ♦was♦ Brutus ♦to♦ do?



Quōmodō Brūtus **perīculum vitāret**?
How ♦should♦ Brutus ♦have♦ avoided♦ danger?

INDEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



POTENTIAL

There are many different ways of phrasing the potential subjunctive in English. Keep all of them in mind and pick the one that best seems to fit the **context**.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

WOULD **MAY**
COULD **MIGHT**

(Present & Imperfect & Pluperfect Subjunctive)

WOULD/COULD/ETC. "HAVE"

If the verb is **imperfect**, it is often appropriate to add "**have**," and it is always appropriate when the verb is **pluperfect**.

PRESENT TENSE

Deals with what is possible in the **present/future**.

Quis familiam dēfendere **dubitet**?
Who **✧would** hesitate[✧] to defend his family?

IMPERFECT TENSE

Deals with what was possible in the **past**.

Quis eō tempore bellum **cuperet**?
Who **✧could have** desired[✧] war at that time?

COMMON POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE PHRASE

aliquis **dīcat**...
Someone **may** say...



The **apodoses** of subjunctive **conditions** are potential subjunctives.

PLUPERFECT TENSE

The potential use of the pluperfect subjunctive appears most frequently in **conditions**.

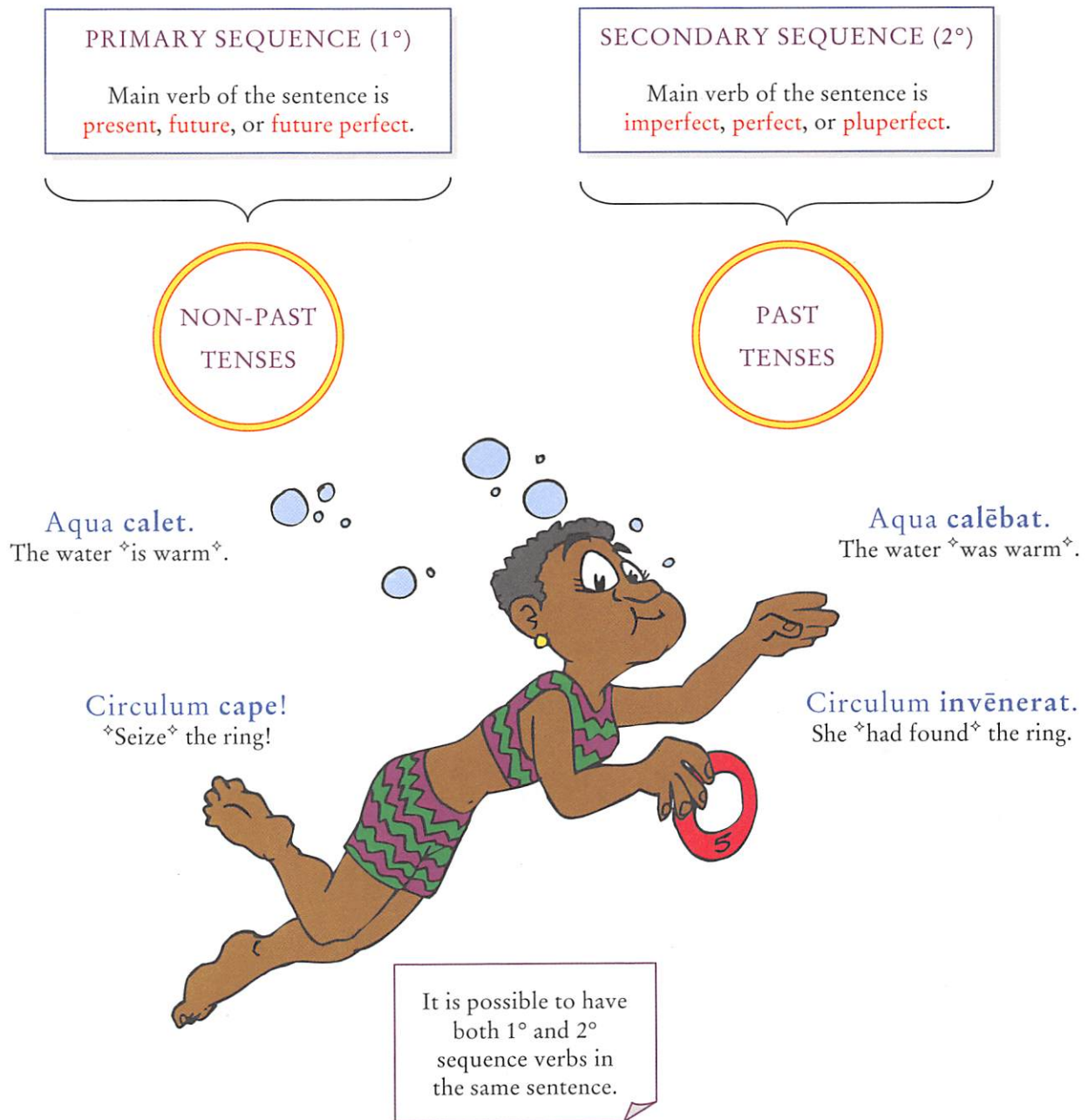
Sī perīculum veniat, **pugnem**.
If danger should come, **✧I would** fight[✧].

Sī in perīculō essēs, **tē iuvārem**.
If you were in danger, **✧I would** be helping[✧] you.

Nisi nāvēs dēlētāe essent, **effūgissētis**.
If the ships had not been destroyed, you (pl.) **✧would have** fled[✧].

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

PRIMARY VS. SECONDARY SEQUENCE

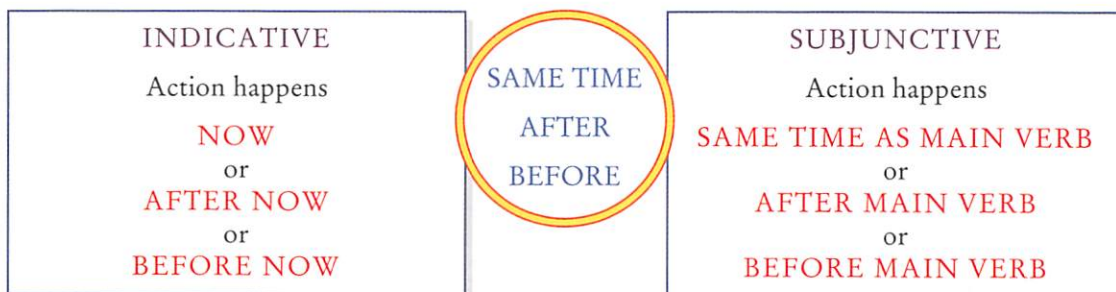


Secondary Clause Primary Clause

Ex agrīs ambulāvī et nunc in vīllam ambulō.
♦I walked♦ out of the fields and now ♦I am walking♦ into the house.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

SIGNIFICANCE OF SUBJUNCTIVE VERB TENSES



These translations apply to subjunctive verbs in **dependent** clauses.

MAIN VERB	DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE VERB	
	SAME TIME / AFTER (Incomplete at the time of the main verb)	BEFORE (Complete at the time of the main verb)
1° (Pertiary Sequence) Present Future Future Perfect	PRESENT SAME TIME - " <u>verbs</u> " AFTER - "will <u>verb</u> "	PERFECT BEFORE - " <u>verbed</u> "
2° (Secondary Sequence) Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	IMPERFECT SAME TIME - "was <u>verbing</u> " AFTER - "would <u>verb</u> "	PLUPERFECT BEFORE - "had <u>verbed</u> "

↓ Present & Imperfect ↓ Action happens at the same time as or after the main verb.	↓ Perfect & Pluperfect ↓ Action happened before the main verb.
--	--

Common sense and context clues will help you tell a "same time" situation from an "after" situation.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

TRANSLATING SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

Given an English sentence,
how do you **translate** the
dependent verb **into Latin**?

PRIMARY SEQUENCE

I ask why you are leaving .	SAME TIME	present subjunctive	rogō cūr abeās
I fear that you will leave .	AFTER	present subjunctive	timeō nē abeās
I do not know when you left .	BEFORE	perfect subjunctive	nesciō quandō abīverīs

SECONDARY SEQUENCE

I asked why you were leaving .	SAME TIME	imperfect subjunctive	rogāvī cūr abīrēs
I feared that you would leave .	AFTER	imperfect subjunctive	timēbam ne abīrēs
I did not know when you had left .	BEFORE	pluperfect subjunctive	nesciēbam quandō abīvissēs

Given a Latin sentence,
how do you **translate** the
dependent verb **into English**?

PRIMARY SEQUENCE

timeō nē abeās	present subjunctive	SAME TIME/ AFTER	I fear that you are leaving . I fear that you will leave .
nesciō quandō abīverīs	perfect subjunctive	BEFORE	I do not know when you left .

SECONDARY SEQUENCE

timēbam ne abīrēs	imperfect subjunctive	SAME TIME/ AFTER	I feared that you were leaving . I feared that you would leave .
nesciēbam quandō abīvissēs	pluperfect subjunctive	BEFORE	I did not know when you had left .



Cum animum fortem **habeās**, nihil tē terret.
Since *you have* a brave heart, nothing scares you.

NOTE:

Some dependent clauses (such as purpose clauses and indirect commands) have special translation rules.

When this book indicates that a dependent clause is translated "according to the sequence of tenses," no special rules are in place and the guidelines on this page should be followed.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC

Sequence of
Tenses:
"AFTER"

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC

Indicates that the action
in a dependent subjunctive clause
happens **after** the main verb.

Future Participle
(-ūrus, -a, -um)

+

(1°) sim, sis, sit. . . → **"WILL"**
(2°) essem, essēs, esset. . . → **"WOULD"**

Present or Imperfect
Subjunctive of
sum, esse

amātūrus sim
amātūrus essem

PRESENT & IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVES

Indicate that a dependent verb
happens at the **same time as or after**
the main verb. You must use context
clues to decide which option
makes more sense.

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC

Leaves **no doubt** that the action
happens **after** the main verb.

Must be **nominative**,
must **agree** with the
subject of the verb.

Nominative singular feminine
in agreement
with soror

Nesciēbās num soror pilam **ferītūra** esset.
You did not know if your sister **would** hit the ball.

Nominative singular
neuter in agreement
with quid

Nesciō quid **ēventūrum** sit.
I do not know what **will** happen.



DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



PURPOSE

UT
↓
so that
(POSITIVE)

PURPOSE CLAUSE

Indicates the **purpose** of the action performed in the main clause.

UT/NĒ

+
Present or Imperfect
Subjunctive

NĒ
↓
so that...not
(NEGATIVE)

...so that *subject*
MAY *verb*

1° → Use present subjunctive
and translate with “may.”

Iocōs dīcō ut rīdeās.
I tell jokes [◊]so that you **may** laugh[◊].

MAY
MIGHT

...so that *subject*
MIGHT *verb*

2° → Use imperfect subjunctive
and translate with “might.”

Iocōs dīxī ut rīdērēs.
I told jokes [◊]so that you **might** laugh[◊].

It is often possible
to use an alternate
translation for **nĒ**.

↓
“**LEST**”

Iocōs dīcō nĒ doleās.

I tell jokes [◊]so that you may **not** be sad[◊].
I tell jokes [◊]**lest** you be sad[◊].

If the main verb and
the dependent verb
have the **same subject**:

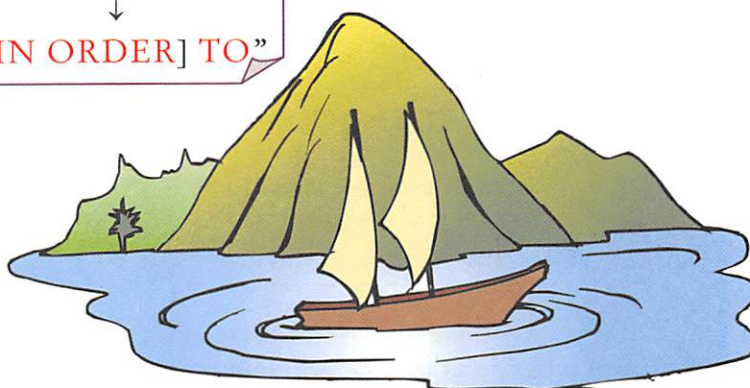
↓
“**[IN ORDER] TO**”

Hūc venimus ut requiēscāmus.

We come here [◊]so that we **may** relax[◊].
We come here [◊]**[in order]** to relax[◊].

Hūc vēnimus ut requiēscerēmus.

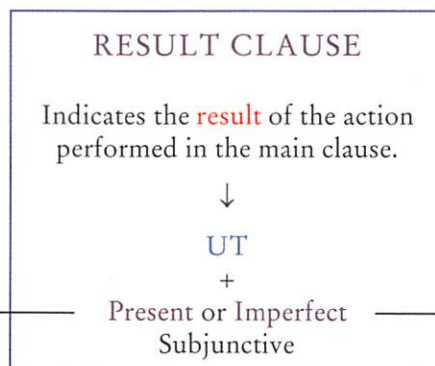
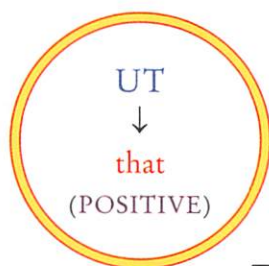
We came here [◊]so that we **might** relax[◊].
We came here [◊]**[in order]** to relax[◊].



DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



RESULT



...that subject
verbs

1° → Use present subjunctive.

Tam bonōs iocōs agō **ut** rīdeās.
I make such good jokes ♦that you laugh♦.

...that subject
verbed

2° → Use imperfect subjunctive.

Tam bonōs iocōs ēgī **ut** rīdērēs.
I made such good jokes ♦that you laughed♦.

VERB
VERBED

MAIN CLAUSE
will contain result clause “triggers” like these:

tot (so many)
tālis, tālis, tāle (such, of such a sort)
tantus, tanta, tantum (so much, so/such great, so/such large)
adeō (so, to such an extent) ita (so, in such a way)
tam (so) sic (in such a way)

Nē is not used
in result clauses.
Instead, nōn, nēmō,
nūllus, numquam, or
some other negative
word will appear
after ut.

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC

Can be used to express some
result that stretches into the
future: “will” / “would.”

Tālis es ut mē semper **terrītūrus** sīs.
You are of such a sort that you ♦will♦ always ♦frighten♦ me.



DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



RESULT – SUBSTANTIVE

efficiō ut + subjunctive → I bring it about that. . .

accidit ut + subjunctive → It happens that. . .

necesse est ut + subjunctive → It is necessary that. . .

Effēcistī ut laudārēris.

You brought it about ♦that you were praised♦.

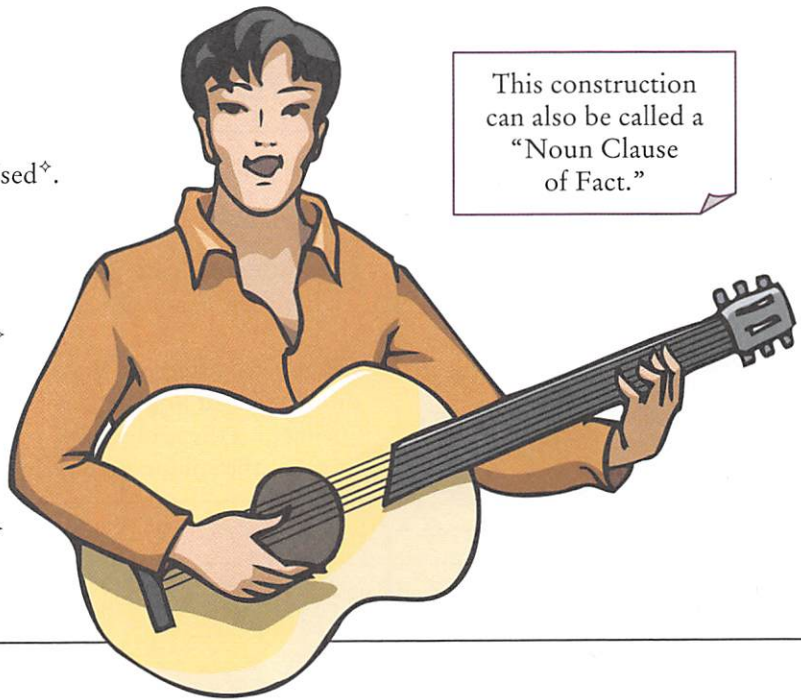
Accidit ut laudārēris.

It happened ♦that you were praised♦.

Necesse est ut laudēris.

It is necessary ♦that you be praised♦.

This construction can also be called a “Noun Clause of Fact.”



ACCIDIT is used *only* in the **3rd** person singular.

Be careful not to confuse the **present** and the **perfect**, which are identical.

Look at the tense of the subjunctive to determine whether the sentence is in primary or secondary **sequence**.

Present Subjunctive



Primary Sequence:
accidit must be **present**.

Accidit ut cibō careāmus.

♦It happens♦ that we are without food.

Imperfect Subjunctive



Secondary Sequence:
accidit must be **perfect**.

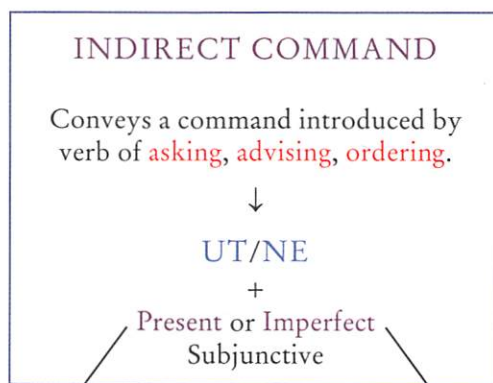
Accidit ut cibō carērēmus.

♦It happened♦ that we were without food.

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



INDIRECT COMMAND



1°

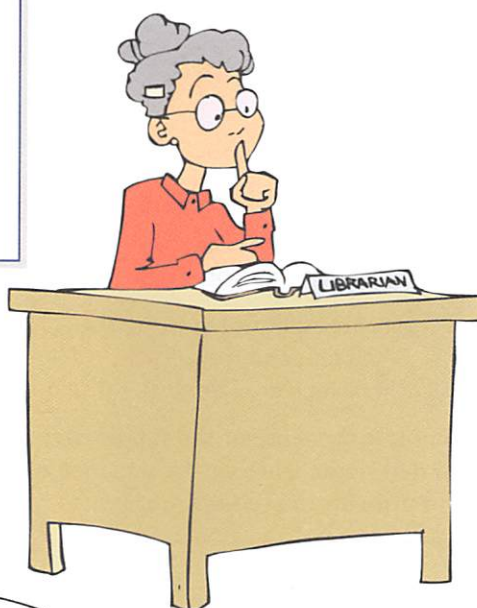
2°

No difference emerges in English between 1° and 2° sentences.

There is a difference that depends on whether or not the person being ordered is the same as the subject of the subjunctive verb.

PERSON ORDERED
=
SUBJUNCTIVE SUBJECT
↓
"TO"

PERSON ORDERED
≠
SUBJUNCTIVE SUBJECT
↓
"THAT"



=

Mē rogās ut taceam.
You ask me ♦to be silent♦.

≠

Rogās ut taceam.
You ask ♦that I be silent♦.

No person ordered

=

Vōbis orāvī nē vincerēminī.
I begged you (pl.) ♦not to be defeated♦.

≠

Deōs orāvī nē vincerēminī.
I begged the gods ♦that you (pl.) not be defeated♦.

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



INDIRECT COMMAND – INTRODUCTORY VERBS

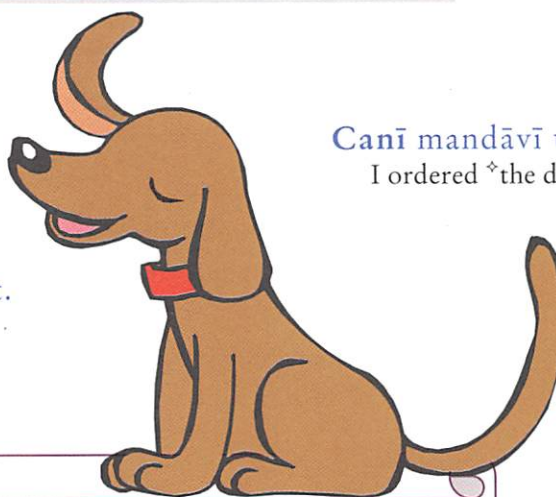
VERBS THAT TRIGGER INDIRECT COMMANDS

Some verbs that trigger indirect commands take the “person ordered” in the **dative**, some take the **accusative**, and others take **ā/ab + ablative**.

Canem rogāvī ut sedēret.
I asked *the dog* to sit.

Canī mandāvī ut sedēret.
I ordered *the dog* to sit.

Ā cane petīvī ut sedēret.
I asked *the dog* to sit.



VERBS THAT TRIGGER INDIRECT COMMANDS

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (to warn, advise)

ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus (to beg)

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus (to ask, ask for)

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus (to persuade)

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus (to order)

mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus (to order)

petō, petere, petīvī, petītus (to seek, ask)

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus (to seek; ask)

postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus (to demand, ask)

ACCUSATIVE

DATIVE

ā/ab
+
ABLATIVE

nōs rogābunt



they will ask *us*

nōbis imperāvit



he ordered *us*

ā nōbis petis



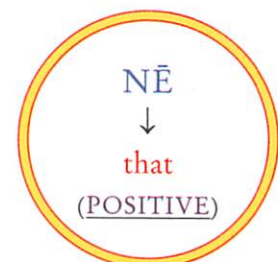
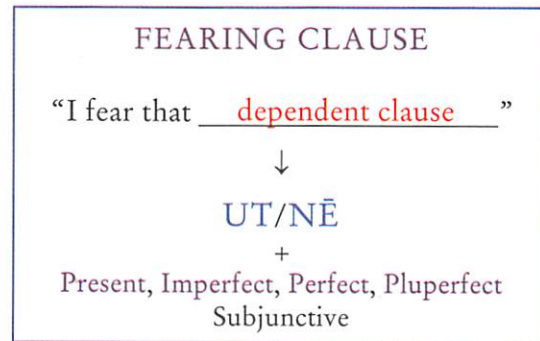
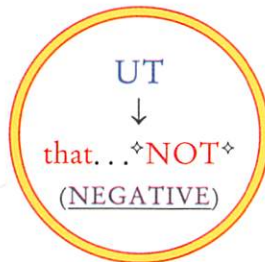
you ask *[of] us*

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES

FEAR

Present
Imperfect
Perfect
Pluperfect

Dependent



Translate
subjunctives
according to
**Sequence of
Tenses.**

FEARING CLAUSE TRIGGERS

timeō, timēre, timuī (to fear)
metuō, metuere, metuī (to fear)
vereor, verērī, veritus sum (to fear)
timōrem habēre (to have fear)
metum habēre (to have fear)



Timeō nē capiāris.

I fear [♦]that you are being captured[♦].
I fear [♦]that you will be captured[♦].

Timuī ut effugerēs.

I feared [♦]that you were not escaping[♦].
I feared [♦]that you would not escape[♦].

Timeō nē captus sīs.
I fear [♦]that you were captured[♦].

UT/NĒ REVERSAL

Nē → “That”
Ut → “That...not”

Nē sounds positive and ut sounds negative, but this is merely a convenient way of translating a Latin concept into English.

Timuī ut effūgissēs.
I feared [♦]that you had not escaped[♦].

Timeō nē capiātur.

Latin Concept

I am afraid...
may he **not**
be captured!

English Translation

I am afraid
that he will
be captured.

Timeō ut capiātur.

Latin Concept

I am afraid...
may he
be captured!

English Translation

I am afraid
that he will **not**
be captured.

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES

SUMMARY OF SUBJUNCTIVES USING *UT* AND *NĒ*

HORTATORY (Independent - Present)

"Let subject verb"
"Verb!"

No triggers

Never
uses *ut*

Discēdāmus.
Let us depart.

Discēdās.
Depart!

Nē discēdāmus.
Let us not depart.

Nē discēdās.
Do not depart!

PURPOSE (Dependent - Present & Imperfect)

"So that subject may/might verb"

No triggers

Veniō ut te videam.

I am coming so that I may see you.

Vēnī ut te vidērem.

I came so that I might see you.

RESULT (Dependent - Present & Imperfect, Active Periphrastic)

"that subject verbs/verb"
"that subject will/would verb"

Triggers: *tot, tantus, talis, sic, ita, tam,*
necesse est, accidit, efficiō

Never
uses *nē*

Tam fortis es ut tē laudēmus.

You are so brave that we praise you.

...ut tē laudātūrī sīmus. - ...that we will praise you.

Tam fortis erās ut tē laudārēm.

You were so brave that we praised you.

...ut tē laudātūrī essēmus. - ...that we would praise you.

Effēcī ut caperēris.

I brought it about that you were captured.

INDIRECT COMMAND (Dependent - Present & Imperfect)

"that subject verb"
"to verb"

Triggers: *imperō, persuādeō, mandō,*
moneō, ōrō, rogō, petō, postulō, quaerō

Imperō ut laborēs.
I order that you work.

Tibi imperō ut laborēs.
I order you to work.

Imperāvī ut laborārēs.
I ordered that you work.

Tibi imperāvī ut laborārēs.
I ordered you to work.

FEARING (Dependent - All Tenses)

"I fear that dependent clause"

Translate verb using Sequence of Tenses

Triggers: *timeō, metuō, vereor,*
timōrem habēre, metum habēre

ut
↓
not

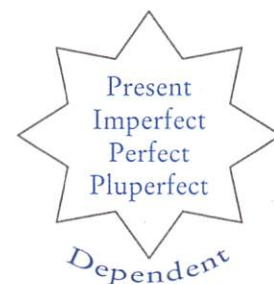
Timēs nē vincar. - You fear that I am being conquered.
...that I will be conquered.

Timēs nē victus sim. - You fear that I was conquered.

Timēbās nē vincerer. - You feared that I was being conquered.
...that I would be conquered.

Timēbās nē victus essem. - You feared that I had been conquered.

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



INDIRECT QUESTION

An indirect question *does not* have to have a question mark at the end!

INDIRECT QUESTION

Direct: Where are you going?
Indirect: I ask where you are going.



Begins with some interrogative word.
 (cūr, ubi, num, quis, quid)



Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect
 Subjunctive

Introduced by verbs of **saying, asking, knowing, perceiving**, etc.

Translate subjunctives according to **Sequence of Tenses**.

Rogāvī num hīc mānsūrus essēs annōn.

I asked *whether you would stay here or not*.

IMPORTANT INTERROGATIVES

quis, quid (who?, what?)

quī, quae, quod (what noun?)

quālis, quālis, quāle (of what sort?)

quantus, quanta, quantum (how much/great?)

quot (how many?)

cūr (why?)

quandō (when?)

quomodō (how?)

quō (where? [destination])

ubi (where? [location])

unde (where from?)

num (whether, if)

sive...sive (whether...or)

utrum...an (whether...or)

utrum...annōn (whether...or not)

utrum...necne (whether...or not)

Dīc unde vēnerīs et quō itūrus sīs.

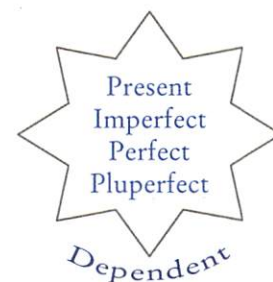
Say *where you came from and where you will go*.



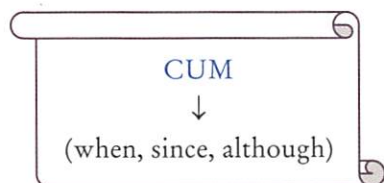
Nesciō cūr subrideās.

I do not know *why you are smiling*.

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



CUM CLAUSES

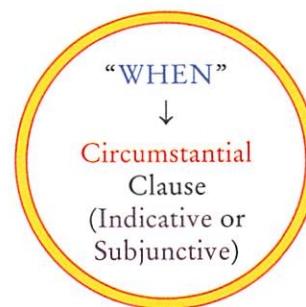
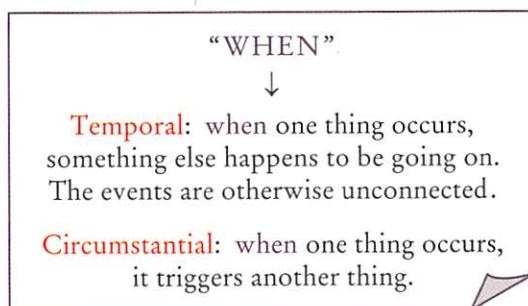
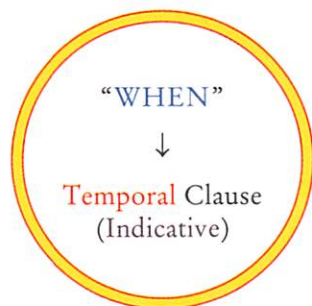


CUM CLAUSES

Cum can introduce a dependent clause with an **indicative** or a **subjunctive** verb.

Cum has several different meanings, and context will help you pick the right one.

Translate subjunctives according to **Sequence of Tenses**.



Cum advēnistī, salīre parābam.

◊When you arrived◊, I was preparing to jump.

Cum ades, minus timeō.

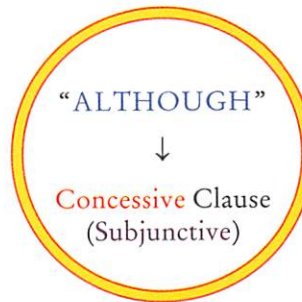
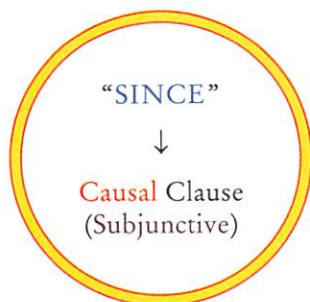
◊When you are near◊, I am less afraid.

1° - Indicative is used
2° - Subjunctive is used

Cum clauses may have **more than one valid interpretation**.

Cum adessēs, minus timēbam.

◊When you were near◊, I was less afraid



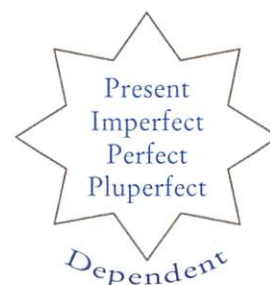
Cum adessēs, minus timēbam.

◊Since you were near◊, I was less afraid.

Cum magnopere timērem, saluī!

◊Although I was very afraid◊, I jumped.

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



CUM CLAUSES – TRANSLATION TIPS

If the **subject** of the **cum** clause is the **same** as the subject of the independent clause, the sentence may be structured as follows:

subject cum clause independent clause

Marcus [cum dēfessus esset] [currere dēbēbat].
Although Marcus was tired, he had to run.



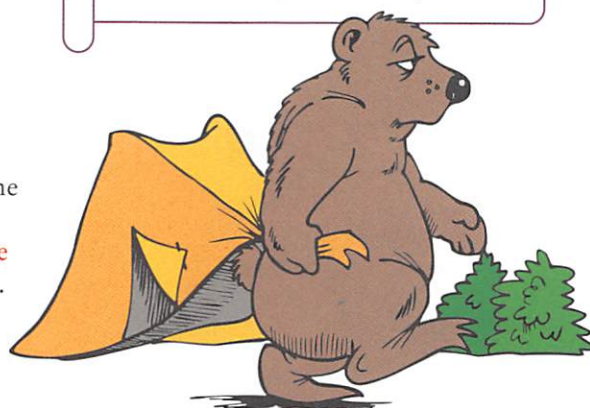
Sextus cum bene sē cēlāvisset āb amīcīs tamen inventus est.
Although Sextus had hidden himself well, he was nevertheless found by his friends.

cum (when, since, although)

tamen (nevertheless, yet, still)

tum (at that time)

Tamen often appears in the independent clause that accompanies a **concessive** (“although”) cum clause.



Tum may appear in the independent clause that accompanies a **temporal** (“when”) cum clause.

Cum timeāmus, ursum tamen spectāmus.
Although we are afraid, we [✧]still[✧] watch the bear.

Tum vigilābāmus cum ursus vēnit.
We were awake [✧]at that time[✧] when the bear came.

COMMON PHRASE

quae cum ita sint/essent



“since these things
are/were so”

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC – OVERVIEW



RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC

Relative clause that intends to **describe** the antecedent. Tells you **what kind of noun** the antecedent is.



quī, quae, quod



Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect
Subjunctive

Translate
subjunctives
according to
**Sequence of
Tenses.**

Often, no extra words
are necessary, but
sometimes it helps
to add:

THE SORT OF
or
WOULD

Antōnia est fēmina quae bēstiās amet.

Antonia is a woman *who likes animals*.

Antonia is *the sort of* woman *who likes animals*.



Antōniam, quae muscae numquam noceat, laudāmus.

We praise Antonia, *who would never hurt a fly*.

Antōnia erat fēmina quae nūllī animālī nocuisset.

Antonia was *the sort of* woman *who had not hurt any creature*.

INDICATIVE RELATIVE CLAUSE



Intends to relate **factual** information
about the antecedent.

SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC



Intends to describe **what kind of**
person/thing the antecedent is.

Vir quī pecūniam meam rapuit.
the man *who stole my money*

Vir quī pecūniam rapiat.
the sort of man *who steals money*

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES

Present
Imperfect
Perfect
Pluperfect

Dependent

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC – IMAGINED ANTECEDENTS

Clauses of Characteristic are used when the antecedent is an **imagined** noun because the indicative is allowed only in concrete, definite situations.

IMAGINED NOUN

A person, place, or thing which **may or may not actually exist**,

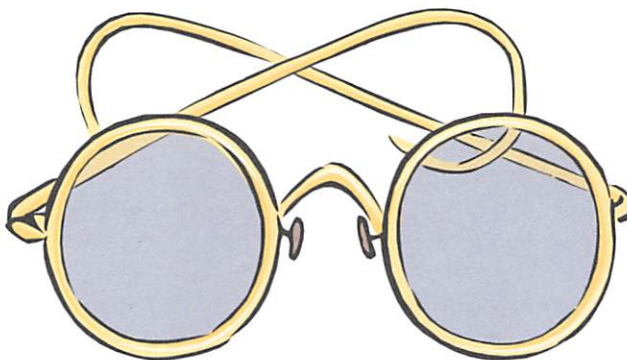
OR

An **unspecified / generalized** person, place, or thing.

Amicum petis cui cōfīdere possīs.
You are looking for a friend ♦whom you can trust♦.



Hominēs melius vident quī quattuor oculōs habeant.
People ♦who have four eyes♦ see better.



DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC – COMMON PHRASES

est [is] quī

he is **the sort of person who...**
there is **one who...**

↓
(A form of is, ea, id
may or may not appear).

Pīrāta est quī avēs amet.

The pirate ♦is the sort of person who♦ likes birds.

sunt [eī] quī

they are **the sort of people who...**
there are **some who...**

↓
(A form of is, ea, id
may or may not appear).

Sunt eī quī avēs dēspiciant.

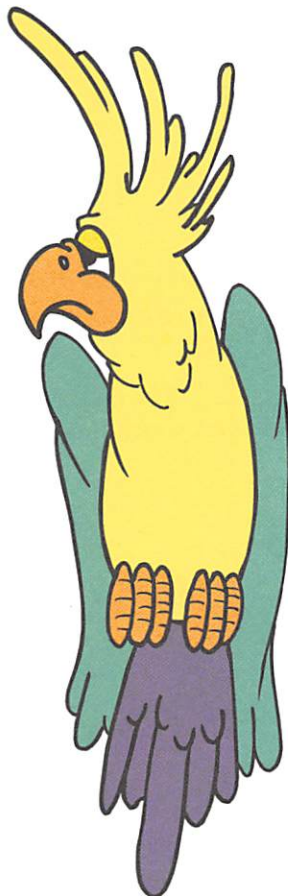
♦There are those who♦ despise birds.

quis est quī
sōlus est quī
ūnus est quī

who is there who...
he is the **only one who...**
there is **one who...**

Quis erat quī avēs timēret?

♦Who was there who♦ feared birds?



NEGATIVE ANTECEDENTS

In addition to “imagined”
antecedents (see p. 246),
relative clauses of characteristic
are also used to describe
“**negative**” antecedents
(no one, nothing, etc.).

nēmō est quī
nihil est quod
nūllus est quī

there is **no one who...**
there is **nothing which...**
there is **no _____ who/which...**

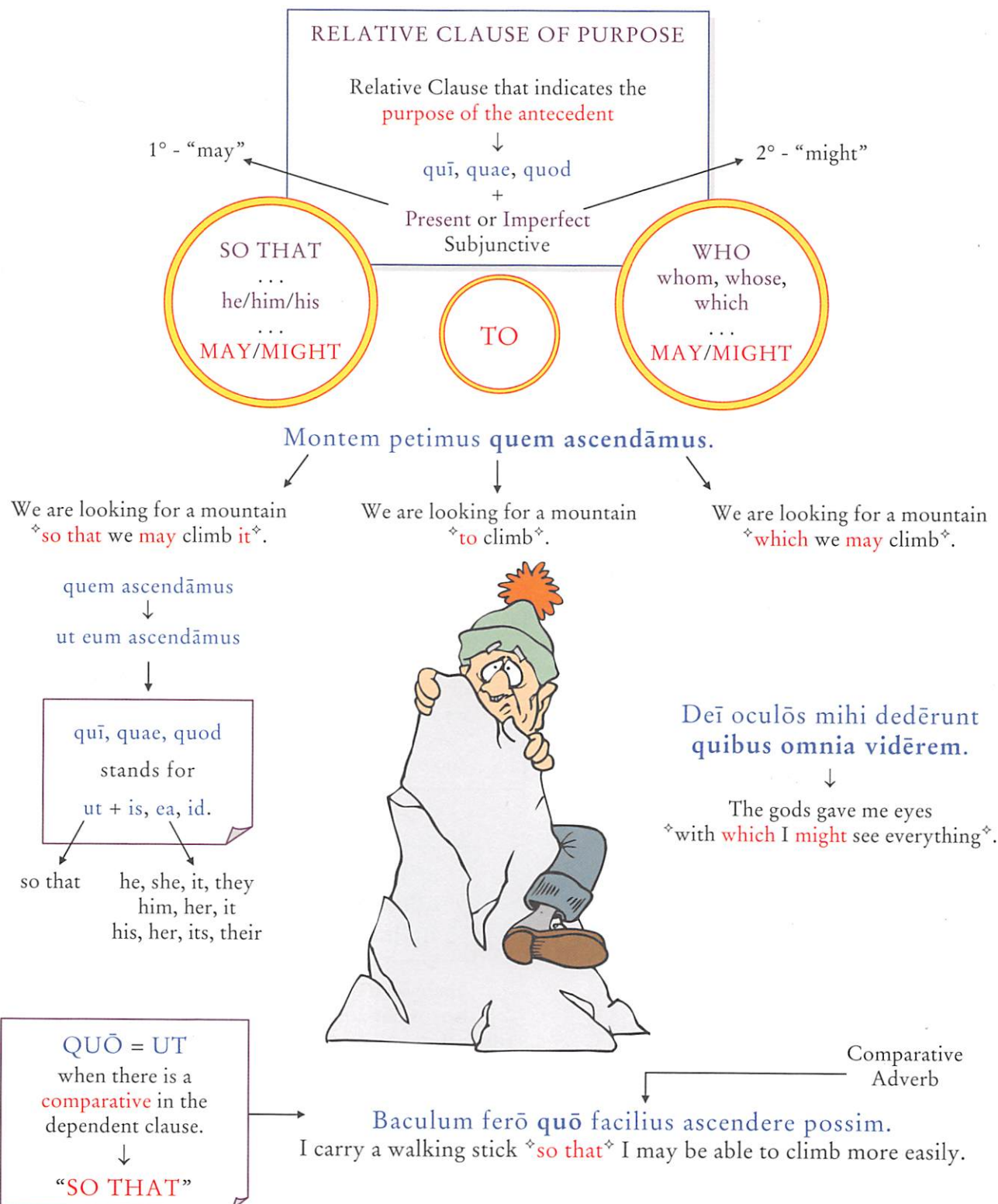
Nēmō erat quī avibus nocēre vellet.

♦There was no one who♦ wanted to harm the birds.

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE



DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



DEPENDENT CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

DEPENDENT CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

If a dependent clause appears as part of an indirect **statement, command, or question**:



Verb is **subjunctive**.



Translate according to the **sequence of tenses**.

COMMON DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Clauses that start with “**who/whom/whose/which**,” “**because**,” “**when**,” “**where**,” etc.

The subjunctive verb indicates when the action happens **relative to the main** (independent) verb.



Rogō {num fēmina illa virō [quī cum eā sedeat] nūpserit}.

I ask if that woman married the man [✱]who is sitting with her[✱].

(Relative clause within an Indirect Question)

RELATIVE CLAUSES

Be careful to determine whether a **subjunctive** verb appears in a relative clause simply because the clause is in **indirect discourse** or because the subjunctive is needed to indicate **characteristic** or **purpose**.

(See pp. 245-248)

Tē ōrāvī {ut fēminam invenīrēs [quae idōnea mihi esset]}.

I begged you to find a woman [✱]who would be suitable for me[✱].

(Relative clause of Characteristic within an Indirect Command)

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USES



ANTICIPATORY

ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive is used to express **anticipated/expected** actions introduced by “before” and “until.”

Event is **anticipated** and **prevented**.

“**COULD**”

An event is simply **anticipated**.
Its fulfillment is expected, but has not happened yet.

“**SHOULD**”

1. I left [before you **could** say another word].
2. I decided to flee [before you **should** arrive].
3. Search [until you **should** find the answer].

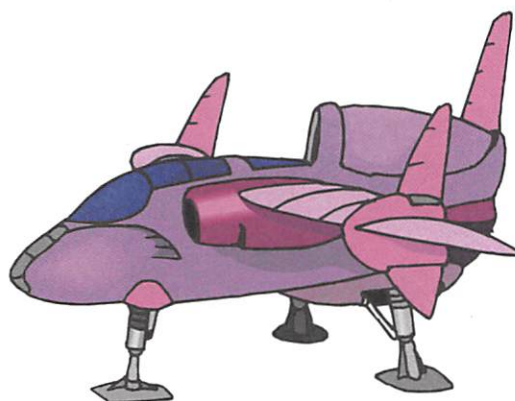
{ **antequam** (before)
priusquam (before)

Appear only with the imperfect subjunctive.

dum (until)

Appears with the present and the imperfect subjunctive.

Lūnae delētae sunt priusquam ad eas pervenīrēmus.
The moons were destroyed before *we **could** reach* them.



Per stēllās errābimus dum domum novam invenīāmus.
We will wander through the stars until *we **should** find* a new home.

NOTE:

priusquam & **antequam** may be written as **prius...quam** and **ante...quam**.

Prius effūgī quam mē caperēs.
I fled *before* you could catch me.

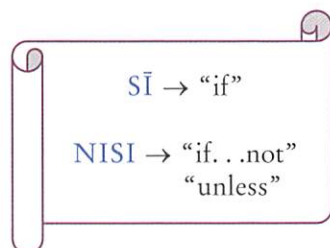
NOTE:

dum + indicative → while
dum + subjunctive → until

CONDITIONS



THE PARTS OF A CONDITION



IF you are Julius Caesar, **THEN** I am Mickey Mouse!

PROTASIS
(Dependent
Clause)

APODOSIS
(Independent
Clause)

INDICATIVE CONDITIONS

Present
Indicatives

SIMPLE PRESENT CONDITION

Sī gaudēs, gaudeō.
If you rejoice, I rejoice.

Imperfect
or
Perfect
Indicatives

SIMPLE PAST CONDITION

Sī dīcēbātis, audiēbāmus.
If you were speaking, we were listening.

Sī pugnāvistī, vīcistī.
If you fought, you won.

Future
or
Future Perfect
Indicatives

SIMPLE FUTURE CONDITION (FUTURE MORE VIVID)

Sī veniēs, gaudēbimus.
If you *come*, we will rejoice.

Sī capta eris, omnia āmiserimus.
If you *are captured*, we will have lost everything.

Sī dīcēs, audiam.
If you speak, I will listen.

In English,
Future & Future Perfect
verbs in the protasis
are translated as if
they were present.
(No will/will have
after “if.”)



CONDITIONS

SUBJUNCTIVE CONDITIONS

Present
Imperfect
Pluperfect
Subjunctive

Independent
+
Dependent

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITION

(Protasis **may** or **may not** end up happening.)

PRESENT
Subjunctive

+

PRESENT
Subjunctive

↓

"if I **SHOULD** verb"

↓

"then I **WOULD** verb"

PRESENT
Subjunctives
should/would

Sī ventus flet, cadat arbor.

If the wind [◊]should blow[◊], the tree [◊]would fall[◊].

PRESENT CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION

(Implies that the protasis **is not being fulfilled** right now.)

IMPERFECT
Subjunctive

+

IMPERFECT
Subjunctive

↓

"if I **WERE** verbING"
"if I verbED"

↓

"then I **WOULD** verb"
"then I **WOULD BE** verbING"

IMPERFECT
Subjunctives
were/would

*Sī meliōrem secūrem habērem,
auxilium nōn dēsīderārem.*

If I [◊]owned[◊] a better axe,
I [◊]would[◊] not [◊]need[◊] help.

*Sī plūrēs virī labōrārent,
arbor nōn iam stāret.*

If more men [◊]were working[◊],
the tree no longer [◊]would be standing[◊].

PAST CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION

(Implies that the protasis **was not fulfilled** in the past.)

PLUPERFECT
Subjunctive

+

PLUPERFECT
Subjunctive

↓

"if I **HAD** verbED"

↓

"then I **WOULD HAVE** verbED"

PLUPERFECT
Subjunctives
had/would have

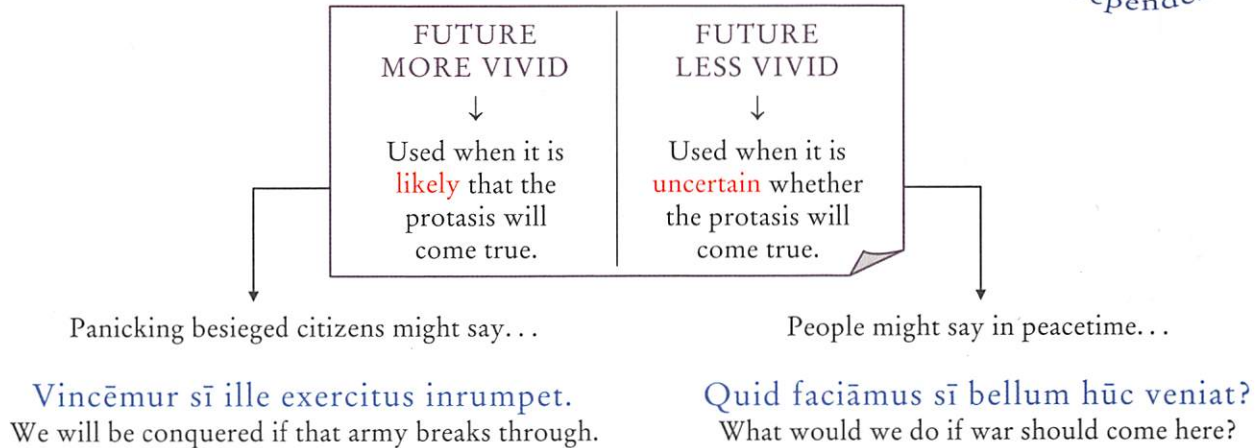
Nisi secūrem tūlisset, arbor nōn cecidisset.

If I [◊]had not brought[◊] my axe, the tree [◊]would not have fallen[◊].

CONDITIONS



FUTURE CONDITIONS



MIXED CONDITIONS & SUBSTITUTIONS

MIXED CONDITIONS
Combination of one type of **protasis** and a **different** type of **apodosis**.

Sī dēlicuissem, dolērēs!
If I [✧]had melted[✧], you [✧]would be sad[✧]!
(Past Contrary to Fact Protasis
+
Present Contrary to Fact Apodosis)



SUBSTITUTIONS

Imperatives and **ablative absolutes** may take the place of one element of the condition.

Sī sōlem videās, fuge!
If you [✧]should see[✧] the sun, [✧]flee[✧]!
(Future Less Vivid Protasis
+
Imperative Apodosis)

Sōle fulgente, dēlicuissem.

[✧]With the sun shining[✧], I would have melted.
[✧]If the sun had shone[✧], I would have melted.

(Ablative Absolute Protasis
+
Past Contrary to Fact Apodosis)

In addition to *sī* & *nisi*, **ablative absolutes** can express "if".

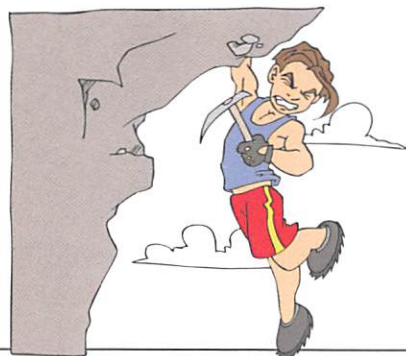
Sōle fulgente, dēliquēscam.

[✧]With the sun shining[✧], I would melt.
[✧]If the sun should shine[✧], I would melt.

(Ablative Absolute Protasis
+
Future Less Vivid Apodosis)

GERUNDS

GERUNDS
are
NOUNS.



GERUND

"Verbal Noun"

A **verb** form
that acts as a **noun**:

"**verb**ING"

Connor has no fear **of falling**.

Verb "to fall" acts
as a **genitive noun**.

Do not confuse the gerund
with the present participle!

Participle = **Adjective**
Gerund = **Noun**

Peter hears Joe **talking**.
(Adjective modifying Joe)

He expresses himself **by talking**.
(Ablative noun)

Gerunds are
singular
2nd Declension
neuter nouns.

rogandī
rogandō
rogandum
rogandō

*The nominative gerund
is never actually used.

FORMING GERUNDS

Present Stem of Verb
+
Connector Vowel
+
-NDUM



GERUND FORMS

1st Conj.	rogandum	→ asking
2nd Conj.	docendum	→ teaching
3rd Conj.	mittendum	→ sending
3rd -IO	capiendum	→ seizing
4th Conj.	audiendum	→ hearing

Nōs **cantandō** dēlectās.
You delight us *by sing**ing**.*

Gerunds sometimes take **direct**
objects, though a gerundive
construction is more common.
(See pp. 256-257)

Amorem **carmina cantandī** habeo.
I have a love *of sing**ing** songs*.

GERUND CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1	2
3	4
(i)e	ie



GERUNDIVES

GERUNDIVES
are
ADJECTIVES
and their job is to
modify nouns.

GERUNDIVES (Future Passive Participle)

Present Stem of Verb
+
Connector Vowel
+
-NDUS, -A, -UM
↓
“TO BE verbED”

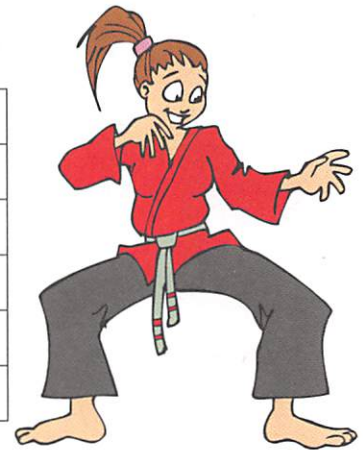
GERUNDIVE CONNECTOR VOWELS

a	e
1	2
3	4
(i)e	ie

-NDUS
↓
TO BE
VERBED

Be careful not
to confuse the
gerundive with
the passive
infinitive!
The **gerundive**
is an **adjective**!

GERUNDIVE FORMS		
1st Conj.	rogandus, -a, -um	→ to be asked
2nd Conj.	docendus, -a, -um	→ to be taught
3rd Conj.	mittendus, -a, -um	→ to be sent
3rd -IO	capiendus, -a, -um	→ to be seized
4th Conj.	audiendus, -a, -um	→ to be heard



Ā puellā **timendā** dēfendēbāmur.
We were being defended by a girl [♦]to be feared[♦].
(Gerundive modifying puellā)

Timērī vult.
She wants [♦]to be feared[♦].
(Passive Infinitive)

VERBING THE NOUN

“VERBING THE NOUN”

Gerundive + Noun
is more commonly translated:

“VERBING THE NOUN”

The noun that
the gerundive
modifies **receives**
the action of the
gerundive.

tabulārum frangendārum
of breaking the boards
(Genitive Plural)

“VERBING THE NOUN”

↓
Verbal phrase which acts as a
noun in Latin

tabulīs frangendīs
by breaking the boards
(Ablative Plural)

Tabulā frangendā artem ostendis.
You show your skill [♦]by breaking the board[♦].

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

“VERBING THE NOUN”

GERUND VS. GERUNDIVE

Both the gerund and the gerundive can be used to express “verbing the noun.”

The **gerund** must be used for **special object** verbs.

Gerund + Noun

Form of Noun

↓
Accusative or
special object case.

mātrē **honōrandō**
by honoring mother

↓
Ablative Gerund
+
Accusative Direct Object

mātrī **placendō**
by pleasing mother
↓
Ablative Gerund
+
Special Object Noun
(Placeō takes a dative object.)



Gerundive + Noun

Form of Noun

↓
Same form
as gerundive.

mātrē **honōrandā**
by honoring mother

↓
Ablative Gerundive
+
Ablative Noun

The **gerundive** is the **most common** way to express “verbing the noun.”

In general, a gerund may take an accusative object only if it appears in the genitive or in the ablative without a preposition.

GERUND
is a
Noun

↓
2nd declension
neuter noun
endings only

You can remember that the **gerundive** **modifies** a noun and that the **gerund** **does not** by recalling that the gerundive is an adjective.

GERUNDIVE
is an
Adjective

↓
2-1-2 adjective
endings
(all genders)

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

CASE USES

CAUSĀ/GRĀTIĀ

+
GENITIVE

↓
For the sake of

NOTE:

Causā and grātiā mean “for the sake of” only if they are in the **ablative** case.

Gerund without object → verbing

Gerund with object → verbing the noun

Gerundive + Noun → verbing the noun

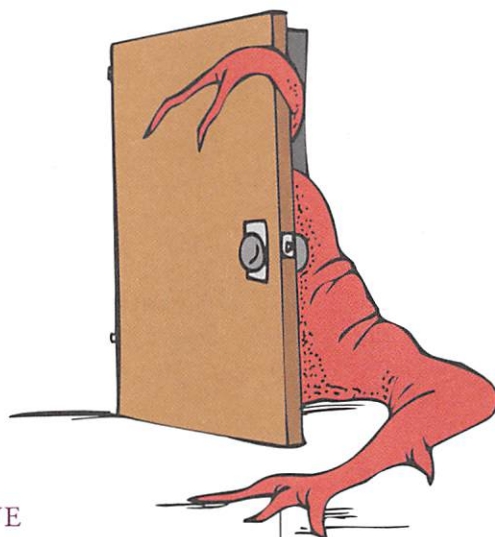
AD

+
ACCUSATIVE

↓
For the purpose of

ACCUSATIVE NOTE:

When “verbing” acts as a direct object (She loves sailing), the infinitive is used instead of an accusative gerund or gerundive.



GENITIVE

↓
“OF verbing [the noun]”

Timōrem mōnstrī videndī habēs. (Gerundive)
You have a fear *of seeing the monster*.

Inimīcōs vincendī causā surgis. (Gerund)
You get up *for the sake of conquering enemies*.

CAUSĀ/GRĀTIĀ + Genitive:
FOR THE SAKE OF

ACCUSATIVE

↓
Object of Preposition

Ad omnēs servandōs vigilā. (Gerundive)
Stay awake *for the purpose of saving everyone*.

Ad vincendum vēnistī! (Gerund)
You came *for the purpose of conquering*.

AD + Accusative:
FOR THE PURPOSE OF

DATIVE

↓
“TO/FOR verbing [the noun]”

Mōnstrō vincendō operam das. (Gerundive)
You devote effort *to conquering the monster*.

Arma mea vincendō idōnea sunt. (Gerund)
My weapons are suitable *for conquering*.

ABLATIVE

↓
“BY/WITH verbing [the noun]”
Object of Preposition

Dē mōnstrō vincendō somniās. (Gerundive)
You dream *about conquering the monster*.

Vincendō fāmam augēbis. (Gerund)
You will increase your fame *by conquering*.

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

STANDARD

MUST BE
VERBED

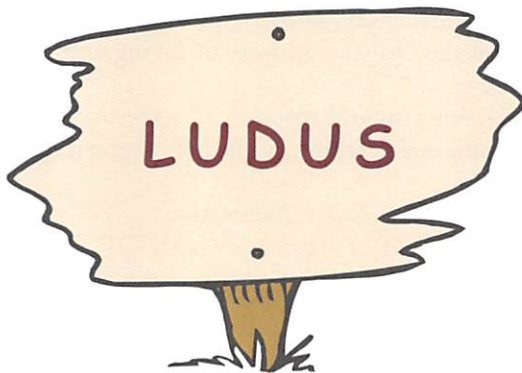
NOMINATIVE NOUN
+
GERUNDIVE
(agreeing with nominative noun)
+
SUM, ES, EST...
↓
“Noun **MUST BE** verbed.”

sum, es, est...
↓
must
—
eram, erās, erat...
↓
had to
—
erō, eris, erit...
↓
will have to

Nominative plural neuter
↓
Gerundive: nominative plural neuter agreeing with **signa**
↓
3rd Plural: because the subject **signa** is a “they”
↓
Signa legenda sunt.
Signs **must be** read.

Gerundive: nominative singular agreeing with “you.”
-us indicates that the “you” is masculine.
↓
Dūcendus erās.
You **had to be** led.

2nd Singular: indicates that the subject is “you”.
↓
No Nominative is necessary.



INDIRECT STATEMENT
According to the rules of indirect statement...
nominative sum/eram/erō
↓ ↓
accusative esse/fuisse/futūrum esse
↓
Dīcō discipulās docendās esse.
I say that the students **must be** taught.

LITERAL MEANING

Note that the passive periphrastic treats the gerundive as an adjective meaning “to be verbed.”
(See p. 255)

Signa legenda sunt.
The signs are **to be** read.
↓
The signs **must be** read.

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

STANDARD – WITH DATIVE OF AGENT

DATIVE OF AGENT

Standard Passive Periphrastic

+

Dative noun

↓

Something must be done “**BY** *dative*.”

↓

Can be translated
into English
two different ways.

#1

MUST BE
VERBED BY
DATIVE

PASSIVE PHRASING

Nominative
must be verbed
BY dative.

Titus must be calmed down **by us**.

Titus *plācandus* est.
Titus must be calmed down.

↓

Titus **nōbis** *plācandus* est.



#2

DATIVE
MUST
VERB

ACTIVE PHRASING

Dative
must verb
nominative.

We must calm Titus down.

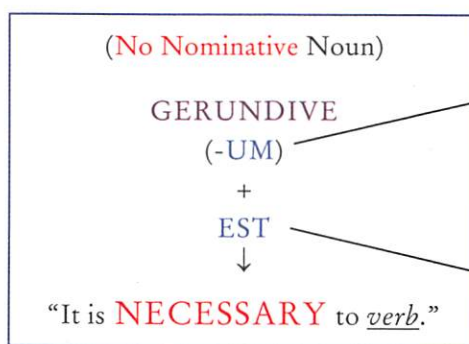
Rogāvī cūr Titus **tibi** adligandus esset.

I asked why Titus had to be tied up **by you**.

I asked why **you had to** tie up Titus.

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

IMPERSONAL



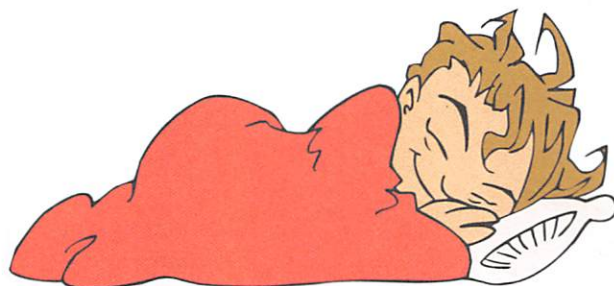
Neuter
Nominative
Singular

Verb must be
3rd person
singular.



Dormiendum erit.

✧It will be **necessary** to sleep✧.



WITH
DATIVE
OF AGENT

Quīntō dormiendum erit.

It will be necessary ✧for Quintus✧ to sleep.
✧Quintus✧ will have to sleep.

STANDARD PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

Nominative Noun
+
Declined Gerundive
+
sum, es, est...
↓
"Noun **must be** verbed."

Pizza edenda est.
Pizza must be eaten.



IMPERSONAL PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

Gerundive (-um)
+
est
↓
"It is **necessary** to verb."

Edendum est.
It is necessary to eat.

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

WITH SPECIAL OBJECT VERBS

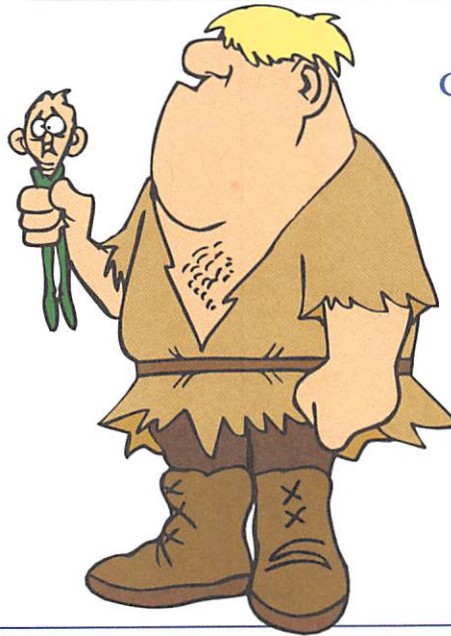
MUST BE
VERBED

NOUN
(Special Object Case)
+
GERUNDIVE
(-UM)
+
EST
↓
“Noun **MUST BE** verbed.”

NEW RULES!

Verbs that take
genitive, dative, or
ablative objects use
an **impersonal** passive
periphrastic to express
“noun must be
verbed.”

It is very important
to notice whether
you are dealing with
a **standard** verb or a
special object verb!!



Captīvōrum miserendum est.

✧The captives✧ must be pitied.
(Misereor takes a genitive.)

Versūtiā ūtendum erat.

✧Cunning✧ had to be used.
(Ūtor takes an ablative.)

Tibi resistendum erit.

✧You✧ will have to be resisted.
(Resistō takes a dative.)

AGENCY WITH SPECIAL OBJECT VERBS

Genitive / Ablative
Special Object → **DATIVE**
of agent

Dative
Special Object → **ABLATIVE**
of agent

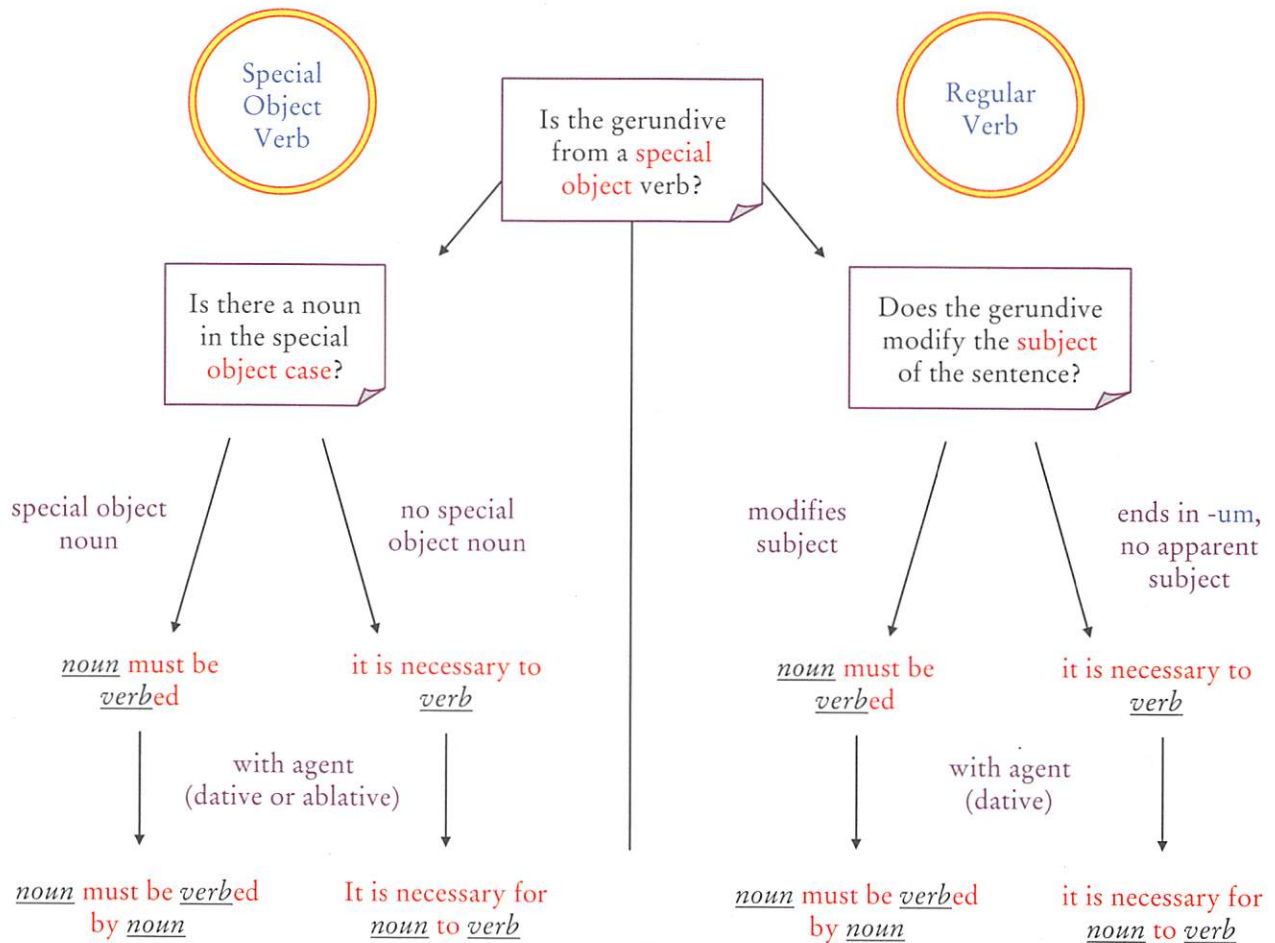
Versūtiā mihi ūtendum erat.
Cunning had to be used ✧by me✧.

Tibi ā mē resistendum erit.
You will have to be resisted ✧by me✧.

Captīvōrum tibi miserendum est.
The captives must be pitied ✧by you✧.

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC

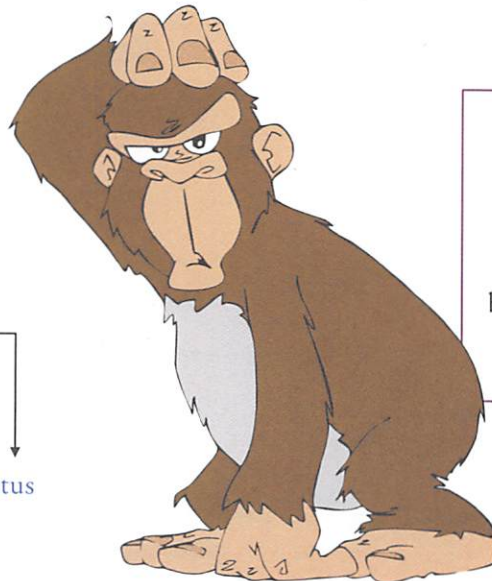
TRANSLATION TIPS



Bēstiae nōbis amandae sunt.
Animals must be loved by us.

Bēstiīs ā nōbis favendum erat.
Animals had to be favored by us.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautus
(to favor) + dat.



-UM
↓
Gerundives ending in -um may signal an impersonal construction, but they might also simply be modifying a singular neuter noun!

SUPINE FORMS AND SYNTAX

ACCUSATIVE
-UM

SUPINE

4th Principal Part
with

-um (accusative)

or

-ū (ablative)

↓

"TO *verb*"

ABLATIVE
-Ū

SUPINE IN -UM

↓

Expresses **purpose**.

In general, verbs of
motion trigger an
accusative supine.

Lūsum vēnistī.
You came [♦]to play[♦].

Accusative
supines can
have direct
objects.

Mātrēm terrītum vēnistī.
You came [♦]to scare your mother[♦].

The supine in -um
looks just like the
perfect passive participle.

In this case, try translating
as a participle first, but if that
just does not seem to make
sense, remember that the
supine is an option.

The trick to the supine is
remembering that it exists.



SUPINE IN -Ū

↓

Involved in phrases like:
"wondrous **to** see!"
"it is unlawful **to** do!"

Ablative
supines
cannot have
direct objects.

Persōnam terribilem vīsū in ludō gerēbās.
At school you were wearing a mask terrible [♦]to see[♦].

Hoc nefās est factū!
This is unlawful [♦]to do[♦]!

WORDS THAT TRIGGER THE ABLATIVE SUPINE

mirābilis, -e (wondrous)

terribilis, -e (terrible)

facilis, -e (easy)

difficilis, -e (difficult)

nefās est (it is unlawful)

fās est (it is lawful)

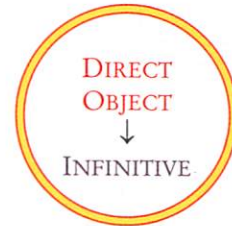
opus est (it is necessary)

TRANSLATING “TO”



Errāre est hūmānum.
♦To err♦ is human.

WHAT ROLE
does “to verb”
play in the sentence?



Omnia **scīre** volō.
I want ♦to know♦ everything.



Tē Rōmam **venīre** iubeō.
I order you ♦to come♦ to Rome.

Iubeō triggers an
infinitive, but other
verbs trigger an
indirect command
subjunctive.



Tibi ōrō ut Rōmam **veniās**.
I beg you ♦to come♦ to Rome.



Vēnī ut tē **vidērem**.
I came ♦to see♦ you.



Ad tē **videndum** vēnī.
I came ♦to see♦ you.



Tē **vīsum** vēnī.
I came ♦to see♦ you.

Subjunctive	Gerund(ive)	Supine
Purpose Clause	ad + Accusative	Accusative

IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

The passive voice can be used to indicate that verbing occurs without specifying any particular subject.

There are a number of possible phrasings:

“verbING OCCURS/TAKES PLACE”

“THERE IS verbING”

Difficile est vāsa pulchra fōrmāre, sed dīlīgenter cotīdiē labōrātur.
It is difficult to fashion beautiful vessels, but *working* carefully *takes place* every day.

PERFECT SYSTEM

In the perfect system of tenses, the neuter ending -um is used on the 4th principal part.

In lūdō dē multīs rēbus doctum est.
There was teaching about many things in school.

ACTIVE PHRASING

Often, impersonal passives can be phrased in the active.

You must rely on **context** to help you determine the most likely subject.

Difficile discipulīs est, sed dīlīgenter labōrātur.
It is difficult for the students, but *they work* carefully.



ALTERNATE FORMS

2ND PERSON SINGULAR PASSIVE PERSONAL ENDING

-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur

-ris

=

-re

(rogāberis)

(rogābere)

↓

✧You will be asked✧

3RD PERSON PLURAL PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

-ī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -erunt

-erunt

=

-ere

(rogāverunt)

(rogāvere)

↓

✧They asked✧

Frāgīsne dēlectāre, soror?
Are you delighted by strawberries, sister?

(dēlectāre = dēlectāris)

↓

The -re form is tricky:
in the present tense it often
looks the same as the present
active infinitive.

Omnia frāga devōrāvere.
✧They devoured✧ all the strawberries.

(devōrāvere = devōrāverunt)

SUM, ESSE, FUI, FUTURUS FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

futurus esse = fore

Sciō Rōmānōs potentissimōs fore.
I know that the Romans ✧will be✧ very powerful.

(fore = futūrōs esse)

SUM, ESSE, FUI, FUTURUS IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

essem,

etc.

=

forem,

etc.

essem, essēs, esset,
essēmus, essētis, essent

forem, forēs, foret,
forēmus, forētis, forent

Rogāvī num potentissimī forētis.
I asked if you (pl.) ✧would be✧ very powerful.

(fōrētis = essētis)



APPENDIX A

NOUN, ADJECTIVE, AND PRONOUN FORMS

FIRST Declension	SECOND Declension Masculine	SECOND Declension Neuter	THIRD Declension Masc./Fem.	THIRD Declension Neuter	THIRD I-STEM Masc./Fem.	THIRD I-STEM Neuter
-a -ae	-us/-ius, -r -ī	-um -a	----- -ēs	----- -a	----- -ēs	----- -ia
-ae -ārum	-ī -ōrum	-ī -ōrum	-is -um	-is -um	-is -ium	-is -ium
-ae -īs	-ō -īs	-ō -īs	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus
-am -ās	-um -ōs	-um -a	-em -ēs	----- -a	-em -īs / -ēs	----- -ia
-ā -īs	-ō -īs	-ō -īs	-e -ibus	-e -ibus	-e -ibus	-ī -ibus
-a -ae	-e/-ī, -r -ī	-um -a	----- -ēs	----- -a	----- -ēs	----- -ia

FOURTH Declension Masculine	FOURTH Declension Neuter	FIFTH Declension
-us -ūs	-ū -ua	-ēs -ēs
-ūs -uum	-ūs -uum	-eī -ērum
-uī -ibus	-ū -ibus	-eī -ēbus
-um -ūs	-ū -ua	-em -ēs
-ū -ibus	-ū -ibus	-ē -ēbus
-us -ūs	-ū -ua	-ēs -ēs

2-1-2
ADJECTIVES
use the same forms
as 1st and 2nd
declension
nouns.

THIRD Declension ADJECTIVE			
----- -ēs	----- -ia	----- -ēs	----- -ia
-is -ium	-is -ium	-is -ium	-is -ium
-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus
-em -īs / -ēs	----- -ia	-em -īs / -ēs	----- -ia
-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus
----- -ēs	----- -ia	----- -ēs	----- -ia

PERSONAL PRONOUNS (1st and 2nd Person)				REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (1st, 2nd, 3rd Person)					
<u>I</u>	<u>You</u>	<u>We</u>	<u>You (pl.)</u>	<u>Myself</u>	<u>Yourself</u>	<u>Ourselves</u>	<u>Yourselves</u>	<u>Himself</u>	<u>Themselves</u>
ego	tū	nōs	vōs	---	---	---	---	---	---
meī	tuī	nostrum/-ī	vestrum/-ī	meī	tuī	nostrum/-ī	vestrum/-ī	suī	suī
mihi	tibi	nōbis	vōbis	mihi	tibi	nōbis	vōbis	sibi	sibi
mē	tē	nōs	vōs	mē	tē	nōs	vōs	sē	sē
mē	tē	nōbis	vōbis	mē	tē	nōbis	vōbis	sē	sē

HIC, HAEC, HOC (THIS/THESE)						ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD (THAT/THOSE)						IS, EA, ID (THIS/THESE, THAT/THOSE)					
hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

QUĪ, QUAE, QUOD (Relative Pronoun/Interrogative Adjective)						QUIS, QUID (Interrogative Pronoun)					
quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae	
cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae	
quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

VERB FORMS

CHARACTERISTICS OF VERBS:

- **Person:** first, second, third
- **Number:** singular, plural
- **Voice:** active, passive
- **Mood:** indicative, imperative, infinitive, subjunctive, participle
- **Tense:** see chart below...

VERB TENSES						
	Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
Indicative	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Imperative	✓		✓			
Infinitive	✓		✓	✓		
Subjunctive	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Participle	✓		✓	✓		

PRESENT STEM (from 2 nd principal part)	PERFECT STEM (from 3 rd principal part)	PARTICIPIAL STEM (from 4 th principal part)
Indicative: Present Active & Passive Imperfect Active & Passive Future Active & Passive	Indicative: Perfect Active Pluperfect Active Future Perfect Active	Indicative: Perfect Passive Pluperfect Passive Future Perfect Passive
Infinitive: Present Active & Passive	Infinitive (active): Perfect Active	Infinitive: Perfect Passive Future Active & Passive
Imperative: Present Active & Passive Future Active & Passive	Imperative: -----	Imperative: -----
Subjunctive: Present Active & Passive Imperfect Active & Passive	Subjunctive: Perfect Active Pluperfect Active	Subjunctive: Perfect Passive Pluperfect Passive
Participle: Present Active Gerundive	Participle: -----	Participle: Perfect Passive Future Active

rogātus/a/um sum, es, est
rogātī/ae/a sumus, estis, sunt

INDICATIVE

Forms such as *rogātus est* and *rogātī sunt* are listed in the charts that follow, but feminine and neuter forms are also possible.

Remember: many forms that are based on the 4th principal part can be declined with 2-1-2 endings.

rogātus/a/um sim, sīs, sit
rogātī/ae/a sīmus, sītis, sint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Forms such as *rogātus sit* and *rogātī sint* are listed in the charts that follow, but feminine and neuter forms are also possible.

FIRST CONJUGATION

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus (to ask)

-ĀRE

INDICATIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
rogō	rogābam	rogābō		rogāvī	rogāveram	rogāverō
rogās	rogābās	rogābis		rogāvistī	rogāverās	rogāveris
rogat	rogābat	rogābit		rogāvit	rogāverat	rogāverit
rogāmus	rogābāmus	rogābimus		rogāvimus	rogāverāmus	rogāverimus
rogātis	rogābātis	rogābitis		rogāvistis	rogāverātis	rogāveritis
rogant	rogābant	rogābunt		rogāverunt	rogāverant	rogāverint
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
rogor	rogābar	rogābor		rogātus sum	rogātus eram	rogātus erō
rogāris	rogābāris	rogāberis		rogātus es	rogātus erās	rogātus eris
rogātur	rogābātur	rogābitur	-us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a	rogātus est	rogātus erat	rogātus erit
rogāmur	rogābāmur	rogābimur		rogātī sumus	rogātī erāmus	rogātī erimus
rogāmini	rogābāmini	rogābimini		rogātae estis	rogātī erātis	rogātī eritis
rogantur	rogābantur	rogābuntur		rogāta sunt	rogātī erant	rogātī erunt

IMPERATIVE

<u>PRESENT ACTIVE</u>		<u>PRESENT PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
rogā / rogāte	-----	rogāre / rogāmini	-----
<u>FUTURE ACTIVE</u>		<u>FUTURE PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
rogātō / rogātōte	rogātō / rogātō	rogātor / -----	rogātor / rogantor

INFINITIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>ACTIVE</u> <u>Perfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Present</u>	<u>PASSIVE</u> <u>Perfect</u>	<u>Future</u>
rogāre	rogāvisse	rogātūrus, -a, -um esse	rogārī	rogātus, -a, -um esse	rogātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

<u>Present Active</u>	<u>Perfect Passive</u>	<u>Future Active</u>	<u>Gerundive</u>
rogāns, rogantis	rogātus, -a, -um	rogātūrus, -a, -um	rogandus, -a, -um

GERUND
amandī, -ō, -um, -ō

SUPINE
amātum / amātū

SUBJUNCTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
rogem	rogārem		rogāverim	rogāvissem
rogēs	rogārēs		rogāveris	rogāvissēs
roget	rogāret		rogāverit	rogāvisset
rogēmus	rogārēmus		rogāverīmus	rogāvissēmus
rogētis	rogārētis		rogāveritis	rogāvissētis
rogent	rogārent		rogāverint	rogāvisissent
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
roger	rogārer		rogātus sim	rogātus essem
rogēris	rogārēris		rogātus sis	rogātus essēs
rogetur	rogārētur	-us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a	rogātus sit	rogātus esset
rogēmur	rogārēmur		rogātī simus	rogātī essēmus
rogēmini	rogārēmini		rogātī sītis	rogātī essētis
rogentur	rogārentur		rogātī sint	rogātī essent

SECOND CONJUGATION

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus (to teach)



INDICATIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
doceō	docēbam	docēbō		docuī	docueram	docuerō
docēs	docēbās	docēbis		docuistī	docuerās	docueris
docet	docēbat	docēbit		docuit	docuerat	docuerit
docēmus	docēbāmus	docēbimus		docuimus	docuerāmus	docuerimus
docētis	docēbātis	docēbitis		docuistis	docuerātis	docueritis
docent	docēbant	docēbunt		docuerunt	docuerant	docuerint
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
doceor	docēbar	docēbor		doctus sum	doctus eram	doctus erō
docēris	docēbāris	docēberis		doctus es	doctus erās	doctus eris
docētur	docēbitur	docēbitur		doctus est	doctus erat	doctus erit
docēmur	docēbāmur	docēbimur		doctī sumus	doctī erāmus	doctī erimus
docēminī	docēbāminī	docēbiminī		doctī estis	doctī erātis	doctī eritis
docentur	docēbantur	docēbuntur		doctī sunt	doctī erant	doctī erunt

IMPERATIVE

<u>PRESENT ACTIVE</u>		<u>PRESENT PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
docē / docēte	-----	docēre / docēminī	-----
<u>FUTURE ACTIVE</u>		<u>FUTURE PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
docētō / docētōte	docētō / docentō	docētor / -----	docētor / docentor

INFINITIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>ACTIVE</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Present</u>	<u>PASSIVE</u>	<u>Future</u>
docēre	Perfect docuisse	doctūrus, -a, -um esse	docērī	Perfect doctus, -a, -um esse	doctum īrī

PARTICIPLE

<u>Present Active</u>	<u>Perfect Passive</u>	<u>Future Active</u>	<u>Gerundive</u>
docēns, docentis	doctus, -a, -um	doctūrus, -a, -um	docendus, -a, -um

GERUND
docendī, -ō, -um, -ō

SUPINE
doctum / doctū

SUBJUNCTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
doceam	docērem		docuerim	docuissem
doceās	docērēs		docueris	docuissēs
doceat	docēret		docuerit	docuisset
doceāmus	docērēmus		docuerīmus	docuissēmus
doceātis	docērētis		docuerītis	docuissētis
doceant	docērent		docuerint	docuissent
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
docear	docērer		doctus sim	doctus essem
doceāris	docērēris		doctus sis	doctus essēs
doceātur	docērētur		doctus sit	doctus esset
doceāmur	docērēmur		doctī simus	doctī essēmus
doceāminī	docērēminī		doctī sītis	doctī essētis
doceantur	docērentur		doctī sint	doctī essent

THIRD CONJUGATION

mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus (to send)

-ERE

INDICATIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
mittō	mittēbam	mittam		mīsi	mīseram	mīserō
mittis	mittēbās	mittēs		mīsistī	mīserās	mīseris
mittit	mittēbat	mittet		mīsīt	mīserat	mīserit
mittimus	mittēbāmus	mittēmus		mīsīmus	mīserāmus	mīserimus
mittitis	mittēbātis	mittētis		mīsistis	mīserātis	mīseritis
mittunt	mittēbant	mittent		mīsērunt	mīserant	mīserint
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
mittor	mittēbar	mittar		missus sum	missus eram	missus erō
mitteris	mittēbāris	mittēris		missus es	missus erās	missus eris
mittitur	mittēbātur	mittētur	-us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a →	missus est	missus erat	missus erit
mittimur	mittēbāmur	mittēmur		missi sumus	missi erāmus	missi erimus
mittimini	mittēbāmini	mittēmini		missi estis	missi erātis	missi eritis
mittuntur	mittēbantur	mittentur		missi sunt	missi erant	missi erunt

IMPERATIVE

<u>PRESENT ACTIVE</u>		<u>PRESENT PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
mitte / mittite	-----	mittere / mittimini	-----
<u>FUTURE ACTIVE</u>		<u>FUTURE PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
mittitō / mittitōte	mittitō / mittuntō	mittitor / -----	mittitor / mittuntor

INFINITIVE

<u>ACTIVE</u>	<u>PASSIVE</u>
<u>Present</u>	<u>Present</u>
mittere	mittī
<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Perfect</u>
mīsisse	missus, -a, -um esse
<u>Future</u>	<u>Future</u>
missūrus, -a, -um esse	missum īrī

PARTICIPLE

<u>Present Active</u>	<u>Perfect Passive</u>	<u>Future Active</u>	<u>Gerundive</u>
mittēns, mittentis	missus, -a, -um	missūrus, -a, -um	mittendus, -a, -um

GERUND

mittendī, -ō, -um, -ō

SUPINE

missum / missū

SUBJUNCTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
mittam	mitterem		mīserim	mīsisse
mittās	mitterēs		mīseris	mīsissēs
mittat	mitteret		mīserit	mīsisset
mittāmus	mitterēmus		mīserīmus	mīsissēmus
mittātis	mitterētis		mīseritis	mīsissētis
mittant	mitterent		mīserint	mīsissent
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
mittar	mitterer		missus sim	missus essem
mittāris	mitterēris		missus sis	missus essēs
mittātur	mitterētur	-us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a →	missus sit	missus esset
mittāmur	mitterēmur		missi simus	missi essemus
mittāmini	mitterēmini		missi sitis	missi essētis
mittantur	mitterentur		missi sint	missi essent

THIRD -IO CONJUGATION

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (to take, seize)



INDICATIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
capiō	capiēbam	capiam		cēpī	cēperam	cēperō
capis	capiēbās	capiēs		cēpistī	cēperās	cēperis
capit	capiēbat	capiet		cēpit	cēperat	cēperit
capimus	capiēbāmus	capiēmus		cēpimus	cēperāmus	cēperimus
capitis	capiēbātis	capiētis		cēpistis	cēperātis	cēperitis
capiunt	capiēbant	capient		cēperunt	cēperant	cēperint
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
capior	capiēbar	capiar		captus sum	captus eram	captus erō
caperis	capiēbāris	capiēris		captus es	captus erās	captus eris
capitur	capiēbātur	capietur		captus est	captus erat	captus erit
capimur	capiēbāmur	capiemur		capti sumus	capti erāmus	capti erimus
capimini	capiēbāmini	capiemini		capti estis	capti erātis	capti eritis
capiuntur	capiēbantur	capientur		capti sunt	capti erant	capti erunt

IMPERATIVE

<u>PRESENT ACTIVE</u>		<u>PRESENT PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
cape / capite	-----	capere / capimini	-----
<u>FUTURE ACTIVE</u>		<u>FUTURE PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
capitō / capitōte	capitō / capiuntō	capitor / -----	capitor / capiuntor

INFINITIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>ACTIVE</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Present</u>	<u>PASSIVE</u>	<u>Future</u>
capere	Perfect cēpisse	captūrus, -a, -um esse	capī	Perfect captus, -a, -um esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

<u>Present Active</u>	<u>Perfect Passive</u>	<u>Future Active</u>	<u>Gerundive</u>
capiēns, capientis	captus, -a, -um	captūrus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um

GERUND

capiendī, -ō, -um, -ō

SUPINE

captum / captū

SUBJUNCTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
capiam	caperem		cēperim	cēpissem
capiās	caperēs		cēperīs	cēpissēs
capiat	caperet		cēperit	cēpisset
capiamus	caperēmus		cēperīmus	cēpissēmus
capiatīs	caperētīs		cēperītīs	cēpissētīs
capiant	caperent		cēperint	cēpissent
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
capiar	caperer		captus sim	captus essem
capiāris	capererīs		captus sīs	captus essēs
capiātur	caperētur		captus sit	captus esset
capiamur	caperēmur		capti sīmus	capti essēmus
capiamini	caperēmini		capti sītīs	capti essētīs
capiantur	caperentur		capti sint	capti essent

FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (to hear, listen)

-IRE

INDICATIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
audiō	audiēbam	audiam		audīvī	audīveram	audīverō
audīs	audiēbās	audiēs		audīvistī	audīverās	audīveris
audit	audiēbat	audiet		audīvit	audīverat	audīverit
audīmus	audiēbāmus	audiēmus		audīvimus	audīverāmus	audīverimus
audītis	audiēbātis	audiētis		audīvistis	audīverātis	audīveritis
audiunt	audiēbant	audient		audīverunt	audīverant	audīverint
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
audior	audiēbar	audiar		audītus sum	audītus eram	audītus erō
audīris	audiēbāris	audīris		audītus es	audītus erās	audītus eris
audītur	audiēbātur	audīetur	-us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a	audītus est	audītus erat	audītus erit
audīmur	audiēbāmur	audiēmur		audītī sumus	audītī erāmus	audītī erimus
audīminī	audiēbāminī	audiēminī		audītī estis	audītī erātis	audītī eritis
audiuntur	audiēbantur	audientur		audītī sunt	audītī erant	audītī erunt

IMPERATIVE

<u>PRESENT ACTIVE</u>		<u>PRESENT PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
audī / audīte	-----	audīre / audīminī	-----
<u>FUTURE ACTIVE</u>		<u>FUTURE PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
audītō / audītōte	audītō / audiuntō	audītor / -----	audītor / audiuntor

INFINITIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>ACTIVE</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Present</u>	<u>PASSIVE</u>	<u>Future</u>
audīre	audīvisse	audītūrus, -a, -um esse	audīrī	audītus, -a, -um esse	audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

<u>Present Active</u>	<u>Perfect Passive</u>	<u>Future Active</u>	<u>Gerundive</u>
audiēns, audientis	audītus, -a, -um	audītūrus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um

GERUND

audiendī, -ō, -um, -ō

SUPINE

audītum / audītū

SUBJUNCTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
audiam	audīrem		audīverim	audīvissem
audiās	audīrēs		audīverīs	audīvisse
audiat	audīret		audīverit	audīvisset
audiāmus	audīrēmus		audīverīmus	audīvisse
audiātis	audīrētis		audīverītis	audīvissetis
audiant	audīrent		audīverint	audīvisserint
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
audiar	audīrer		audītus sim	audītus essem
audiāris	audīrēris		audītus sis	audītus essēs
audiātur	audīrētur	-us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a	audītus sit	audītus esset
audiāmur	audīrēmur		audītī sīmus	audītī essēmus
audiāminī	audīrēminī		audītī sītis	audītī essētis
audiantur	audīrentur		audītī sint	audītī essent

APPENDIX B

SUM, ESSE, FUĪ, FUTŪRUS

(to be)

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
sum	eram	erō	fuī	fueram	fuerō
es	erās	eris	fuistī	fuerās	fueris
est	erat	erit	fuit	fuerat	fuerit
sumus	erāmus	erimus	fuius	fuerāmus	fuerimus
estis	erātis	eritis	fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
sunt	erant	erunt	fuērunt	fuerant	fuerint

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT ACTIVE

<i>2nd Person</i>	<i>3rd Person</i>
es / este	-----

FUTURE ACTIVE

<i>2nd Person</i>	<i>3rd Person</i>
estō / estōte	estō / suntō

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
esse	fuisse	futūrus, -a, -um esse *fore

PARTICIPLE

<i>Present Active</i>	<i>Perfect Passive</i>	<i>Future Active</i>	<i>Gerundive</i>
-----	-----	futūrus, -a, -um	-----

GERUND

SUPINE

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
sim	essem	*forem	fuissem
sīs	essēs	*forēs	fuisēs
sit	esset	*foret	fuisset
sīmus	essēmus	*forēmus	fuissemus
sītis	essētis	*forētis	fuissetis
sint	essent	*forent	fuisissent

*Note the alternate forms of the future active infinitive and the imperfect subjunctive.

POSSUM, POSSE, POTUĪ

(to be able)

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
possum	poteram	poterō	potuī	potueram	potuerō
potes	poterās	poteris	potuistī	potuerās	potueris
potest	poterat	poterit	potuit	potuerat	potuerit
possumus	poterāmus	poterimus	potuimus	potuerāmus	potuerimus
potestis	poterātis	poteritis	potuistis	potuerātis	potueritis
possunt	poterant	poterunt	potuērunt	potuerant	potuerint

IMPERATIVE

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE*Present*

posse

Perfect

potuisse

Future

PARTICIPLE

Present Active

potēns, potentis

Perfect Passive

Future Active

Gerundive

GERUND

SUPINE

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
possim	possem	potuerim	potuissem
possīs	possēs	potuerīs	potuissēs
possit	posset	potuerit	potuisset
possīmus	possēmus	potuerīmus	potuissēmus
possītis	possētis	potuerītis	potuissētis
possint	possent	potuerint	potuissent

APPENDIX B

VOLŌ, VELLE, VOLUĪ

(to wish, want)

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
volō	volēbam	volam	voluī	volueram	voluerō
vīs	volēbās	volēs	voluistī	voluerās	volueris
vult	volēbat	volet	voluit	voluerat	voluerit
volumus	volēbāmus	volēmus	voluimus	voluerāmus	voluerimus
vultis	volēbātis	volētis	voluistis	voluerātis	volueritis
volunt	volēbant	volent	voluērunt	voluerant	voluerint

IMPERATIVE

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

Present

velle

Perfect

voluisse

Future

PARTICIPLE

Present Active

volēns, volentis

Perfect Passive

Future Active

Gerundive

GERUND

SUPINE

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

Present

velim

velīs

velit

velīmus

velītis

velint

Imperfect

vellem

vellēs

vellet

vellēmus

vellētis

vellent

Perfect

voluerim

voluerīs

voluerit

voluerīmus

voluerītis

voluerint

Pluperfect

voluissē

voluissēs

voluisset

voluissēmus

voluissētis

voluissent

APPENDIX B

NŌLŌ, NŌLLE, NŌLUI

(to not wish, not want, refuse)

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
nōlō	nōlēbam	nōlam	nōluī	nōlueram	nōluerō
nōn vīs	nōlēbās	nōlēs	nōluistī	nōluerās	nōlueris
nōn vult	nōlēbat	nōlet	nōluit	nōluerat	nōluerit
nolumus	nōlēbāmus	nōlēmus	nōluimus	nōluerāmus	nōluerimus
nōn vultis	nōlēbātis	nōlētis	nōluistis	nōluerātis	nōlueritis
nōlunt	nōlēbant	nōlent	nōluērunt	nōluerant	nōluerint

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT ACTIVE*2nd Person*

nōlī / nōlīte

3rd Person

FUTURE ACTIVE*2nd Person*

nōlītō / nōlītōte

3rd Person

nōlītō / nōluntō

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE*Present*

nōlle

Perfect

nōluisse

Future

PARTICIPLE

Present Active

nōlēns, nōlentis

Perfect Passive

Future Active

Gerundive

GERUND

SUPINE

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

Present

nōlim

nōlis

nōlit

nōlīmus

nōlītis

nōlint

Imperfect

nōllem

nōllēs

nōllet

nōllēmus

nōllētis

nōllent

Perfect

nōluerim

nōluerīs

nōluerit

nōluerīmus

nōluerītis

nōluerint

Pluperfect

nōluissem

nōluissēs

nōluisset

nōluissēmus

nōluissētis

nōluissent

APPENDIX B

MĀLŌ, MĀLLE, MĀLUĪ

(to prefer)

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
mālō	mālēbam	mālam	māluī	mālueram	māluērō
māvīs	mālēbās	mālēs	māluistī	māluērās	mālueris
māvult	mālēbat	mālet	māluit	māluerat	māluerit
mālumus	mālēbāmus	mālēmus	māluimus	māluērāmus	māluerimus
māvultis	mālēbātis	mālētis	māluistis	māluērātis	mālueritis
mālunt	mālēbant	mālent	māluērunt	māluerant	māluerint

IMPERATIVE

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

Present

mälle

Perfect

māluisse

Future

PARTICIPLE

Present Active

Perfect Passive

Future Active

Gerundive

GERUND

SUPINE

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
mālim	māllem	māluerim	māluissem
mālīs	mālles	māluerīs	māluissēs
mālīt	māllet	māluerit	māluisset
mālīmus	māllemus	māluerīmus	māluissēmus
mālītis	mālletis	māluerītis	māluissētis
mālīnt	māllet	māluerint	māluissent

APPENDIX B

EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ OR ĪĪ, ITUS

(to go)

INDICATIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	ACTIVE		<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>	
eō	ībam	ībō			īvī	īī	īveram	ieram
īs	ībās	ībīs			īvistī	īstī	īverās	ierās
it	ībat	ībit			īvit	īit	īverat	ierat
īmus	ībāmus	ībimus			īvimus	īimus	īverāmus	ierāmus
ītis	ībātis	ībītis			īvistis	īstis	īverātis	ierātis
eunt	ībant	ībunt			īvērunt	īērunt	īverant	ierant
							īverint	ierint

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	PASSIVE		<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>	
eor	ībar	ībor			itus sum	itus eram	itus erō	
īris	ībāris	īberis			itus es	itus erās	itus eris	
ītur	ībātur	ībitur			itus est	itus erat	itus erit	
īmur	ībāmur	ībimur			itī sumus	itī erāmus	itī erimus	
īminī	ībāminī	ībimīnī			itī estis	itī erātis	itī eritis	
euntur	ībantur	ībuntur			itī sunt	itī erant	itī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

<u>PRESENT ACTIVE</u>		<u>PRESENT PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
ī / īte	-----	īre / īminī	-----
<u>FUTURE ACTIVE</u>		<u>FUTURE PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
ītō / ītōte	ītō / euntō	ītor / -----	ītor / euntor

INFINITIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>ACTIVE</u> <u>Perfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Present</u>	<u>PASSIVE</u> <u>Perfect</u>	<u>Future</u>
īre	īvisse / īsse	itūrus, -a, -um esse	īrī	itus, -a, -um esse	itum īrī

PARTICIPLE

<u>Present Active</u>	<u>Perfect Passive</u>	<u>Future Active</u>	<u>Gerundive</u>
īēns, euntis	ītus, -a, -um	itūrus, a, -um	eundus, -a -um

GERUND
eundī, -ō, -um, -ō

SUPINE
itum / itū

SUBJUNCTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	ACTIVE		<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
eam	īrem			īverim	īvissem
eās	īrēs			īverīs	īvissem
eat	īret			īverit	īvisset
eāmus	īrēmus			īverīmus	īvissemus
eātis	īrētis			īverītis	īvissetis
eant	īrent			īverint	īvisserint

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	PASSIVE		<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
ear	īrer			itus sim	itus essem
eāris	īrēris			itus sis	itus essēs
eātur	īrētur			itus sit	itus esset
eāmur	īrēmur			itī simus	itī essemus
eāminī	īrēmīnī			itī sitis	itī essētis
eantur	īrentur			itī sint	itī essent

APPENDIX B

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS

(to bring, bear, endure)

INDICATIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
ferō	ferēbam	feram		tulī	tuleram	tulerō
fers	ferēbās	ferēs		tulistī	tulerās	tuleris
fert	ferēbat	feret		tulit	tulerat	tulerit
ferimus	ferēbamus	ferēmus		tulimus	tulerāmus	tulerimus
fertis	ferēbātis	ferētis		tulistis	tulerātis	tuleritis
ferunt	ferēbant	ferent		tulērunt	tulerant	tulerint
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
feror	ferēbar	ferar		lātus sum	lātus eram	lātus erō
ferris	ferēbāris	ferēris		lātus es	lātus erās	lātus eris
fertur	ferēbātur	ferētur		lātus est	lātus erat	lātus erit
ferimur	ferēbāmur	ferēmur	-us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a	lātī sumus	lātī erāmus	lātī erimus
feriminī	ferēbāminī	ferēminī		lātī estis	lātī erātis	lātī eritis
feruntur	ferēbantur	ferentur		lātī sunt	lātī erant	lātī erunt

IMPERATIVE

<u>PRESENT ACTIVE</u>		<u>PRESENT PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
fer / ferte	-----	ferre / feriminī	-----
<u>FUTURE ACTIVE</u>		<u>FUTURE PASSIVE</u>	
2nd Person	3rd Person	2nd Person	3rd Person
fertō / fertōte	fertō / feruntō	fertor / -----	fertor / feruntor

INFINITIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>ACTIVE</u> <u>Perfect</u>	<u>Future</u>	<u>Present</u>	<u>PASSIVE</u> <u>Perfect</u>	<u>Future</u>
ferre	tulisse	lāturus, -a, -um esse	ferri	lātus, -a, -um esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLE

<u>Present Active</u>	<u>Perfect Passive</u>	<u>Future Active</u>	<u>Gerundive</u>
ferēns, ferentis	lātus, -a, -um	lāturus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um

GERUND

ferendī, -ō, -um, -ō

SUPINE

lātum / lātū

SUBJUNCTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	ACTIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
feram	ferrem		tulerim	tulisse
ferās	ferrēs		tuleris	tulissēs
ferat	ferret		tulerit	tulisset
ferāmus	ferrēmus		tulerīmus	tulissēmus
ferātis	ferrētis		tuleritis	tulissētis
ferant	ferrent		tulerint	tulissent
<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
ferar	ferrer		lātus sim	lātus essem
ferāris	ferrēris		lātus sis	lātus essēs
ferātur	ferrētur		lātus sit	lātus esset
ferāmur	ferrēmur	-us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a	lātī simus	lātī essēmus
ferāminī	ferrēminī		lātī sītis	lātī essētis
ferantur	ferrentur		lātī sint	lātī essent

FĪŌ, FIERĪ, FACTUS SUM

(to become, be made, happen)

INDICATIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	<u>Future</u>		<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>	<u>Future Perfect</u>
fīō	fīēbam	fīam		factus sum	factus eram	factus erō
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs		factus es	factus erās	factus eris
fit	fīēbat	fīet	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> -us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a </div>	factus est	factus erat	factus erit
fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus		factī sumus	factī erāmus	factī erimus
fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis		factī estis	factī erātis	factī eritis
fīunt	fīēbant	fīent		factī sunt	factī erant	factī erunt

IMPERATIVE (rare)

PRESENT ACTIVE

<i>2nd Person</i>	<i>3rd Person</i>
fī / fīte	-----

FUTURE ACTIVE

<i>2nd Person</i>	<i>3rd Person</i>
fītō / fītōte	fītō / fīuntō

INFINITIVE

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
fieri	factus, -a, -um esse	factum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Present Active</i>	<i>Perfect Passive</i>	<i>Future Active</i>	<i>Gerundive</i>
-----	factus, -a, -um	-----	faciendus, -a, -um

GERUND

SUPINE

SUBJUNCTIVE

<u>Present</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>	PASSIVE	<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Pluperfect</u>
fīam	fīerem		factus sim	factus essem
fīās	fīerēs		factus sīs	factus essēs
fīat	fīeret	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> -us, -a, -um -ī, -ae, -a </div>	factus sit	factus esset
fīāmus	fīerēmus		factī simus	factī essēmus
fīātis	fīerētis		factī sītis	factī essētis
fīant	fīerent		factī sint	factī essent

BOLCHAZY-CARDUCCI PUBLISHERS, INC.

LATINA MYTHICA

*Intermediate Latin
textbook/reader, mythology*
xiv + 202pp. (2006) paperback, ISBN 0-86516-599-8

COLUMBUS' VOYAGE

*Easy Latin textbook/reader,
American history*
xvi + 40pp. (2005) paperback, ISBN 0-86516-613-7

CONVERSATIONAL LATIN

*Easy Latin textbook/reader, Latin phrase book
and dictionary of modern topics*
416 pp. (2006) hardbound, ISBN 0-86516-645-5,
and paperback, ISBN 0-86516-622-6

WORDS AND IDEAS

Latin vocabulary for English
xxvii + 281pp. (2002) paperback, ISBN 0-86516-485-1

WORDS AND IDEAS KEY

(forthcoming) ISBN 0-86516-637-4

CARMINA POPULARIA

Popular songs in Latin on CD
running time 49:21 (2004) Audio CD, order number 00003

WORDS OF WISDOM

*Latin Proverbs, English translations,
pronunciation, parsing program*
(2000) CD-ROM, ISBN 0-86516-502-5

THE CLASSICAL MYTHOLOGY WORKBOOK

*Comprehensive mythology presented with
illustrations, exercises and derivatives*
(forthcoming) ISBN 0-86516-573-4

VERGIL FOR BEGINNERS

Easy Latin textbook/reader
(forthcoming) ISBN 0-86516-628-5

BUILD YOUR ENGLISH WORD POWER

*Latin Vocabulary for English,
grades 4-12*
Student edition: 32pp. (1997) paperback, ISBN 0-86516-354-5
Teacher's manual: 53pp. (1997) paperback, ISBN 0-86516-392-8

CATTUS PETASATUS

*Latin version intended for
oral presentation and reading
(rhyming Latin)*
80pp. (2000) hardbound, ISBN 0-86516-472-X,
and paperback, ISBN 0-86516-471-1

LATIN READINGS

*Easy Latin, mythology, review of grammar,
with graded Latin readings*
Student edition: 109pp. (1985, reprint 1989)
paperback, ISBN 0-86516-044-9
Teacher's Manual: 86pp. (1985, reprint 1989)
paperback, ISBN 0-86516-043-0

ARTES LATINAE

*Self-teaching Latin on CD-ROM,
from grades 4 up*
Level 1: ISBN 0-86516-409-6
Level 2: ISBN 0-86516-410-X

THE LABORS OF AENEAS

*Aeneid told in easy English and
comic presentation*
vi + 108pp. (2003) paperback, ISBN 0-86516-556-4



www.BOLCHAZY.com



Looking at Latin

A GRAMMAR FOR PRE-COLLEGE

Looking at Latin is a complete illustrated grammar reference book for all levels of pre-college Latin, from middle school through high school.

Lessons are designed to cover single topics—from the subject nominative to the impersonal passive periphrastic—which allows for flexibility in the order in which lessons are covered. Innovative visual elements bring clarity and energy to the presentation of grammatical material, with arrows and colored text emphasizing and connecting important points. Information is delivered via small text boxes that allow students to use a step-by-step approach to learning forms and syntax, and comprehensive example sentences illustrate each topic in detail. Abundant color illustrations add personality and humor, producing a visual appeal unusual to Latin grammars.

Whether the student needs to review declensions and conjugations or would like to learn how to use constructions such as the ablative absolute or purpose clauses, this is the book to use.

Features:

- detailed table of contents makes finding topics easy
- topics are arranged by grammatical category, making the book as useful for later review and reference as for initial learning
- dynamic layout with text boxes, arrows, examples, and color illustrations
- design expressly targets Latin students from middle school through high school
- illustrations represent the diversity of the modern world

A class set of this new grammar, *Looking at Latin*, is a must for every middle and high school Latin classroom. Students continuing in Latin will surely want to purchase personal copies.

Anna Andresian received her BA from Brown University, where she wrote a first-year Latin text as her senior thesis and thus discovered her passion for developing educational materials. After four years of teaching middle and upper school Latin in East Greenwich, Rhode Island, Andresian went to study in England where she obtained her Master's degree in Latin Language and Literature from the University of Oxford.



**Bolchazy-Carducci
Publishers, Inc.**

1000 Brown St., Unit 101, Wauconda, IL 60084

Phone: (847) 526-4344; Fax: (847) 526-2867

www.bolchazy.com

ISBN 0-86516-615-3



9 780865 166158

90000

